DRAFT

MCRP 3-34.1A

EMPLOYMENT OF MILITARY POLICE IN COMBAT

19 February 2002

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 MILITARY POLICE COMMAND AND CONTROL 1-1 TO 1-53

TACTICAL COMMAND POST OPERATIONS 1-1
- Introduction 1-1
- Types of Tactical Command Posts 1-1
- Communication 1-2
- Accountability of Vehicles and Equipment 1-4
- Command and Control 1-5

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT/ USE OF FORCE 1-6
- Introduction 1-6
- Use of Deadly Force 1-7
- Rules of Engagement 1-8

NONCOMBATANT EVACUATION OPERATION 1-10
- Introduction 1-10
- Organization and Operation of ECC 1-11
- Coordinating Instructions 1-15

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT 1-16
- Introduction 1-16
- ORM Process 1-16
- Risk Assessment Matrix 1-18

EQUIPMENT STANDARDIZATION & PRE-DEPLOYMENT PLANNING 1-20
- Introduction 1-20
- Equipment Embarkation 1-21
- Personnel Preparation 1-24

MILITARY POLICE WEAPONS SYSTEMS AND EMPLOYMENT 1-25
- Introduction 1-25

COMMUNICATIONS 1-26
- Introduction 1-26
- Procedures 1-26
- Command and Control Systems 1-27
- Preventative Measures 1-29
- Authentication and Encryption 1-29
- Remedial Actions 1-30
- BEADWINDOW Procedure 1-32
- GINGERBREAD Procedure 1-33
- Communication Equipment 1-33
  - AN/PRC-119 1-33
  - AN/VRC-88 1-34
  - AN/MRC-145 1-36
  - AN/GRA-39 1-37
  - 0E-254 1-38

TABLE OF CONTENTS

AN/PIQ-5 1-38
TA-312 1-39

REPORTS 1-40
- Report Occasions and remarks 1-40

FIRE SUPPORT 1-41
- Introduction 1-41
- Indirect Fire 1-42
- Close Air Support 1-44
- Tactical Employment 1-45

INJURY PREVENTION & TREATMENT 1-46
- Introduction 1-46
- Life Saving Steps 1-47
- Types of Wounds 1-48
- Heat Injuries 1-49
- Cold Injuries 1-50
- Miscellaneous Injuries 1-51
- Preventive Care 1-52
- Priority of Treatment and Evacuation 1-53

CHAPTER 2 SUPPORT TO AT/FP OPERATIONS 2-1 TO 2-15

ANTITERRORISM/FORCE PROTECTION 2-1
- Introduction 2-1
- AT/FP Roles 2-1

PHYSICAL SECURITY PLANNING 2-5
- Introduction 2-5
- Classification/Security Requirements for Areas 2-5
- Physical Security Plan 2-10

CHAPTER 3 MANEUVER AND MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS 3-1 TO 3-13

- Introduction 3-1
- Tactical Employment 3-1
- Traffic Control Point 3-1
- Special Traffic Control Measures 3-5

CHAPTER 4 AREA SECURITY 4-1 TO 4-84

- Introduction 4-1
- Missions 4-1

- Air Base Ground Defense 4-2

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Flight line Considerations 4-2
- Aircraft Mishap 4-6

- Tactical Employment Considerations 4-11

UNIT DEFENSIVE MEASURES 4-13
- Introduction 4-13
- Principles of Defense 4-13
- Establishing a Defensive Position 4-14
- Conduct of the Defense 4-16
- Coordinating Instructions 4-16

PATROLLING 4-17
- Introduction 4-17
- Tasks Common to Dismounted/Mounted Patrols 4-17
- Dismounted Patrols 4-20

- Tactical Employment 4-20
- Immediate Action 4-23
- Actions at Danger Areas 4-25
- Special Considerations 4-25
- Mounted Patrols 4-25
- Tactical Employment 4-26
- Security Measures 4-27
- Immediate Action 4-28
- Special Considerations 4-29
- Information and Measurement Techniques 4-30
- Route Widths 4-30
- Road Surface Materials 4-31
- Route Obstructions 4-32
- Reconnaissance Formulas/Symbols 4-33
- Route Classification Formula 4-33
- Road Classification Formulas 4-35
- Ford Symbol 4-36
- Ferry Symbol 4-38
- Bridge Symbol 4-40
- Tunnel Symbol 4-41
- Gathering Intelligence and Measurements 4-43
- Percent of Slope 4-45
- Curve Radius 4-46
- Route Recon Overlay 4-47

OBSTACLE & BARRIER OPERATIONS 4-47
- Introduction 4-47
- Employment 4-48

NBC OPERATIONS 4-51

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Introduction 4-51
- Procedures: MOPP Analysis Questions 4-51
- Route Recon / Routine Patrol 4-51
- Conducting a Survey 4-52
- Assumptions 4-57

MARITIME PREPOSITIONING FORCE 4-59
- Introduction 4-59
- Tactical Employment 4-60

CONVOY OPERATIONS 4-63
- Introduction 4-63
- Procedures 4-63
- Weapons and Security Employment 4-65
- Movements 4-66
- Immediate Action 4-69
- Convoy Escort Procedures 4-71
- Coordinating Instructions 4-72

VEHICLE MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES 4-73
- Introduction 4-73
- Tactical Movement Principles 4-74
- Convoy Operations 4-82
- Safety 4-84

CHAPTER 5 LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS 5-1 TO 5-16
- Introduction 5-1
- Criminal Investigations(Felony) 5-2
- Criminal Investigations(Misdemeanor) 5-7
- Accident Investigations 5-8
- Crime Prevention & Physical Security 5-9
- Military Working Dogs 5-10
- Search and Seizure 5-11
- Self Incrimination 5-13
- US Military Prisoner Confinement 5-14

CHAPTER 6 INTERNMENT OPERATIONS 6-1 TO 6-14
- Introduction 6-1
- Policy and Notional Concept of Operation 6-1
- Handling Procedures 6-2
- Tactical Employment 6-3
- Collection Point Operations 6-5
- Transportation 6-7
- Holding Area Operations 6-8
- Transfer of Custody 6-12
- Coordinating Instructions 6-13

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 7 NON LETHAL WEAPONS AND CONTROLS 7-1 TO 7-24
- Introduction 7-1
- Control Principles 7-1
- Planning and Preparation 7-2
- Procedure 7-6
- OC Considerations and Employment 7-11
- Non-Lethal Weapons and Munitions 7-17

APPENDICES:

A MAP SYMBOLS AND TACTICAL CONTROL MEASURES…… A-1
B TACTICAL COMMAND POST SCHEMATIC…… B-1
C DEADLY FORCE ACKNOLWEDMENT FORM……. C-1
D ECC FLOW CHART AND EVACUATION DEBARKATION FORM…… D-1
E VEHICLE LOADING DIAGRAM…….. E-1
F EQUIPMENT LOAD LIST…….. F-1
G MILITARY POLICE WEAPONS SYSTEMS AND EMPLOYMENT……... G-1
H COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT…….. H-1
I REPORTS……. I-1
J FIRE SUPPORT REQUEST FORMATS…… J-1
K TCP'S AND VEHICLE SEARCH TECHNIQUES……. K-1
L ROUTE SIGNS…… L-1
M FIRE SKETCH PLAN AND RANGE CARD……. M-1
N PATROLLING AND TIPS…… N-1
O OBSTACLES AND BARRIERS…….. O-1
P NBC OPERATIONAL PLANNING…… P-1
Q CONVOY OPERATIONS…… Q-1
R VEHICLE MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES…… R-1
S CASE CONTROL NUMBERS AND MP FORMS……..S-1
T COLLECTION POINTS AND HOLDING FACILITIES…… T-1
U CHEMICAL AGENT EMPLOYMENT AND RIOT CONTROL FORMATIONS…… U-1
V GLOSSARY……. V-1
W REFERENCES AND RELATED PUBLICATIONS…… W-1

MILITARY POLICE COMMAND AND CONTROL

TACTICAL COMMAND POST OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. General. The tactical situation will dictate where the MP command post (CP) is established. The CP will usually be located near the combat service support operations center (CSSOC) or the rear area operations center (RAOC). In either situation, the CP should be large enough to accommodate a desk sergeant, an administration clerk, room for equipment not being used, and a situation map.

Types of Tactical Command Posts

1. Mobile Command Post. This type of CP will be established simply by operating out of the back of a MRC 145 radio vehicle or M998 high back vehicle. Use this type of CP when mobility is required.

2. Semi-permanent Command Post. This type of CP is established using tentage, office space, or a building. Applicable to a CSS rear area operation where mobility is not a factor.

3. Site Selection. The senior MP and a security element will reconnoiter new sites and determine the exact location for the CP. Pick a primary and alternate site. Choose a site that:

a. Is easily accessible from the MSR.

b. Can accommodate all the units' vehicles and equipment.

c. Has a firm, well-drained surface.

d. Has some natural cover and concealment.

e. Is relatively easy to defend.

4. Prepare and secure the site per Section 7 (Unit Defense Measures).

5. Establish local security to sustain survivability.

6. Displacement of Tactical Command Post:

a. Determine new location.

b. A leader's reconnaissance will be conducted to include, the senior MP, platoon sergeant, a headquarters element and a security element.

c. Continuous communication and security will be maintained with the tactical CP.

d. Once the new location is selected and secure, the new tactical CP will assume control of MP forces.

e. The remaining personnel will then move to the new position.

Communications.

1. The tactical CP should have the following communications capabilities:

a. A telephone line capable of commercial and DSN calls.

b. A tactical telephone line capable of contacting other military units.

c. A TA 312 link to:

(1) MP billeting or defensive positions, platoon or squad level.

(2) The CSSOC or RAOC if commercial or tactical telephone is not available.

(3) MP observation posts or listening posts.

8. The Desk Sergeant will:

a. Act as the Net Control Station.

b. Ensure frequencies, call signs, and passwords are verified and passed to the on-coming shift.

c. Ensure preventive maintenance checks are conducted on all radios before shift change. Batteries will be replaced as required. Ensure radios remote to another location are also checked.

9. Situation Board. The situation board captures current MP operations. The Desk Sergeant is responsible for maintaining

this information. As a minimum, the following information will be tracked:

a. Map with Traffic Circulation Plan and Traffic Control Plan overlays.

b. Current Posting Chart.

c. Current Mounted and Dismounted Patrol Activity.

d. Location of unit defensive position expressed in a clock position.

e. MP Mission and Mission of next higher commander.

f. Current Air Alert Defense Posture.

g. Current NBC Defense posture.

h. Likely enemy course of action.

i. A roster of assigned MP personnel.

j. A serialized inventory of all equipment and weapons.

k. Primary and Alternate frequencies, and all challenge and passwords will be listed under the map.

10. Vehicle Dispatch/Preventive Maintenance Checks

a. The Desk Sergeant will:

(1) Coordinate with the MT detachment, and determine dispatch procedures.

(2) Assign operators to vehicles. If possible, vehicle assets should be rotated to prevent 24 hr operation.

(3) Ensure no vehicle is operated without being properly dispatched and inspected.

(4) Routinely monitor preventive maintenance inspections.

(5) Ensure the proper paperwork is completed and actions taken to correct vehicle discrepancies.

b. The Vehicle NCO will:

(1) Ensure weekly/monthly PM's are conducted, properly recorded, and maintained.

(2) Coordinate the repair of vehicle discrepancies with MT.

(3) Complete a weekly vehicle report for the Senior MP.

c. Each Vehicle Operator will:

(1) Conduct a preventive maintenance inspection before operating any vehicle. Report discrepancies to the desk sergeant.

(2) Operate the vehicle in a safe and professional manner.

(3) No vehicle will be driven off the paved surface unless in performance of duties. The tactical situation will dictate.

(4) Complete the proper paperwork to correct vehicle discrepancies.

Accountability of Vehicles and Equipment

1. The Desk Sergeant Duties.

a. Conduct a serialized inventory of ALL vehicle and equipment prior to assuming post. Results of the inspection will be recorded in the Desk Sergeant's Journal.

b. Report all lost, damaged, stolen, or missing items to the Senior MP.

c. Establish an equipment accountability log to sub sign all equipment issued during the shift. No gear will be issued without signing it out.

2. Incident Notification. The Desk Sergeant is responsible for making notifications. Notification will be made in the following priority:

a. Alert posted MP's if appropriate i.e., change in threat condition or help locate a suspect.

b. Senior MP on duty who will make a determination to inform the Senior MP.

c. The CSSOC/RAOC.

d. Command Notification. An alphabetical listing of personnel assigned to the operation will be obtained for the S/G-1.

e. The Senior MP will make notifications to the commanding officer as appropriate.

Command and Control.

1. The Desk Sergeant will:

a. Initially dispatch MP units to an incident.

b. Coordinate the response of other agencies i.e., fire, ambulance, response forces.

2. The Senior MP on duty will:

a. Respond and assume tactical control.

b. Ensure responding forces are properly deployed to counter the situation.

3. Administration.

a. The Senior MP will:

(1) Establish procedures for the preparation and distribution of MP reports and tickets. Reports and tickets will be forwarded to the individuals command via the chain of command.

(2) Prepare a missing stolen lost report. This report is used as an investigative tool. A copy of this report will be posted with the Desk Sergeant.

APPENDICES:

A - Map Symbols and Tactical Control Measures.

B - Sample Command Post Layout

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT/USE OF FORCE

Introduction

1. Purpose. To provide standard instruction for arming, weapons handling procedures, and use of forces. Further, to provide guidance in the development of rules of engagement (ROE).

2. General. MP's must possess the capability to apply the proper amount of force to counter a given threat. Complicating and sometimes confusing this process are specific ROE guidelines that must be adhered to. Training and continuous reinforcement help to overcome these issues.

3. Assumptions.

a. Military Police will be armed and use force in accordance with MCO 5500.6F unless specific arming and ROE are prescribed by the MAGTF commander.

b. The senior MP will ensure all MP's are trained and understand the procedures for use of force applicable to the specific mission.

4. Scope. MCO 5500.6F is not applicable under the following circumstances:

a. In a combat zone in time of war.

b. In a designated hostile fire area not in the time of war.

c. Under the operational control of other Federal agencies. Such personnel will adhere to that organization's policies.

d. Civil Disturbance area.

5. Weapons Loading.

a. The M9 9MM pistol will be carried with a fully loaded magazine with a round in the chamber, the safety engaged, and one extra fully loaded magazine.

b. The M16A2 Service Rifle will be carried with a fully loaded magazine with NO round in the chamber, weapon on safe, and one other extra magazine.

c. Weapons with automatic slide assemblies, i.e. M249 SAW, M240G, M2, and MK19 will be employed in weapon's condition 3.

6. Force Continuum. Those non-lethal measures employed before the use of deadly force. This does not mean that each one of these non-lethal measures must be used before the use of deadly force. The use of force must be commensurate with the situation. Non-lethal forms of force are:

a. Verbal commands.

b. OC spray.

c. Pressure points and come-along techniques.

d. Batons.

e. Non-lethal munitions.

f. Military working dog (MWD).

g. Use of Deadly Force.

Use of Deadly Force.

1. Use of deadly force is justifiable only under conditions of extreme necessity, and only as a last resort, when lesser means have failed or cannot be reasonably employed.

a. Self Defense.

b. In Defense of Property Involving National Security.

(1) To prevent the felony theft of, damage to, or espionage aimed at property/information specifically designated by the commanding officer or competent authority to be VITAL to national security.

(2) To prevent the threatened theft of, damage to, or espionage aimed at property/information specifically designated by the commanding officer or competent authority to be of SUBSTANTIAL IMPORTANCE to national security.

c. To Prevent or Interrupt Serious Offenses Against Persons. When deadly force reasonably appears necessary to prevent the commission of a serious offense, which threatens death or serious bodily harm to another person.

d. Apprehension and Escape.

(1) To apprehend or prevent the escape of a person when probable cause exists to believe that a person has committed an offense, which deadly force would be authorized.

(2) When deadly force appears reasonably necessary to apprehend or prevent the escape of a person who has had access to vital or substantial material and appears to present a threat of theft, damage, or espionage.

(3) To prevent the escape of a prisoner and competent authority has authorized the use of deadly force.

e. Lawful Order.

Rules of Engagement

1. General.

a. ROE may be restrictive or permissive.

(1) ROE may be restrictive: do not fire unless fired upon (when); unattended munitions, mines, and booby traps are forbidden (how); do not fire until you see the whites of their eyes (when and against whom).

(2) Or ROE may be permissive: a unit may use whatever force it deems necessary to defend itself against a hostile act or hostile intent (how and when); military aircraft of country X operating in a specified area will be considered hostile (when and against whom); and shoot first and ask questions later (when).

b. Sources of ROE.

(1) Domestic Law.

(2) National Security Policy.

(3) International Law.

2. Purpose.

a. Political. Prevents the expansion of military objective beyond political objectives.

b. Military. Lends to successful mission accomplishment. Aggression and the right to self-defense must be balanced against losing public support, provoking a more powerful enemy, or fighting at an unfavorable time or place.

b. Legality. ROE are intended to prevent violations of domestic and international law and must consider, for example, the concept of proportionality and the selection criteria for targeting.

3. Guiding Principles.

a. Coalition ROE should seek commonality. Ideally, a single set of rules that applies to all coalition members in a theater of operation is better understood, easily implemented, and increases interoperability.

b. ROE must change as the tactical situation changes. Peacetime rules are designed to maintain/deter hostilities while wartime ROE is designed to WIN!

c. Constantly reevaluate the effectiveness of ROE, and publish changes as necessary.

d. ROE Summary:

(1) Make them clear and brief.

(2) Avoid excessively technical language.

(3) Tailor the language to the audience.

(4) Separate them by job description.

(5) Assure they are easily understood and remembered.

e. Forces may be required to apply ROE in a split second, so simplicity is paramount.

4. Special Instructions.

a. An order to halt shall be given before a shot is fired

(in English and the local language).

b. Warning shots are not authorized.

c. Shots will not be fired if they are likely to endanger innocent bystanders. The only exception is to prevent the theft, damage, or espionage aimed at nuclear weapons.

d. Shots shall be fired to eliminate the threat. If the circumstances render it difficult to direct fire with sufficient precision, these situations will not preclude the use of a firearm.

5. Coordinating Instructions.

a. Prior to being armed in the performance of security/law enforcement duties, the Marine will:

(1) Qualify or complete a familiarization course with the weapon/weapon system.

(2) Receive instruction on the loading, unloading, and clearing of the weapon/weapon system.

b. Once a year receive use of force/deadly force instruction and pass a written exam.

c. As part of deployment training, each Marine will receive use of force training focusing on anticipated scenarios.

d. The senior MP should request specific ROE, unique to theater of operation, from the MAGTF commander.

APPENDIX:

C - Use of Force/Weapons Clearing Acknowledgment Form.

NONCOMBATANT EVACUATION OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard operating procedures for conducting Noncombatant Evacuation Operations (NEO).

2. General. A NEO is an evacuation under emergency conditions. Military Police are used within the evacuation control center to process personnel for evacuation.

3. Evacuation Priority.

CATEGORY:

I (Blue) All American Citizens
II (Green) Alien Members of American Families
III (Yellow) Alien Employees of U.S Government or Business
IV (Red) Other Designated Aliens

SUBCATEGORY

A Female, Pregnant
B Women with Children
C Aged and Infirm
D Unaccompanied female, 18 or Older
E Able-bodied Male, 18 or Older

4. Assumptions.

a. The host country U.S Ambassador commands the NEO operations. He will make all major decisions concerning the NEO.

b. Interpreters will be provided to assist in administrative processing.

c. The Senior MP will make liaison with host nation law enforcement and military forces to coordinate security concerns. EOD teams will be provided to handle suspected explosive devices.

e. The ECC will be spread-loaded during flight IOT continue the mission in the event of losses.

Organization and Operation of the Evacuation Control Center

1. Background. The ECC will be task organized to accomplish the mission. The Combat Service Support commander is tasked with organizing and operating the ECC. See APPENDIX D.

2. ECC Site Selection. The G/S-3 will direct the reconnaissance of an evacuation site. EEIs for the site recon should include:

a. Defensibility of site perimeter.

b. Ease of crowd control.

c. Size of possible landing zones, accessibility to site and proximity to evacuation routes.

d. Obstacles requiring removal and special equipment needed to improve site.

e. Availability of pre-existing structures with sufficient area and facilities to handle evacuees.

3. Procedure.

a. Headquarters Section.

(1) Plan, organize and supervise the employment of the ECC.

(2) Maintain liaison with outside agencies involved in the NEO.

(3) Monitor communications and provide command and control.

(4) Maintain accountability of personnel processed.

(5) Advise MAGTF commander on the progress of the evacuation operation.

b. Reception Section (RS)/Dismount Point.

(1) The reception section, also known as the dismount point, will be located at the point of initial contact with evacuees.

(2) The RS will brief all evacuees on ECC procedures, including the policy on contraband. An amnesty period will be provided to discard any contraband.

(3) Evacuees will be limited to that which can be carried by the individual except for personnel carrying government documents.

(4) Identify all personnel subject to evacuation and any VIPs requiring expeditious processing. VIPs will be brought to the VIP section for immediate processing. All others will be allowed into the ECC as time and space permit.

c. Search Section.

(1) Brief all evacuees that they will be searched for the safety of the handling force and the evacuees.

(2) Conduct a hasty search of all evacuees, followed by a detailed search as required.

(3) Once the evacuee has been properly searched, return all belongings and direct the evacuee to the registration section.

d. Registration Section.

(1) Register all evacuees by completing the original and four copies of the Evacuee Embarkation Form (EEF) for each evacuee or family of the evacuees. See APPENDIX D.

(2) The registration section will retain one copy of the EEF while forwarding a copy to the State Department liaison, OIC of embark and a copy to the ship the evacuee will be assigned to.

e. Medical Section.

(1) Identify and maintain necessary medical equipment and supplies, stretchers, SINCGARs, water cans, blankets and ponchos.

(2) Examine and render treatment to evacuees requiring critical medical attention.

(3) Execute identification, treatment, and expeditious handling of evacuees requiring immediate medical evacuation. S-2 clerks will obtain as much information as possible on such personnel prior to evacuation utilizing the EEFs. However, the evacuation will not be delayed under any circumstances.

(4) Coordinate with reception and registration sections concerning evacuees requiring immediate medical attention and/or evacuation.

(5) Identify personnel in need of medical treatment who have bypassed the reception and/or registration section, but do not require medical evacuation, and treat as required. Subsequently return to the appropriate section for continuation of processing.

f. Logistics Section.

(1) Provide transportation for evacuees as required.

(2) Provide food, temporary shelter, and other logistical support to evacuees as required.

(3) Collocated with the embarkation section

g. Embarkation Section.

(1) Form evacuees into teams for movement by aircraft or surface means.

(2) Brief the evacuees on the mode of travel they are about to be debarked on.

(3) Brief the evacuees on how to properly wear and use the floatation devices as well as the safety procedures for aircraft and boat embarkation.

(4) Collect EEFs from each family of evacuees; place forms in an envelope and mark aircraft, helicopter, boat number, and name and time of departure on outside.

h. VIP Section. Register, screen, and arrange for medical attention for all VIPs once delivered from reception.

i. Holding Section.

(1) Locate a secure area to set up a temporary holding area, preferably with only one entry/exit in an easily controlled area away from activity.

(2) Keep a log of all violators and what violation was committed once they come into the holding area.

(3) Flexi cuff all violators for the safety of the Marines in the holding area.

(4) Update the ECC commander on the status of violators in the holding area.

j. HLZ/Sea Site. The size and organization of the ECC will vary depending on the commander in charge, the number of evacuees, and the environment. When required or deemed appropriate, the ECC may be conducted on ATF shipping.

Coordinating Instructions

1. Handling of Evacuees.

a. General non-combatant evacuees.

(1) Evacuees are not EPWs. Treat them with dignity and respect while maintaining security.

(2) Searching of women will only be conducted by female Marines, female embassy personnel, or medical personnel.

(3) If mission allows, do not separate families.

b. VIPs.

(1) Courtesy and respect.

(2) Speed of evacuation through priority movement.

(3) Provisions of guides during evacuation.

(4) Provision of immediate health and comfort items.

c. Request for Political Asylum and Temporary Refuge.

(1) Asylum may not be granted by evacuation forces.

(2) Temporary refuge must be provided if the capability exists and the foreign national is in imminent danger.

(3) Termination of temporary refuge only when directed by SECNAV or higher authority.

(4) U.S. evacuation forces must not invite foreign nationals to seek asylum or refuge.

d. Combatants and Infiltrators.

(1) Conduct a careful search of all discovered combatants and infiltrators. Looking for weapons or military information.

(2) Segregate from non-combatant evacuees.

(3) Guard combatants and infiltrators at all times.

(4) Physically restrain when being transported.

(5) Turn over to the host nation officials.

2. The Senior MP.

a. Plan crowd control procedures to include use of riot control formations/equipment, non-lethal means of force, public address systems, and use of riot control agents.

b. Ensure contraband is properly accounted for. Contraband should be maintained in a secure area until properly disposed. The MAGTF Commander and the SJA will determine disposal procedures.

APPENDIX:

D - ECC Flow Chart/Evacuation Debarkation Form

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard operating procedures for the use of operational risk management.

2. General. Danger is inherent in the nature of military operations. ORM is a decision making process that enhances operational capability by reducing risk.

ORM Process.

1. The ORM process is a five-step process.

a. Identify Hazards. Begin with an outline or chart of the major steps in the operation (operational analysis). Next, conduct a Preliminary Hazard Analysis by listing all of the

hazards associated with each step in the operational analysis along with possible causes for those hazards.

b. Assess Hazards. For each hazards identified, determine the associated degree of risk in terms of probability and severity. Although not required, the use of a matrix may be helpful in assessing hazards.

c. Make Risk Decisions. First, develop risk control options. Start with the most serious risk first and select controls that will reduce the risk to a minimum consistent with mission accomplishment. With selected controls in place, decide if the benefit of the operation outweighs the risk. If risk outweighs benefit or if assistance is required to implement controls, communicate with higher authority in the chain of command.

d. Implement Controls. The following measures can be used to eliminate hazards or reduce the degree of risk. These are listed by order of preference:

(1) Administrative Controls. Controls that reduce risks through specific administrative actions, such as:

(a) Providing suitable warnings, markings, placards, signs, and notices.

(b) Establishing written policies, programs instructions and standard operating procedures (SOP).

(c) Training personnel to recognize hazards and take appropriate precautionary measures.

(d) Limiting the exposure to a hazard (either by reducing the number of personnel/assets or the length of time they are exposed).

(2) Engineering Controls. Controls that use engineering methods to reduce risks by design, material selection or substitution when technically or economically feasible.

(3) Personal Protective Equipment. Serves as a barrier between personnel and a hazard. It should be used when other controls do not reduce the hazards to an acceptable level.

e. Supervise. Conduct follow-up evaluations of the controls to ensure they remain in place and have the desired effect. Monitor for changes that may require further ORM. Take corrective action when necessary.

Risk Assessment Matrix.

1. A matrix can be used to accomplish the second step of the ORM process. Using a matrix to quantify and prioritize the risk(s) does not lessen the inherently subjective nature of risk assessment. However, a matrix does not provide a consistent framework for evaluating risk. Although different matrices may be used for various applications, any risk assessment tool should include the elements of hazard severity and mishap probability. The risk assessment code (RAC) defined by a matrix represents the degree of risk associated with a hazard considering these two elements. While the degree of risk is subjective in nature, the RAC does accurately reflect the relative amount of perceived risk between various hazards. The example matrix described below is used in naval occupational safety and health assessments. Using the matrix, the RAC is derived as follows.

a. Hazard Severity. An assessment of the worst credible consequence, which can occur as a result of a hazard. Severity is defined by potential degree of injury, illness, property damage, loss of assets (personnel, time, money) or effect on mission. The contribution of two or more hazards may increase the overall level of risk. Hazard severity categories are assigned as Roman numerals according to the following criteria:

(1) Category I. The hazards may cause death, loss of facility/asset or result in grave damage to national interests.

(2) Category II. The hazard may cause severe injury, illness, property damage, damage to national or service interests or degradation to efficient use of assets.

(3) Category III. The hazard may cause minor injury, illness, property damage, damage to national, service or command interests or degradation to efficient use of assets.

(4) Category IV. The hazard presents a minimal threat to personnel safety or health, property, national, service or command interests or efficient use of assets.

b. Mishap Probability. The probability that a hazard will result in a mishap or loss, based on an assessment of such factors as location exposure (cycles or hours of operation), affected population. Experience or previously established statistical information. Mishap probability will be assigned an English letter according to the following criteria:

(1) Sub Category A. Likely to occur immediately or within a short period of time. Expected to occur frequently to an individual person, item or continuously to a fleet, inventory or group.

(2) Sub Category B. Probably will occur in time. Expected to occur several times to an individual person, item or frequently to a fleet, inventory or group.

(3) Sub Category C. May occur in time. Can reasonably be expected to occur some time to an individual person, item or several times to a fleet, inventory or group.

(4) Sub Category D. Unlikely to occur.

Risk Assessment Code. The RAC is an expression of risk which combines the elements of hazard severity and mishap probability. Using the matrix shown below, the RAC is expressed as a number that can be used to help determine hazards abatement priorities.

Figure 1
Mishap Probability

Hazard Severity	A	B	C	D
I	1	1	2	3
II,III	1	2	3	4
IV	3	4	5	5

RAC Definitions:

1 - Critical
2 - Serious
3 - Moderate
4 - Minor
5 - Negligible

Note 1. In some cases, the worst credible consequence of a hazard may not correspond to the highest RAC for that hazard. For example, one hazard may have two potential consequences. The severity of the worst consequence (I) may be unlikely (D), resulting in a RAC of 3. The severity of the lesser consequence

(II) may be probable (B), resulting in a RAC of 2. Therefore, it is also important to consider the less severe consequences of a hazard if they are more likely than the worst credible consequence, since this combination may actually present a greater overall risk.

Note 2. The ORM process provides an additional tool for commanders to use in reducing risks inherent in military operations. It is not a complete change in the way we approach the risk management problem, but rather provides a specific methodology for personnel to anticipate hazards and evaluate risk. Just as we have trained our personnel to focus on the mission, we can train our personnel to evaluate risk as part of their decision making process. As personnel are trained in and use the process, ORM will become intuitive, being applied automatically as a means to aid in quickly developing an effective course of action to accomplish the mission.

2. Limitations.

a. Does not remove risk altogether.

b. Does not sanction or justify violating the laws or environmental concerns.

c. Does not inhibit flexibility or initiative.

d. Does not remove necessity for unit tactics, techniques and procedures.

EQUIPMENT STANDARDIZATION AND PRE-DEPLOYMENT PLANNING

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standing operating procedures and promulgate guidance concerning equipment standardization and pre-deployment planning.

2. General. Ensuring personnel and equipment are prepared for deployment allows commands to smoothly transition from garrison to a tactical environment. This guidance is just that, guidance. Deploying commands will establish specific guidelines before deployment. This section is designed to provide generic guidance and ensure this command is prepared to deploy.

Equipment Embarkation

1. Procedure. When conducting equipment embarkation:

a. The Senior MP will:

(1) Determine equipment, vehicles, and supply requirements by analyzing stated and implied missions.

(2) Determine, from higher headquarters, specific embarkation guidance for the operation.

(3) Appoint, in writing, a primary and alternate embark representative. The primary embark representative will be an NCO or above.

(4) Establish an arrival and assembly plan, based on initial mission requirement and assumptions, placing equipment and personnel, in priority sequence, into the area of operation.

(5) Establish a plan for the marshaling and movement of personnel and equipment to the point of departure.

b. The Embarkation Representative will:

(1) Ensure embark requirements and a load plan is established for organic equipment.

(2) Determine embark requirements based on stated and implied mission and guidance from the senior MP.

(3) Develop a specific load plan based on the senior MP's arrival and assembly plan.

(4) Ensure all equipment is prepared for embarkation.

(5) Prepare and/or coordinate the preparation of embarkation reports and the submission of embarkation data to higher headquarters.

c. Preparation Guidance:

(1) Material will be packaged to afford maximum protection against physical and mechanical handling damage, corrosion, deterioration and water damage.

(2) Vehicles:

(a) All external fuel cans will be completely filled to the top seal, or purged and emptied. Only one external fuel can is authorized per vehicle and only if that vehicle has an SL-3 external fuel can bracket.

(b) Vehicle fuel tanks will be so more than 3/4 full when load aboard an aircraft, and no more than 1/2 full when loaded on an aircraft ramp.

(c) Cargo loaded in a vehicle bed must not be higher than the side racks (metal sides of the cargo body or the removable wooden side rails). Mobile loaded cargo weight will not exceed the cross-country weight limitations of the vehicle.

(d) Vehicles will be weighed and marked with front axle, rear axle, and combined weights and center of balance after being loaded. See APPENDIX E.

(e) Fording kits will be installed on each vehicle.

(f) Vehicles capable of carrying cargo shall be fully loaded unless otherwise directed.

(g) All lifting points will be serviceable to include safety pins, cotter pins, and other safety devices.

(h) Vehicles will start on their own, be clean, and free from leaks of any kind.

(i) Each vehicle will have a lock and key to secure the steering wheel. Vehicle steering wheels will not be locked in staging or marshaling areas.

(j) A driver and assistant driver will be assigned for each vehicle.

(k) APPENDIX E prescribes basic vehicle load plans.

(3) Embarkation Boxes will:

(a) Be the standard 6.0 cube foot box, 50-cube foot box, and standard tent crates (102 cube). Non-standard boxes will be approved by higher headquarters.

(b) Be properly marked, as directed, i.e. units RUC, unit name, UPT or stowage designator, and weight determined by the cube of the box.

(c) Be inspected by a qualified higher headquarters embark representative.

(d) Be properly waterproofed.

(4) Embark Boxes are NOT required to be painted; however, where the box marking are located, an undercoat of paint should be applied to prevent bleeding.

(5) Packing List. The NAVSUP form 255 should be used as a packing list. Four copies of packing lists will be prepared. One copy will be placed in the container. One copy will be placed on the outside of the box within a protective envelope. The original will be retained by the embark NCO, and one copy will be forwarded to higher headquarters.

(6) Hazardous Material:

(a) All equipment/supplies which are considered hazardous material; i.e. NBC chemicals, fuel, cleaning agents, batteries, insecticides, fire extinguishers and ammunition will identified to higher headquarters.

(b) Questionable items will be brought to the higher headquarters embark representative for clarification.

(c) All items identified as hazardous material will have proper label placed on the outside of the box.

(d) Hazardous items will be certified for shipment by a qualified person. The higher headquarters embark representative will coordinate this inspection.

(7) Rounding Procedures:

(a) Length, width, and height: Dimensional characteristics are normally computed in inches for outside dimensions and infractions on an inch for accuracy.

Example:	1/4 inch = .25	1 1/4 = 1.25
	1/2 inch = .50	1 1/2 = 1.50
	3/4 inch = .75	1 3/4 = 1.75

Rule: 1.1 to 1.9. is rounded up to 2. Always round to the next higher whole number.

(b) Cube and Square: Compute for cube and square using the following formula:

Cube = Length x Width x Height divided by 1728. Round up to the nearest whole number.

Example: 32" x 18" x 32" divided by 1728 = 10.6 cu ft or 11.0 cu ft.

Square = Length x Width divided by 144. Round up to the nearest whole number.

Example: 132" x 37" divide by 144 = 33.9 or 34.0 sq ft.

d. Consolidated Memorandum for Record (CMR): A serialized listing of all detachment gear will be prepared prior to departure. Frequent accountability inspections will be conducted to ensure positive accountability is maintained.

Personnel Preparation

1. Procedure.

a. Administrative Actions.

(1) Establish a database with the following fields:

(a) Last Name, First Name, Middle Initial, SSN, Rank, Sex, Weight, Blood type, Rifle/Pistol Serial #.

(2) Ensure wills/power of attorneys are current.

(3) Ensure OQR/SRB are screened and updated.

b. Medical and Dental.

(1) Ensure personnel meet dental and medical qualifications for deployment.

(2) Ensure shots are current.

(3) Medical and dental screenings can be conducted when the records are being checked out, but this is NOT the preferred method.

c. Personnel/Platoon/Vehicle Equipment. APPENDIX F prescribes individual load/platoon/vehicle requirements.

d. Training. Unit/individual training is based on the implied and stated missions. As a minimum, the following training should occur:

(1) Essential mission training.

(2) Weapons qualifications/familiarization fire (Heavy Guns, 9mm pistols, AT-4).

(3) Weapons loading, unloading and clearing procedures.

(4) Rules of engagement and use of force procedures.

(5) PR-24 Certification.

(6) CPR and First Aid.

(7) Area of Operation indoctrination.

APPENDICES:

E - Vehicle Loading Diagram

F - Prescribed Individual Load List/Platoon/Vehicle Equipment List.

MILITARY POLICE WEAPONS SYSTEMS AND EMPLOYMENT

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for military police weapons systems and employment.

2. General. Military police use a wide variety of weapons systems to accomplish the four primary missions. A MP must have working knowledge of all the weapons systems available so that they may be employed in the offense, defense and law enforcement roles. This knowledge is to include nomenclature, operation, laying techniques and general weapons tactics.

APPENDIX:

G - MILITARY POLICE WEAPONS SYSTEMS AND EMPLOYMENT

COMMUNICATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To provide standard procedures for the establishment of communication systems for Military Police operations and communication security.

2. General. Systems will be designed to support communication between the MP tactical command post, higher HQ, and subordinate static/mobile post. A communication link will be established with host nation/local enforcement agencies as required.

Procedures

1. Assumptions.

a. Communications Chief. The Military Police communications chief will ensure the following tasks and responsibilities are conducted.

(1) Ensure communication equipment is accounted for and preventative maintenance conducted.

(2) Communication equipment maintenance will be performed on a weekly basis.

(3) Provide the necessary proficiency training to company personnel to ensure they can maintain, operate, and communicate properly with each piece of communications equipment used by this company.

(4) Provide a net control station (NCS) for the tactical command post.

(5) Ensure required CMS material is available in sufficient quantity to maintain effective COMSEC during the operation.

(6) Coordinate with higher HQs concerning operating frequencies and communication policies, which could influence the operation.

(7) Ensure frequencies, call signs, and authentication codes are provided to each subordinate unit as required. Positive control measures will be employed to prevent unauthorized disclosure.

(8) Install, operate, and maintain wire communications as required.

(9) Ensure communication is maintained throughout the mission. Communication discrepancies will be expeditiously repaired.

(10) Ensure radio batteries are turned into the communication company battery NCO for proper disposal.

2. Phonetic Alphabet. For identifying any letter of the alphabet, the standard phonetic alphabet will be used as follows:

A	ALPHA	J	JULIET	S	SIERRA
B	BRAVO	K	KILO	T	TANGO
C	CHARLIE	L	LIMA	U	UNIFORM
D	DELTA	M	MIKE	V	VICTOR
E	ECHO	N	NOVEMBER	W	WHISKEY
F	FOXTROT	O	OSCAR	X	X-RAY
G	GOLF	P	PAPA	Y	YANKEE
H	HOTEL	Q	QUEBEC	Z	ZULU
I	INDIA	R	ROMEO		

COMMAND AND CONTROL SYSTEMS

1. Pro-words. Pronounceable words or phrases with an assigned meaning, used to expedite communications on both radio and telephone circuits. Pro-words possess no security value and are considered plain language. MPs will be familiar with and utilize pro-words at all times to decrease transmission time and ensure nets do not become crowded with low-priority traffic. The following are some of the most commonly used pro-words:

a. ALL AFTER: The portion of the message to which I have reference is all which follows.

b. ALL BEFORE: The portion of the message to which I have reference is all that which proceeds.

c. BREAK: Indicates the separation of the text from other portions of the message.

d. FIGURES: Numerals or numbers to follow.

e. I READ BACK: The following is my response to your instructions to read back.

f. THIS IS: This transmission is from the station that is identifying itself.

g. UNKNOWN STATION: The identity of the station with whom I am attempting to establish communications is unknown.

h. WAIT: I must pause for a few seconds.

i. OUT: This is the end of my transmission to you and no answer is required or expected.

j. OVER: This is the end of my transmission to you and respond as necessary.

k. ROGER: I have received your last transmission satisfactorily.

l. SAY AGAIN: Repeat (never use "repeat", as this may be confused with the same call for fire command by the net controller for a fire mission) all or part of your last transmission.

m. SILENCE: Cease transmission immediately. Silence will be maintained until instructed to resume.

n. SILENCE LIFTED: Resume normal transmissions. Silence can be only be lifted by the imposing station or higher authority.

o. I SPELL: I will spell the following word phonetically.

2. Circuit Discipline. Discipline on the radio is important to the success of the mission. The following rules and regulation must be adhered to while operating on a radio.

a. No transmission shall be made that has not been authorized by proper authority.

b. No violations of imposed radio silence.

c. No unofficial conversations between operators.

d. No excessive tuning or testing.

e. No transmitting operator's personal call sign or name.

f. No unauthorized use of plain language.

g. No use of other than authorized pro-words.

h. No profane, indecent or obscene language.

i. All messages will be written down prior to transmission (tempo depending).

j. Transmission will be kept to the minimum possible length.

k. Prior to transmission, operators will listen to the net traffic to ensure their transmissions do not interfere with other station's transmissions.

PREVENTATIVE MEASURES

1. General. The following tactical measures should be taken in consideration when transmitting or receiving on radio nets.

a. Keep radio transmissions to a minimum.

b. Use pro-words as much as possible

c. Use alternate means of communication when possible.

d. Use Cryptographic equipment and fills to secure transmissions.

e. Change frequencies, call signs, and operation codes daily.

f. Use an encryption sheet to pass potentially compromising information over uncovered nets. Such information might be grid coordinates, casualties, and time of attack.

g. Conduct authentication procedures.

Authentication and Encryption

1. General. Authentication is the means by which a station may establish its authenticity. Authentication systems are designed to protect communication systems against fraudulent transmission, enable transmitting stations to distinguish between authentic and bogus stations. Message authentication

will be used routinely on all NON-SECURE circuits. Encryption is a means of coding messages decipherable only by individuals with an ACOI.

2. When to Authenticate.

a. Any station suspects imitative deception on any circuit. Authentication may be advisable on encrypted circuits to ensure a message has not been falsified.

b. Challenged to authenticate.

c. Directing radio silence or breaking radio silence. Radio silence will not be broken just to authenticate.

d. Transmitting operating instructions which affect the military situation.

3. Authentication and Encryption Procedure.

a. Challenge and replay authentication.

(1) A challenge consists of two letters randomly selected. The first letter would be found on the set indicator column (far left), and the second letter would be found to the right of the first letter somewhere in the line.

(2) The reply to the challenge is the code letter found directly under the second letter of the challenge.

(3) If there is no line under the challenge letter, go back to the top of the chart and use the first line.

(4) EXAMPLE:

F	MHU	RDX	SIO	JPK
G	FYT	KLO	NBU	SAW

O3J, this is S4M over.
S4M, this is O3J, authenticate "FO". over.
O3J, this is S4M, I authenticate "U", over.
S4M, this is O3J, roger, send your traffic over.

Remedial Actions

1. Procedures for Remedial Action. If an MP experiences interference on the net, he will:

a. Not assume the station is the target of hostile electronic warfare. The first action conducted should be to remove the radio antenna. If the problem does not continue, the radio operator may assume that the station is being effected by electronic warfare.

b. Not announce or indicate he believes he is being jammed.

c. Keep operating, but speak slowly and authenticate all stations.

d. Send high precedence traffic on another net, but also continue operating on the jammed net.

e. Use alternate frequency as a last resort.

f. Submit a TUFT report via a secure net.

(1) TUFT Report. This is the format for a Meaconing, Intrusion, Jamming, and Interference Report (MIJI) used to inform higher authority when experiencing interference.

T Time of interference
U Unit affected
F Frequency(s) affected
T Type of interference (jamming, imitative deception)

2. Bead window. Routine conversations on none secure circuits are lucrative sources of information to the enemy. Certain information is more sensitive than others. Essential Elements of Friend Information (EEFI) are specific items of information which could degrade the security of military operations. The BEADWINDOW procedure is a method used to warn users on none secure circuits that they are divulging or about to divulge sensitive information.

a. Every effort must be made to avoid disclosure of EEFI's over unsecured circuits.

(1) Radio operators will be familiar with BEADWINDOW procedures.

(2) A copy of EEFI's will be posted near all uncovered radio circuits.

Bead Window Procedure.

1. BEADWINDOW reports will be immediately issued by the net control station (NCS) or any station detecting the disclosure of EEFI's on an unsecured radio circuit.

2. The NCS/station monitors/detects a station disclosing EEFI's.

a. The NCS/station immediately makes the following transmission: "(call sign of disclosing station) THIS IS (call sign of reporting station), BEADWINDOW ZERO ONE. OVER".

b. The disclosing station replies: "(reporting station call sign) THIS IS (disclosing station call sign) ROGER, OUT."

c. There is no discussion of the BEADWINDOWS infraction over an unsecured circuit. If it is necessary to discuss the infraction, it will be done over a secure circuit.

3. Current EEFIs.

a. Friendly or enemy positions. Movement or intended position movement. Position, course, speed, altitude, or destination of any air, sea, or ground unit.

b. Friendly or enemy capabilities or limitations: Capabilities composition or identity. Capabilities, limitations, or significant casualties to special equipment. Weapons systems, sensors, unit or personnel. Percentages of fuel/ammunition remaining.

c. Friendly or enemy operations, intentions, progress, or operational results: Information pertaining to assault objectives, mission participants, or logistical intentions.

d. Friendly or enemy intentions, progress, results, or reports concerning electronic warfare or counter measures.

e. Friendly or enemy key personnel: Movement, location, identity of flag officers, distinguished visitors, etc..

f. Friendly or enemy COMSEC procedures: Linkage of codes or code words with plain language. Compromise of changing frequencies or line numbers. Compromise of encrypted/classified call signs. Incorrect authentication procedures.

g. Inappropriate transmissions: Other information transmitted over a circuit requiring greater security protection.

4. Gingerbread. A procedural term used to warn net operators that enemy forces are attempting net intrusion through ICD. This procedure may also be used to if the situation warrants (i.e. crypto gear has been reported stolen, lost or captured).

Gingerbread Procedures.

1. GINGERBREAD is the term used to warn net operators that enemy forces are attempting net intrusion through ICD.

2. Enemy radio operators can be exceptionally adept at entering our circuits. Radio operators/supervisors must be constantly alert for signs of ICD.

3. When an operator suspects intrusion or irregularities in net procedures, the operators will:

a. Announce "GINGERBREAD" on the net.

b. Use authentication to verify the authenticity of stations passing/receiving on the net, especially for messages which are directive in nature.

c. Make an appropriate logbook entry.

d. Notify the watch supervisor and the S-6 immediately.

4. Covered voice radio circuits are usually exempt from the "GINGERBREAD" procedures. However, "GINGERBREAD" procedures may be used if the situation warrants i.e., crypto gear has been reported stolen, lost, or captured.

Communications Equipment

1. General. To familiarize Marines with the capabilities and applications of communications gear by establishing step by step instructions for operating and maintaining gear. See APPENDIX H Communications Equipment.

2. **AN/PRC-119**. Man-packed VHF SINCARS radio.

Frequency Range:	30.000 - 87.975 MHz
Channels:	2320

Channel Bandwidth:	25 - kHz increments
Preset Channels:	Six plus CUE and Manual frequency settings
Operating Modes:	Cipher / Plain Text / Data / Frequency Hopping
Operating Range:	5-10 Kilometers or 3-5 Miles
RF Power Output:	Four variable settings: 500 MW / 160 MW / 4 W / 50 W
Power Source:	BA-5590

a. SL-3 Components:

Man pack antenna, AS 3683
Receiver-transmitter, RT-1523B
Handset, H-250
Battery box, CY-8523A
Battery, BA-5590
ALICE pack
Man pack antenna, AS-4266

b. Set-up procedures:

(1) Clean all connection surfaces.

(2) Open battery cover, and insert BA-5590 battery. Re-secure battery cover.

(3) Unscrew antenna cover, and screw in desired antenna.

(4) Push H-250 handset onto one of the handset sockets.

c. Trouble Shooting:

(1) Clean all connectors with eraser.

(2) Check battery life.

(3) Check tightness of all connections.

(4) Check LOS to nearest radio for obstructions/out of range?

3. **AN/VRC-88.** AN/VRC-88 is mounted in a vehicle mount with a powered antenna.

MILITARY POLICE COMMAND AND CONTROL

Frequency Range:	30.000 - 87.975 MHz
Channels:	2320
Channel Bandwidth:	25 - kHz increments
Preset Channels:	Six plus CUE and Manual frequency settings
Operating Modes:	Cipher / Plain Text / Data / Frequency Hopping
Operating Range:	10-40 km with amplifier
RF Power Output:	Four variable settings: 500 MW / 160 MW / 4 W / 50 W
Power Source:	Vehicle power

a. SL-3 Components:

Vehicular antenna AS-3900 series
Loudspeaker LS-671/U
Receiver/transmitter RT-1523 (C)/U
Control-monitor (optional)
CVC helmet VIC-2 (Optional)
Handset H-250/U
Amplifier-adapter
Alternate loudspeaker LS-671/U
Mounting base MT-6352/VRC
Cable assembly, special purpose electrical W-4
Cable assembly, radio frequency CG-3855/VRC
Cable assembly, special purpose electrical W-2
Carrying case, radio
Antenna, man pack AS-3683/PRC
Battery box CY-8523A/PRC

b. Set-up procedures:

(1) Insert R/T into mounting bracket, connecting sockets.

(2) Mount amplifier-adapter in the mounting base.

(3) Attach W-4 cable from R/T to amplifier-adapter.

(4) Install loudspeaker on mounting bracket.

(5) Connect CG-3855 cable to antenna lead.

(6) Install handset/CVC helmet/earphones.

(7) Install antenna.

c. Trouble Shooting. See AN/PRC-119.

4. **AN/MRC-145**: Twin boosted VHF radio mounts with an SL-3 M-1038 HMMWV.

Frequency Range:	30.000 - 87.975 MHz
Channels:	2320
Channel Bandwidth:	25 - kHz increments
Preset Channels:	Six plus CUE and Manual frequency settings
Operating Modes:	Cipher / Plain Text / Data / Frequency Hopping
Operating Range:	10-40 km
RF Power Output:	Four variable settings: 500 MW / 160 MW / 4 W / 50 W
Power Source:	Vehicle power

a. SL-3 Components:

Two (2) Vehicular antenna AS-3900 series
Loudspeaker LS-671/U
Two (2) Receiver/Transmitter RT-1523 (C)/U
Control-Monitor (optional)
CVC Helmet VIC-2 (Optional)
Handset H-250/U
Amplifier-adapter
Power amplifiers AM-7238
Alternate loudspeaker LS-671/U
Mounting Base MT-6352/VRC
Two (2) Cable assembly, special purpose electrical W-4
Two (2) Cable assembly, radio frequency CG-3855/VRC
Two (2) Cable assembly, special purpose electrical W-2

b. Set-up procedures:

(1) Insert R/Ts into mounting brackets, connecting sockets.

(2) Mount amplifier-adapters in the mounting base.

(3) Attach W-4 cable from R/T to amplifier-adapter.

(4) Mount one power amplifier into amplifier adaptor, one into the power amplifier mount.

(5) Install loudspeakers on mounting bracket.

(6) Connect both CG-3855 cable to antenna lead.

(7) Install handset/CVC helmet/earphones.

(8) Install antennas.

5. **AN/GRA-39**. Provides the capability of remotely controlling a radio set up to a distance of two (2) miles, using standard field wire. The AN/GRA-39 provides three types of operations: telephone communications between the remote and local control unit operators, radio transmission and reception from the remote control position, as well as a buzzer system to alert one another.

a. SL-3 Components.

C-2328	Remote control unit
C-2329	Local control unit
H-250	Handset
CW-598	Carrying bag, cotton
Sling,	carrying (2) Canvas strips

b. Setup

(1) Install 6 BA-3030 (D-cell batteries) in the local unit.

(2) Install 6 BA-3030 in the remote unit.

(3) Connect the remote unit to the local unit using standard field wire.

(4) Connect the remote unit to the AN/PRC-119 with the audio connector from the remote unit to the audio connector on the AN/PRC-119.

(5) Turn "ON" the remote and the local unit.

(6) Attempt a line check with the radio operator at each end.

(7) Attempt a radio check on the net.

c. Troubleshooting

(1) Ensure the common field wire is connected at both ends.

(2) Clean audio connectors on the AN/PRC-119, local unit and remote unit.

(3) Ensure all connectors are properly connected.

(4) Ensure both units are "ON".

(5) Ensure batteries are not dead. Listen for side tone in handset.

(6) Spin batteries in bottom of both units if batteries are new.

6. **OE-254.** Long range field antenna.

7. **AN/PIQ-5.** Portable public address system which permits amplifying the human voice sufficiently so that commands or instructions may be understood by personnel over distances too far for the unaided voice to be understood, or in locations where noise interferes with message intelligibility. Commonly known as a bullhorn.

a. SL-3 Components

Bullhorn
Carrying Case
Hand microphone with cable connected to bullhorn.

b. Setup procedures.

(1) Install ten (10) BA-3030 batteries into the back of the AN/PIQ-5 by taking the back plate off and following the instructions on the inside of the plate.

(2) Replace the back plate.

(3) Depress the trigger switch in the handle or push the button on the hand microphone.

(4) Adjust the volume. The volume button is located on the hand microphone.

c. Troubleshooting.

(1) Ensure batteries are installed correctly.

(2) Ensure volume is high enough.

(3) Replace batteries if needed.

8. **TA-312.** A two-wire, battery operated field telephone. It can be used in a series with other TA-312s ("gun loop"), TA-312 to TA-312 to switchboard.

a. SL-3 Components.

TA-312
Carrying Case
Strap, Cotton Web

b. Setup Procedures.

(1) Open the battery compartment cover and latch positioned on the top and in the middle of the phone.

(2) Install two BA-3030 batteries.

(3) Close the battery compartment cover and latch.

(4) Ensure the internal-external switch is in the proper position. Internal is BA-3030 power, external is for an outside power source.

(5) Connect the line binding posts with common field wire that is connected to another phone or a switchboard.

(6) Turn the hand generator positioned on the side at least six (6) times. This sends a signal to the other piece of equipment (TA-312, Switchboard) at the other end of the common field wire.

(7) Pick up the handset and press the push-to-talk button and attempt to talk.

c. Troubleshooting.

(1) Ensure batteries are good by listening for side tone in handset.

(2) Ensure one battery is facing up and one battery is facing down.

(3) Change batteries if they are bad.

(4) Ensure line-binding posts are connected to the common field wire.

(5) Ensure the external-internal switch is in the correct position.

APPENDIX:

H - Communications Equipment

Reports

1. General. Reports are given by Marines on patrol or operations to higher headquarters in order to give the commander a clear picture of the battlefield.

2. Procedure.

a. All reports will be completed using enclosed appendices.

b. Route related reports will only be transmitted by radio when the report information has time priority. All route report information (whether transmitted or not) will be submitted in written format to the MP tactical command post.

c. All reports broadcast over the MP TACNET will be given priority over other routine traffic by the net controller.

d. NBC reports will be assigned FLASH precedence and immediately reported to the next higher command.

Report occasions and remarks:

REPORT	OCCASION	REPORT TO	REMARKS
SPOT REP	Enemy contact	MP CP	NA
SALUTE REP	Sighting enemy	MP CP	NA
MEDEVAC REQ.	Wounded/sick peers.	MP CP	Prioritize by casualty

ROUTE REPs (incl. all route reports)	Mission vital route information	MP CP	Report as necessary and submit written
NBC ONE REP	NBC attack	MP CP or any net	FLASH precedence!
EPW REPORT	Daily	Via MP CP to RAOC	NA
ENEMY DEMO REP	Sighting enemy demo	MP CP	Radio immediately
PERSONNEL REP	Daily/on order	Via MP CP to HQ	Always routine
SUPPLY REQ	As necessary	MP CP	Standard routine
MINEFIELD REP	Sighting minefield	MP CP	Incl. diagram in detail

APPENDIX:

I - Reports

FIRE SUPPORT

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish procedures for calling for and adjusting indirect mortar, artillery fire, naval gunfire, fixed wing close air support, and rotary winged close air support (RWCAS).

2. General. MPs may call for and adjust indirect fires in support of the rear area security effort of the CSSE and are the RAOC's primary forward observer (FO) capability.

3. Assumptions.

a. The Rear Area Operations Center (RAOC) will determine what on-call assets are available for use in the Force Combat Services Support Area (FCSSA).

b. The RAOC will promulgate specific procedures for requesting in-direct fire, fixed wing CAS, and rotary wing CAS (RWCAS); further, the RAOC will be the primary agency in which MPs maintain the capability to request and coordinate fire support as forward observers.

4. Tasks Common to Indirect Fire Support and RWCAS. The senior MP will:

a. Ensure all fire support coordination measures are portrayed as an overlay in the tactical CP station.

b. Ensure range fans for mortars and strip alert times for RWCAS are displayed as an overlay situation board.

c. Maintain continuous radio or landline capability with the FDC at the RAOC. Ideally, proper communication would be routed from the individual MP to the Senior MP to the RAOC to the AO to the DASC (Direct Air Support Center) for aviation support. However, in a desperate situation and with the proper communication assets, the individual MP could speak directly with the AO or DASC. To request artillery support, ideally proper communication would be routed from the individual MP to the Senior MP or FSC (RAOC) to mortar section. Like with aviation, in a desperate situation, the individual MP could speak directly to the mortar section.

d. Serve as a conduit to the RAOC for MP field units acting as FOs or FACs.

e. Plan all MP missions taking available fire support and fire support coordination measures into account, ensuring all suspected, likely or known enemy positions are targeted.

f. Patrolling/operating subordinate MP unit leaders will:

(1) Maintain contact with the MP Tactical CP.

(2) Know the call signs and frequencies for the RAOC and RWCAS units.

(3) Maintain continuous awareness of their location.

Indirect Fire

1. General. The standard format for calling for and adjusting indirect fire is a simple, six paragraph format. The MP will act as the FO, passing messages through the MP Commander or MP Liaison Officer (in RAOC).

2. Determining Direction to a Target (Most reliable to least).

a. Using a compass. Using an M2 or lensatic compass, an MP can measure direction. MPs will utilize this method more frequently than other methods of determining direction.

b. Scaling from a map. Using a protractor or an observed fire fan (OF Fan), the MP can scale direction from a map to an accuracy of 10 mils.

c. Measuring from a reference point. Using a reference point with a known direction, the MP can measure the angle between the reference point and his target and ADD/SUBTRACT the measured angle TO/FROM the known direction to determine the direction to the target. The angle between the reference point and the target can be measured with binoculars or with the hand measurement technique.

d. Estimating. With a thorough terrain-map analysis, the MP can estimate direction by visualizing the eight cardinal directions (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, NW).

e. Estimating Angles in Mils with the Hand. Placing one's outstretched arm in a horizontal position front of them, manipulate one's hand and fingers to estimate mils.

3. Range Spotting. The observer determines where the round landed in relation to the target and the OT line.

a. Over (+). The round impacts beyond the targeting relation to the Observer.

b. Short (-). The round impacts between the target and the Observer.

c. Range Correct (RC). The round hits or an effect on the target.

d. Doubtful (?). The observer cannot determine whether the round was over or short (usually because the round was too far left or right of the target). DO NOT MAKE RANGE CORRECTIONS FOR DOUBTFUL SPOTTINGS.

e. Lost. Location of round cannot be determined by sight or sound.

f. Unobserved. The round could be heard but not seen.

4. Deviations Spotting. Mil angle (left or right) that the round landed from the target. Example: The observer notes a round has impacted 50 mils to the left and 200 meters beyond the target. His spotting would be "Left 50, Drop 200 Over".

5. Corrections. After spotting have been made, the observer converts them into corrections, which are transmitted to the FDC (RAOC). The order in which corrections are sent is the reverse of the order in which spotting were made; that is deviation spotting (in mils) X OT factor.

a. Bracketing. Used when danger close is not in effect; establish range, then Add/Drop.

(1) Establish range bracket (one round over the target, one round short of the target) as soon as possible.

(2) Initial range correction should be Add/Drop 100, 200, 400 or 800. This will ensure even splits on subsequent corrections

(3) Successively split bracket by alternating Add/Drop corrections until adjusting round is within 100 meters (over or short) of the target.

(4) Split the 100-meter bracket by announcing "ADD/DROP 50, Fire for effect".

b. Creeping. Used only during danger close missions. Range changes are made by "creeping" rounds toward the target with corrections of 100 meters or less.

Close Air Support

1. Close Air Support (CAS). Air action against hostile targets which are in close proximity to friendly forces and which require detailed integration of each mission with the fire and movement of those forces. The two types of CAS available are fixed and rotary wing. However the most common form utilized in MP operations will be rotary wing.

a. Types of rotary wing support. UH-1N Huey and AH1W Cobra Helicopter.

b. Types of fixed wing support. AV8B Harrier, F/A18 Hornet, A6 Intruder, and F14 Tomcat.

2. Requesting Air Support. Close air support can be requested by using the joint tactical air strike request (JTAR). When requesting air support, the ground commander should consider following:

a. Air request. Close air support is based on availability and only provided to a unit that requests it. The first step in requesting air support would be to contact the senior MP.

b. Target description. An accurate and detailed target description will allow the ACE to load the optimum ordinance load and plan for the most advantageous delivery technique. Should it be necessary to relay a precise grid coordinate, ensure that the proper hundred thousand meter designator is used. This can be located within your map legend.

c. Desired result. The effect on target is one of the most important elements in mission planning. The desired result determines the numbers of aircraft and sorties.

(1) Neutralization. Target is rendered ineffective for a specific length of time.

(2) Destruction. Target is rendered ineffective.

Tactical Employment

1. The Senior MP may:

a. Submit a list of targets, in accordance with the mission fire support plan and the subordinate unit leader, to the FSC.

b. Ensure the operations order for each mission includes a target list of approved targets.

c. Ensure all targets on the target list are placed on patrol overlays and all continuous targets are placed on the MP detachment overlay.

d. Act as the COF net relay from the subordinate unit leader to the RAOC.

2. The Patrol/Operating Subordinate Unit Leader will:

a. Submit a list of targets to the senior MP after conducting METT-TSL and a map reconnaissance for each mission.

b. Maintain one pair of military binoculars with range inlays.

c. Be able to call for and adjust fire in accordance with the enclosed format.

APPENDIX:

J - FIRE SUPPORT

INJURY PREVENTION AND TREATMENT

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish general hygiene and leadership guidance in the prevention and treatment of injuries associated with field/tactical operations. In NO way is this section intended to replace or prevent Marines from being seen by a medical officer or corpsman.

2. General. Practicing good daily hygiene in a field environment helps to reduce the chance of transmitting many communicable diseases, and helps maintain the individual Marine's health and combat effectiveness. In most cases when trauma or medical emergency has occurred, taking prompt action can lessen the effects of an injury and/or save the life of a fellow Marine.

Policy

1. Water Consumption. The amount of water consumed by the individual Marines will vary with the temperature, degree of physical exertion, and the acclimation of the Marine. This understood it is incumbent on each Marine to ensure they consume adequate amounts of water. Marines should monitor their urine flow. A clear urine stream indicates adequate water intake. A dark yellow stream indicates water intake must increase (dehydration).

2. Personal Hygiene. Each Marine will clean their bodies, shave, and change under clothing daily. Hands will be washed prior to eating or handling food. Proper foot care is crucial. Socks will be changed daily, more recently if wet weather conditions are present.

3. Leadership.

a. Leaders at all levels will proactively monitor and enforce water consumption and personal hygiene habits.

b. Daily hygiene inspections will be conducted at the platoon sergeant/squad leader level. Discrepancies will be promptly referred to a corpsman/ medical officer, and reported to the senior MP.

c. Each Marine will carry a functional first aid pouch. Replacement items should be requested via the chain of command. It is the squad leader/fire team leaders' responsibility to ensure their Marines have all necessary gear.

Life Saving Steps

1. Life Saving Steps:

a. Restore the Breathing.

(1) Place casualty on back and loosen clothing.

(2) Quickly clear mouth and throat of obstructions. Ensure tongue is not blocking throat.

(3) Use the head-tilt method to open airway. Place one hand on the forehead and one hand just below the chin. Push back on the forehead, and lift up on the chin.

(4) Start artificial respiration if the casualty is NOT breathing.

b. Stop the Bleeding.

(1) Apply pressure to the wound with the first aid bandage.

(2) Elevate the wound if bleeding continues. Do not remove dressings if the blood seeps through. Apply a second dressing over the first.

(3) With a severe wound where blood is spurting or loss of a limb, a tourniquet should be applied between the wound and the heart. Note the time the tourniquet is applied, and only a qualified medical officer should remove it. Place a "T" on the casualty's forehead to indicate a tourniquet has been applied.

(4) Leave the tourniquet fully exposed so medical personnel can see a tourniquet has been applied.

c. Protect the Wound. Do not try to clean the wound. Apply the casualty's dressing. Use the tails of the dressing to apply pressure over the entire wound.

d. Prevent/Treat for Shock.

(1) Make the Marine comfortable by loosening clothing and belt, and handle gently.

(2) Elevate the legs to circulate blood to the brain unless there is a head or chest injury.

(3) Splint fractures before moving.

(4) Keep warm by wrapping casualty in poncho or blanket.

(5) Do not give the casualty food or drink.

(6) If unconscious, role on one side to prevent the casualty from choking.

Types of Wounds

1. Chest Wound. Air allowed to enter the chest cavity could cause the lungs to collapse. Prevent this by placing a plastic or foil seal over the wound and tape or secure three sides. Place a dressing over the seal and treat for shock. Medevac immediately.

2. Belly Wound. Cover the wound and protruding organs with a dressing. Do NOT attempt to replace the intestines, moisten the dressing, or bind the dressing to tight. Give the casualty nothing to eat or drink. Make the casualty as comfortable as possible and treat for shock. Medevac immediately.

3. Jaw Wound. Remove broken teeth, pieces of bone, and false teeth from mouth and throat. Apply a dressing on the wound being careful not to block the mouth. Make the casualty comfortable, treat for shock, and watch for breathing difficulties.

4. Head Wound. Suspect a head wound if casualty is or has been unconscious, has blood or other fluid coming from ears or nose, has slow pulse or headache, is vomiting, has had convulsions, or is breathing slowly. Do NOT place in the shock position. Allow

the casualty to lie down with head turned to one side to prevent choking. Keep head elevated at a 45-degree angle.

5. Burns.

a. First or second-degree burns of small skin areas should be covered with a sterile dressing. If none are available, leave uncovered. Burns covering over 20% of the body, or the face, hands, feet, or genitals Medevac immediately.

b. For third degree burns (blistered, charred, or covering large portions of the body) infection and shock should be prevented. Examine and relieve any respiratory distress. Cover with a wet sterile dressing. Do not remove burned pieces of clothing; break blisters, or put grease or ointment on the burns. Treat for shock and medevac immediately.

6. Fractures. Tenderness over the injury with pain on movement, inability to move injured part, unnatural shape, swelling, and/or discoloration of the skin are all signs of a fracture. Handle with care, treat for shock, and prevent further injury. If there is a wound, treat the wound. If possible do not move. If the casualty has to be moved, apply a splint. The splint should be tied above and below the injury to prevent the injured area from moving. Ensure the splint is not so tight as to prevent circulation. Medevac immediately.

7. Broken Back. Suspect a back injury if the casualty has no feeling in their legs. Be careful not to move the casualty because bone fragments could sever the spinal cord. Place a small roll under the arch of the back to give support. If the casualty must be moved, use a litter. Carefully role to one side and slide the litter underneath keeping the back and neck straight. If the casualty is face down, put him on the litter that way. Medevac immediately.

8. Broken Neck. Extremely Dangerous! Inform the casualty to keep his head still. Use sandbags or packs to immobilize the head. Do not attempt to move head or neck. If the casualty must be moved, use a stiff litter. One person should support the head while others move him. Medevac immediately.

Heat Injuries.

1. Heat injuries are almost always disabling and sometimes fatal. They occur when water and salt, lost in sweat, and are not replaced. Heat injuries are likely to occur in individuals

who are over-weight, have fever, use alcohol, have diarrhea, and those who are not accustomed to the heat. Leadership and self-discipline will help to prevent heat casualties.

2. Heat Cramps. Cramps occur in the stomach, legs and arms. Have the victim drink one canteen of water, move to the shade, and loosen clothing. Increase water intake over the next 12 hours.

3. Heat Exhaustion. Casualty may have a headache, be dizzy, faint and weak. He will be sweating and his skin will be moist and cool. Move the casualty to a shaded area, loosen clothing, and raise feet. If conscious and not nauseous, allow him to drink water. Get help from corpsman.

4. Heat Stroke. Extremely dangerous. Left untreated the casualty could die. An early sign of heat stroke is the casualty stops sweating. Body temperature becomes very high, and the casualty may have a headache, become dizzy, delirious or unconscious. Move the casualty to a shaded area, remove clothing, and immerse/douse in cold water. Continue to pour water over the casualty and fan. Immediately evacuate to a medical facility.

Cold Injuries.

1. Cold injuries occur when the body loses too much heat too rapidly. If the body tissue actually freezes, frostbite occurs. If body heat is lost because the body is wet, trench foot or immersion foot, depending on the temperature, occurs. The results are the same; loss of fingers, toes, feet, ears, etc.

2. Frostbite. Most easily frostbitten are the cheeks, nose, ears, chin, forehead, wrist, hands, and feet. Frostbite may involve only the skin or extend below. For this reason, treatment varies. Deep frostbite is more serious and treated differently. Skin is white, stiff, and numb rather then painful. Marines must use buddy aide to watch one another.

a. First Aid for Frostbite of the Skin.

(1) Do not rub the frostbitten area or apply cold water soaks.

(2) Do not warm or re-warm the injured parts by massage or exposure to open fire.

(3) For parts of the face, cover the area with warm hands until pain returns.

(4) For hand, place next to skin under armpits.

(5) For feet, place under clothing and against the belly of another Marine.

b. Deep Frostbite.

(1) Get to medical treatment immediately.

(2) Do not attempt to thaw. This increases the chance of infection, more damage, and gangrene. There is less danger of walking on feet before thawing occurs.

3. Snow Blindness. Caused by the glare from an ice field or snowfield. Is more likely to occur in hazy, cloudy weather than when the sun is shining. Early sign of snow blindness is when the eyes become scratchy when the eyelids are closed. Cover the Marines eyes completely and transport to a medical facility.

Miscellaneous Injuries

1. Trench Foot. Results from fairly long exposure to wet conditions generally at a temperature of 50 degrees. If feet are inactive, the likelihood of developing trench foot is greater. There may be tingling, aching, cramping pain, and numbness. Prolonged and severe exposure causes swelling which prohibits circulation. Keep feet dry, use foot powder, and change socks often. Avoid walking and seek medical treatment.

2. Immersion Foot. Similar to trench foot except for the cause. Results from immersion of feet in water or constant wetness for a prolonged period usually more than 12 hours. Develops quicker when the temperature is below 50 degrees. Immersion foot causes the soles of the feet to wrinkle and turn white causing pain when walking. Other parts of the body can be affected. Keep feet dry, use foot powder, and change socks often. Avoid walking and seek medical attention.

3. Unconsciousness. Attempt to determine the cause of injury. Move to a shaded area, loosen clothing, and ensure the airway remains open. If a Marine feels faint, have him sit down and place his head between his feet to increase blood circulation to the head. Seek medical attention.

4. Foreign Object in the Eye. Do not rub the eye. Tearing will normally remove the object. If not, pull the eyelid down, and use the corner of a clean, moist handkerchief. If the object is glass or metal, cover both eyes and transport to a medical facility.

22. Snakebite.

a. Reassure the casualty to remain calm. Position the bitten area below the heart.

b. If the bite is on a limb, place a lightly constricting band 2-4 inches above the bite. The idea is to stop circulation on the surface of the skin, not arterial circulation. Do not attempt to cut the bite and suck out the venom.

c. Remove jewelry from bitten limb. Swelling could cause later removal to be difficult and painful.

d. Continue to reassure the casualty. Do not give him alcohol or medication.

e. Transport the casualty for treatment or send someone for help.

f. Attempt to catch the snake or identify it without getting bitten yourself.

Preventative Care

1. Care of Feet. Prevention is the best first aid. Keep clean, dry thoroughly between toes, use foot powder twice a day, and change socks daily. Do not cut a corn or callus. Keep toenails clean, short and cut straight across. If a blister develops, wash area with soap and water. Using a sterile needle, open the blister at the lower edge.

2. Morphine. Morphine is the most effective pain-killing drug. Extreme care must be taken when morphine is administered because death could occur. The adult dosage is 8-16 mg and should not be repeated more than twice (and then more then four hours apart). Administer in a large muscle. After injection, massage the area. The letter "M" and time should be written on the Marines head. Attach the bent needle, in plain view, on the breast pocket. Do not administer morphine if:

a. Head injury.

b. Chest injury.

c. Throat, nasal, or jaw wound where blood might obstruct the airway.

d. Massive hemorrhage.

e. Respiratory impairment.

f. Evidence of severe or deepening shock.

g. Loss of consciousness.

Priority of Treatment and Evacuation.

1. Highest priority (Must be treated first and transported immediately):

a. Airway and breathing difficulty.

b. Cardiac Arrest.

c. Uncontrolled or suspected severe hidden bleeding.

d. Open chest or abdominal wound.

e. Severe head injury or evidence of brain damage.

f. Several medical problems.

2. Second Priority (Transportation and medical treatment can be delayed):

a. Burns without complications.

b. Major or multiple fractures.

d. Back injuries with or without spinal damage.

3. Lowest priority (To be transported or treated last):

a. Minor fractures or other injuries minor in nature.

b. Obviously mortal wounds where death is apparent.

c. Obviously dead.

SUPPORT FOR ANTITERROISM/FORCE PROTECTION OPERATIONS

ANTITERRORISM/ FORCE PROTECTION

Introduction

1. General. The inherent MP capabilities contribute to improving a unit's AT/FP posture. With the ever-changing enemy and environmental situation, military police advise the commander of the probable impact a course of action has in regards to AT/FP. Military Police conduct vulnerability assessments to identify command areas that are vulnerable to terrorist attack. These assessments and the criminal and tactical information gathered by the military police, military police investigators (MPI), and the Naval Criminal Investigative Service (NCIS) assists in the development of a AT/FP plan that is dedicated to safeguarding personnel and property. Military police also function as a training cadre to provide necessary and required AT/FP training.

AT/FP Roles

1. Planning. Comprehensive AT/FP plans must be developed and implemented to provide maximum personnel and asset protection. These plans must clearly describe AT/FP operational responsibilities for permanently or temporarily assigned units and individuals. Memorandums of agreement are established to coordinate response to security threats and medical emergencies. These agreements also cover communications interference with cooperating agencies, intelligence sharing, and other mutual physical security and loss prevention issues. Memorandums of agreement must be reviewed, updated and exercised periodically. The MAGTF AT/FP officer serves as an advisor to assist the commander in meeting and planning for AT/FP requirement.

a. Military police assist AT/FP planning by:

(1) Assisting in the development of AT/FP plans for permanent and temporary operations and exercises.

(2) Providing recommendations for specific measures and actions to be taken for each force protection condition (FPCON) level.

(3) Recommending procedures to collect and analyze threat information and threat capability.

(4) Assessing vulnerability to threat attacks.

(5) Implementing procedures to enhance AT/FP and for responding to threat incidents.

(6) Maintaining liaison with HN and foreign authorities.

3. Assessments. Assessments are essential to the development of an effective AT/FP plan. Threat assessments form the basis for planning and justification of resource expenditures and contribute to planning and the establishment of specific THREATCON measures. The Navy Antiterrorism Analysis Center prepares area threat assessments to provide the commanders with updated analysis of the threat in a particular AO. The local threat assessment may also be obtained via the resident NCIS office.

a. Vulnerability assessments provide the commander threat-based analysis and self-assessment tool to evaluate the unit's vulnerability to terrorist attack. In a tactical environment, vulnerability assessment enhance the AT/FP posture by improving stationary asset security. The more vulnerable a unit, the more attractive it becomes to terrorist.

b. Vulnerabilities identified during assessment provide justification for establishing THREATCON measures and actions. Prior to deployment, vulnerability assessment must be conducted to identify appropriate force protection measures and to reduce risk.

c. Military police reduces vulnerabilities to terrorist attack by:

(1) Focusing on those elements directly related to combating terrorism, to include preventing terrorist acts, and if prevention fails, limiting mass casualties.

(2) Identifying vulnerabilities that may be exploited by threat groups and recommending options to eliminate or reduce those vulnerabilities.

(3) Concentrating on areas identified by the commander as essential to mission accomplishment.

4. Training. A vital part of the commander's force protection program, training and education are main factors in reducing the terrorist's opportunity to target U.S. forces. Training

increases individual's awareness and helps them to focus on prevention of terrorism.

a. Deploying personnel must receive level I antiterrorism training within 6 months prior to deployment or travel overseas. The AT/FP officers are responsible for coordinating and conducting level I training and may use local MPI, NCIS, or specially trained military police to increase the AT/FP awareness level of personnel.

b. Integration of terrorist scenarios into unit-level training exercises provides practical application of terrorism awareness skills and serves to reinforce force protection readiness within the unit. Military police assist in incorporating and coordinating scenarios that:

(1) Evaluate a unit's ability to detect terrorist surveillance and targeting.

(2) Implement increased THREATCON security measures.

(3) Gauge the organization's preparedness to respond to acts of terrorism and attack by traditional conventional forces.

5. Protective Service Operations. Commanders may task military police with protective service operations to reduce individual or group vulnerability to terrorist attack. Military police provide personal security for key government leaders, flag officers, and equivalent civilian dignitaries. Military police also coordinate and support host nation and foreign law enforcement protective servic4s operations.

6. Crime Prevention and Physical Security. Military police provide units in a combat environment with advice on crime prevention and physical security measures through a heightened degree of awareness. In addition, military police are responsible for investigating and reporting criminal activities that will assist the commander in maintaining activities that will assist the commander in maintaining unit order and discipline. Military police also proved commander with awareness programs, instruction and information on recognizing, countering, and preventing criminal and terrorist activities.

a. Physical security is the protection of critical assets, such as headquarters elements and communication and control activities.

b. Normally, MP involvement in physical security is limited to providing units advice for security in their AO. When assisting in security enhancement planning, military police provide advice on the use of physical security equipment that may include:

Protective lighting.

Security containers.

Locking mechanisms.

Intrusion systems.

Personal identification.

Access control.

Movement control.

7. Law and Order Operations. Military police conduct law and order operations to provide the commanders with a lawful and orderly environment and to enhance the AT/FP posture. As part of the force protection program, military police enforce laws, directives, and punitive regulations; conduct criminal and accident investigations; and control the civilian populace and resources in accordance with the commander's directive.

a. Military Working Dog Support. Special MWD capabilities significantly enhance the commander's ability to protect forces and assets. Although MWDs are normally garrison assets the commander can request MWD support for combat, combat support, and combat service support operations. Dual-certified patrol and explosive detector dogs give the commander the ability to:

(1) Detect explosives and tripwires.

(2) Bypass the enemy in bunkers and built-up areas.

(3) Conduct flight line security patrols, EPW control, perimeter patrols, and other appropriate measures.

Information Operations. As a part of the AT/FP program, military police and CID or NCIS collect, analyze, and interpret criminal and law enforcement information, which plays an important part in the commander's intelligence preparation of

the battlefield. Military police collect information and coordinate efforts with the intelligence officer to support units' HUMIT all-source production efforts.

PHYSICAL SECURITY PLANNING

Introduction

1. Purpose. To identify day-to-day physical security applications and operations.

2. General. The security challenge is influenced partially by the geographic location, size, type, jurisdiction, and mission of the property. Further, the procedures, plans, policies, agreements, systems and resources committed to safeguard personnel, protect property, and prevent losses also impact security. The physical security portion of security planning is concerned with means and measures designed to achieve a strong physical security and antiterrorism/force protection (AT/FP) posture. The program goal is to safeguard personnel and protect property by preventing, detecting, and confronting unauthorized acts. These unauthorized acts include but are not limited to terrorism, espionage, sabotage, wrongful destruction, malicious damage, theft, and pilferage.

Classification/Security Requirements for Areas

1. Restricted Areas. There are three types of restricted areas, which are established in order of importance: Level Three, Level Two, and Level One restricted areas. All restricted areas shall be posted simply as restricted areas, so as not to single out or draw attention to the importance or criticality of an area. Restricted area designation is often associated with areas storing classified information, however there are other valid reasons to establish restricted areas to protect security interests (e.g., assets/areas identified as mission critical/ sensitive; AA&E; nuclear material; protection of certain unclassified chemicals, precious metals or precious metal-bearing articles; funds; drugs; or articles having high likelihood of theft).

a. Level Three. The most secure type of restricted area, it may be within less secure types of restricted areas. It contains a security interest that if lost, stolen, compromised or sabotaged would cause grave damage to the command mission or national security. Access to the Level Three restricted area constitutes, or is considered to constitute, actual access to

the security interest or asset.

b. Level Two. The second most secure type of restricted area, it may be inside a Level One area, but is never inside a Level Three area. It contains a security interest that if lost, stolen, compromised, or sabotaged would cause serious damage to the command mission or national security. Uncontrolled or unescorted movement could permit access to the security interest.

c. Level One. The least secure type of restricted area, it contains a security interest that if lost, stolen, compromised, or sabotaged would cause damage to the command mission or national security. It may also serve as a buffer zone for Level Three and Level Two restricted areas, thus providing administrative control, safety, and protection against sabotage, disruption, or potentially threatening acts. Uncontrolled movement may or may not permit access to a security interest or asset.

d. Restricted areas will be designated as specified below:

(1) Level Three. Nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) and special weapons research, testing, storage, and maintenance facilities.

(2) Level Two.

(a) Aircraft hangers, ramps, parking aprons, flight lines and runways.

(b) Aircraft rework areas.

(c) Research, Development, Test, and Evaluation (RDT&E) Centers.

(d) Arms, ammunition and explosives (AA&E) storage facilities and processing areas (including gun parks and ammunition supply points).

(e) Fuel depots and bulk storage tanks.

(f) Installation, depot and critical communications, computer facilities, and antenna sites.

(g) Installation, depot, and critical assets power stations, transformers, master valve, and switch spaces.

(h) Tank ramps, compounds, and housing facilities.

(3) Level One.

(a) Motor Pools.

(b) Fuel issue points.

(c) Funds and negotiable instrument storage areas.

(d) Provost Marshal Office (PMO) Desk Sergeant/Dispatcher area, ESS monitoring spaces, and Military Working Dog (MWD) facility.

2. Minimum Security Measures Required for Restricted Areas.

a. Level Three. The following minimum-security measures are required for Level Three restricted areas:

(1) A clearly defined and protected perimeter. The perimeter may be a fence, the exterior walls of a building or structure or the outside walls of a space within a building or structure. If the perimeter is a fence or wall, it must be posted with restricted area signs.

(2) A personnel identification and access control system (an electronic control system with the capability of recording ingress and egress may be used to accomplish this requirement). If a computer access control or logging system is used it must be safeguarded against tampering. All visitors will be logged in and out in an entry/ departure log at all times.

(3) Ingress and egress controlled by guards or appropriately trained and cleared personnel. When secured, an electronic security system or security personnel must control access to the area.

(4) Access restricted to personnel who have duty requirements within and have been authorized in writing by the commanding officer. Persons who have not been cleared for access to the security interest contained within a Level Three restricted area may be admitted to the facility with approval, in writing, from the commanding officer. Such persons and all visitors will be escorted by an authorized/ cleared activity

escort at all times and the security interest will be protected from compromise.

(5) When secured, check at least once per 12-hour shift if adequately equipped with an operational Intrusion Detection System (IDS) or twice per 12-hour shift for those facilities without an IDS. Security force personnel will check for signs of attempted or successful unauthorized entry and for other activity that could degrade the security of the Level Three restricted area.

b. Level Two. The following minimum-security measures are required for Level Two restricted areas:

(1) A clearly defined and protected perimeter. The perimeter may be a fence, the exterior walls of a building or structure or the outside walls of a space within a building or structure. If the perimeter is a fence or wall, it must be posted with restricted area signs.

(2) A personnel identification and access control system (an electronic control system with the capability of recording ingress and egress may be used to accomplish this). If a computer access control or logging system is used, it must be safeguarded against tampering. All visitors will be logged in and out in an entry/departure log at all times.

(3) Ingress and egress controlled by guards, receptionists or other appropriately trained and cleared personnel. When secured, an electronic security system or security personnel must control access to the area.

(4) Access restricted to personnel who have duty requirements within and have been authorized in writing by the commanding officer. Persons who have not been cleared for access to security interest contained within a Level Two restricted area may be admitted to the facility with approval, in writing, from the Commanding Officer. Such persons and all visitors will be escorted by an authorized/ cleared activity escort at all times, and the security interest will be protected from compromise.

(5) When secured, checked once per 12-hour shift if adequately equipped with an operational IDS or twice per 12-hour shift for those facilities without an operational IDS. Security force personnel will check for signs of attempted or successful unauthorized entry, and for other activity, which could degrade

the security of the Level Two, restricted area.

c. Level One. The following minimum-security measures are required for Level One restricted areas:

(1) A clearly defined protected perimeter. The perimeter may be a fence, the exterior walls of a building or structure, or the outside walls of a space within a building or structure. If the perimeter is a fence or wall it must be posted with restricted area signs per this Manual.

(2) A personnel identification and control system for those personnel assigned to the activity.

(3) Controlled ingress and egress.

(4) Controlled admission of individuals (military, civil service, contractors, and official visitors) who require access for reasons of official business, which render a service (vendors, delivery people), and other visitors as authorized by the Commanding Officer. All visitors will be escorted and the security interest protected from compromise.

(5) When secured, checked once per 12-hour shift if adequately equipped with an operational IDS or twice per 12-hour shift for those facilities without an operational IDS. Security force personnel will check for signs of attempted or successful unauthorized entry, and for other activity, which could degrade the security of the Level One, restricted area.

3. Personnel and Vehicle Administrative Inspections. All instructions designating restricted areas shall include procedures for conducting inspections of persons and vehicles entering and leaving such areas. To be effective, administrative vehicle and personnel inspection operations must be conducted on a random basis. The activity security officer will ensure they are conducted. Procedures will be coordinated with the cognizant staff judge advocate and approved, in writing, by the installation commander/ commanding officer or authorized representative.

4. Waterway Security. Commanding officers will make every effort to coordinate protection of adjacent waterway areas with the proper agency. Commanding officers will review operations and/or security plans to ensure areas of responsibility/ jurisdiction are properly identified. Liaison between security personnel and local waterway officials should be maintained to

ensure designation of limited waterway areas and procedural aspects are kept current.

5. Non-Restricted Areas. A non-restricted area is an area under the jurisdiction of an organization where access is either minimally controlled or uncontrolled. Such an area may be fenced, or open to uncontrolled movement of the general public. An example of a non-restricted area is a visitor or employee parking lot that is open and unattended by guards. After working hours it may be closed, patrolled, and converted to a restricted area. Another example is a personnel office where the general public is authorized access during working hours without being required to check in or register with duty personnel. A non-restricted area may be enclosed by a fence or other barrier. Access is normally minimally controlled. In most cases further security authorization, such as a security clearance would not be required for access. An off base housing area would normally be considered a non-restricted area. Non-restricted areas will not be located inside restricted areas.

Physical Security Plan

1. Purpose. State the purpose of the plan.

2. General. Mission and size of the installation, average population of Marines and family members, overall daily population including civilian personnel.

3. Area Security. Identify overall size of the installation, to include inhabited and uninhabited areas. Identify restricted and non-restricted areas, buildings, and other structures considered critical. Provide requirements for resource protection and established priorities for their protection.

4. Control Measures. Detail established restrictions on ingress/egress into critical areas (e.g., guards, badge systems, etc.) in accordance with applicable orders.

a. Access Control.

(1) Installation access control requirements.

(a) Individual.

1. Military personnel.

2. Family members.

3. Civilian Employees.

4. Maintenance personnel

5. Contractor personnel.

6. Vendors.

(b) Vehicle. (Registration, including state and/or host country. Policy on administrative inspection of military and privately owned vehicles.

(2) Restricted and non-restricted areas.

(a) Restricted area access requirements for individuals:

1. Military personnel.

2. Family members.

3. Civilians.

4. Maintenance.

5. Contractors.

6. Vendors.

(b) Restricted area access requirements for vehicles:

1. Military and government owned vehicles.

2. Privately owned vehicles.

3. Emergency vehicles.

4. Taxis, buses, etc.

b. Material Control

(1) Inbound

(a) Requirements for admission of material and supplies.

(b) Search and inspection of material for possible sabotage/terrorist hazards.

(c) Special controls on delivery of supplies and/or personnel shipments in restricted areas.

(d) Established controlled holding areas and safe havens for classified, AA&E, and hazardous material.

(2) Outbound

(a) Required documentation.

(b) Transfer areas for controlled, classified, AA&E, and hazardous material.

5. Aids to security.

a. Protective barriers.

(1) Natural.

(2) General.

(a) Fencing.

1. Clear zone requirements.

2. Maintenance.

3. Perimeter ingress/egress points (gates).

4. Gatehouses. (Location, hours of operation, construction)

(3) Specific barriers.

(a) Stationary

1. Type.

2. Current placement.

3. Maintenance requirements.

(b) Mobile

1. Type.

2. Current placement and/or staging area.

3. Deployment schedule.

4. Support requirements for deployment.

5. Maintenance requirements.

b. Protective Lighting

(1) Placement.

(2) Maintenance.

(3) Power failure contingency plan.

(4) Uninterrupted power sources.

(5) Emergency lighting systems.

(a) Stationary.

(b) Mobile.

1. Staging Area.

2. Maintenance requirements.

3. Deployment schedule.

4. Support requirements for deployment.

c. Electronic security systems

(1) Alarm control center.

(2) Use and monitoring.

(3) Alarm response policy.

(4) Alarm response drills.

(5) Training requirements.

(6) Component testing requirements.

(7) Component testing schedule.

(8) Maintenance responsibilities.

(9) Power failure contingency plan.

(10) Uninterrupted power sources.

6. Security Forces.

a. Table of organization.

b. Tour of duty.

c. Posts.

(1) Stationary.

(2) Mobile.

d. Available resources (e.g., SRT, MWD, CID, Auxiliary.)

e. Equipment.

(1) Weapons.

(a) Training.

(b) Qualification requirements.

(2) Vehicles.

(3) Support Equipment (hand irons, flashlight.)

f. Communications.

(1) Monitoring location.

(2) Authorized users.

(3) Authorized frequencies.

(4) Shared frequencies.

(5) Mobile assets (vehicle & portable.).

(6) Location of support equipment (repeaters, etc.).

MANEUVER AND MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS

Introduction.

1. General. Aggressive and creative Maneuver and Support Operation (MMSO) methods ensure vehicles, equipment and personnel move efficiently and safely over the battlefield. MMSO measures begin by examining mission requirements, conducting map reconnaissance and developing courses of action. MP mounted patrols are then tasked with route reconnaissance missions to validate courses of action, road traffic capability and other traffic circulation control issues. Circulation control measures (traffic control points (TCP's), checkpoints, roadblocks and route signing) are implemented to control movement. Routes are continually patrolled to gather intelligence and maintain security.

2. Assumptions.

a. Traffic control requires a creative combination of circulation and security measures to expedite movement and protect the flow of both mounted and dismounted traffic along the MSR.

b. MP will make circulation control recommendations to the MAGTF commander for final approval. In most cases, the principal staff officers are the G/S - 3/4, Motor Transport officer, and the Rear Area Security Coordinator (RASC).

c. Liaison will be made with joint, combined and host nation security forces and other appropriate government agencies as required to coordinate circulation efforts.

Tactical Employment

1. Procedure.

a. **Traffic Control Point (TCP).**

(1) Locations for TCPs will be determined by the senior MP based on the information derived from a route reconnaissance.

(2) The purposes of a TCP are to:

(a) Ensure smooth and efficient use of MSR's by monitoring and assisting authorized traffic and providing information to passing units.

(b) Provide security for MSR's at critical locations or intersections.

(c) Reroute unauthorized MSR traffic to authorized routes or holding areas.

(d) Gather and report intelligence.

(e) Control stragglers and refugee traffic.

(f) Monitor for nuclear, biological and chemical (NBC) contamination.

(3) Coordinating Instructions. TCP personnel will:

(a) Understand the general tactical situation and its relationship to their mission.

(b) Understand and implement critical information on traffic flow/priority.

(c) Know the location of friendly forces and resupply points.

(d) Present a professional military appearance. MP will be clean-shaven, with camouflage face paint applied and wearing reflective vests while on TCP duty.

(e) Do not allow personnel to congregate on or near the post.

(f) Know the exact route of the MSR and all alternate routes.

(4) Security Measures.

(a) One MP Team can man a TCP. The tactical situation will determine manning/security requirements as well as the active and passive security measures.

(b) The vehicle will be driven off the road into a covered and concealed position. Camouflage netting/ material will be erected in a manner to allow the vehicle to quickly

depart and not interfere with the operation of the mounted weapon system.

(c) The team leader is responsible for the operation of TCP. The team leader will:

1. Select the specific location for the TCP on the ground. Threat avenues of approach and location of friendly units will dictate the principal direction of fire for crew served weapons.

2. Select locations for individual fighting positions and crew served weapons. Unless otherwise directed, the M2 .50 cal and/or MK 19 will remain vehicle mounted. The M240G and/or M249 SAW will be dismounted. Range data cards will be prepared and copies forwarded to the chain of command.

3. Establish work schedules and a sleep plan.

4. Be intimately familiar with the traffic control plan and the MP mission.

(d) Ensure one MP is providing security for the MP controlling traffic.

(e) Unless otherwise directed, the use of permanent barriers is not authorized. The fire team member will direct/ control traffic by using a flashlight or chemical light during limited visibility.

(f) Fire team size TCPs will be capable of 24-hour operation. Re-supply will coordinate through the tactical command post.

(5) Traffic Control.

(a) One MP will be responsible for traffic control duty while the TCP is operating. The MP will monitor and control traffic using flashlights or chemical lights and a reflective vest.

(b) Movement priorities are established by the responsible movement control center. Unless otherwise directed, traffic moving toward the front has priority over traffic moving to the rear. Forward moving loaded vehicles, especially ammunition and water, have priority over all other traffic.

(c) Develop a holding area plan should vehicle or foot traffic become congested or traffic needs to be halted for an extended period of time.

(6) Information Dissemination.

(a) Personnel requesting information will be directed out of the flow of traffic whenever possible.

(b) Positive identification and the need for information will be established before any information is passed. Identification will be verified by checking the armed forces ID card (AFID), trip tickets, challenge & password or movement credit.

(c) If identity cannot be verified, request the person's information be checked through the RAOC/CSSOC.

(d) Unidentified or suspicious personnel shall be detained until positive identification can be made.

(7) Traffic violations.

(a) The senior MP will prescribe specific instructions for handling traffic violators, which may include:

1. Issuance of DD dorm 1408 armed forces traffic ticket

2. Issuance of a verbal warning and documentation on the desk sergeant journal.

3. Notification of violator's chain of command for further counseling.

(b) Traffic violations caused by forward moving convoys will be brought to the attention of the convoy commander and corrected on the spot. Further, convoys will not be unnecessarily delayed.

(c) Should the convoy commander fail to obey the instruction of MP, MP will obtain the individuals name, rank, and unit and report the incident to the respective chains of command. The convoy will not be detained.

b. **Special Traffic Control Measures**. The senior MP will coordinate the employment of special traffic control measures with the MAGTF commander and appropriate staff officers.

(1) Defiles: A defile is established when two-way traffic is reduced to one-way traffic. The number of MP's required to operate the defile will be guided by the size of the defile, security requirements and the amount of traffic.

(a) Report the location to the RAOC/CSSOC and attempt to establish an alternate two-way route around the defile. This route should not take longer than going through the defile. Non-mission essential traffic will use this route.

(b) Coordinate with the RAOC/CSSOC to have engineers repair any damage or widen the route.

(c) TCPs will be established at either end of the defile in an area that facilitates the staging of traffic into holding areas.

(d) At the defile point, an area Recon should be conducted if enough MPs are present. The Area Recon should be 250-500 meter out, to include sweep and secure of all buildings nearby.

(e) Communication between TCP's is paramount to coordinate vehicle movement. The following techniques will be employed:

1. Visual signals. Distance and obstructions permitting, use hand and arm signals, flashlights or chemical lights (Red stop, Green go).

2. Hand-held radios or hard wire, i.e. SABER radios or a TA 312 field phone.

3. A flag can be attached to the trail vehicle and removed at either end of the defile as a marking device to signal the end of a convoy.

4. MP lead and trail vehicle. This method can be used when the defile is complex and there are sufficient MP vehicles available.

(f) Removal of disabled vehicles. When possible, have a recovery vehicle present at the defile.

(g) A combination of mounted and dismounted patrols should be conducted around the defile.

(2) Checkpoints: The senior MP will authorize the use of checkpoints. The primary purpose of a checkpoint is to prevent unauthorized and unnecessary traffic. Checkpoints are also used to ensure convoys are on the correct route, have the proper movement credits and are on schedule.

(a) The senior MP will determine checkpoint locations, times, and duration of employment.

(b) Establish checkpoints in the same manner as a TCP.

(c) The use of barriers/obstacles to control/stop traffic is authorized.

(d) The location should be in a position that does not allow traffic to avoid the checkpoint, i.e. around a curve or over a hill. Other traffic control measures may be required to ensure traffic remains on the road.

(e) Ensure the location provides good fields of fire for security of the checkpoint.

(f) Local law enforcement agencies will be used, when possible, to assist in the identification of civilian traffic and enforcement of local statutes.

(g) Use interpreters and/or Marine interrogator/ translator teams as needed.

(h) Vehicles will be randomly selected for inspection.

(i) Direct the vehicle off the MSR and into a staging area for inspection.

(j) Explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel can be used to examine suspected explosive devises or handle ordnance. As a minimum the procedure for notifying EOD to respond will be established, as well as notifying Military Working Dogs (MWD).

(k) Uniform code of military justice and manual for courts-martial rules of evidence for search and seizure apply to military personnel. Local status of force agreements will dictate the procedure for handling civilians.

(l) Ensure adequate lighting is available to conduct proper searches.

(m) In addition ICR and CID documentation inspection will be noted in the MP log.

(n) An MP log will be kept of convoys entering and exiting the checkpoints. To include:

1. Time, date, and convoy serial number.

2. Number of vehicles.

3. Convoy commander name, rank, and social security number

(3) Roadblocks: The senior MP will authorize the use of roadblocks. The closure of public roads and access-ways will be coordinated with local police and government agencies.

(a) Use roadblocks to slow, limit, or stop traffic; limit access to certain areas; and/or channel traffic into a specific area.

(b) Establish a roadblock in the same fashion as a TCP.

(c) Make the roadblock easily moveable and visible to drivers. Use concertina, barbed wire, trees, debris, and warning signs. See Section 12 obstacle/barrier operations.

(d) Position the roadblock in a location to gain surprise.

(e) Tie the roadblock in with existing man-made/natural obstacle to make bypass difficult

(f) Good fields of fire should be established to cover the roadblock.

(g) When the roadblock is used to channel traffic into checkpoint, place it in a location where vehicle operator cannot turn off or bypass.

(h) When using a roadblock to close a road, place it in a location that allows vehicle operators to easily and safely turn their vehicle around.

(i) Roadblocks can be manned or unmanned, dependent upon the tactical situation.

(4) Straggler Control Points: MP will coordinate straggler control points with the MAGTF G/S-1. This control measure is established to help keep the MSR's clear by assisting lost personnel to find their units. Straggler control points are established along the MSR or operated in conjunction with a TCP.

(a) Establish a straggler control point similar to a checkpoint.

(b) The location should not allow vehicles the chance to avoid the location and provide enough space for a small vehicles/personnel holding area.

(c) Maintain a log to record the person's:

1. Name, rank, SSN.

2. Unit.

3. Status, i.e. injuries.

4. Status, i.e. in possession of assigned weapon gear.

5. Location and date found.

6. Where the straggler was going and where he was coming from.

7. Where you sent the straggler.

(d) Identification will be done by:

1. AFID and uniforms/unit insignia.

2. Bumper marking on vehicles.

3. Identification cards or tags.

4. Passes or authorization documents.

5. Radio verification through the RAOC/CSSOC

(e) Coordinate with the RAOC/CSSOC to determine a location to send the stragglers or arrange for transport.

(f) MP should know the location of friendly units in order to assist in the relocation of stragglers.

(g) Stragglers who appear to be avoiding further service will be apprehended and the unit will be notified. An ICR will be completed.

(h) When large umbers of stragglers are intercepted, the post will be manned by at least a squad. A small processing area may need to be established (GP tent and a G/S-1 representative to help identify personnel). One team will process, one team will provide security and the other team will provide relief as required.

(i) Food, water and medical aide will be provided as required.

(5) Refugee control points: The purpose of a refugee control point is to keep MSR's free and assist the host nation in moving refugee traffic away from the battlefield. MP will coordinate the locations of refugee points with the MAGTF commander.

(a) Established similar to and in conjunction with TCP or checkpoints.

(b) Refugee control points should be positioned at a location, which diverts them off the MSRs and onto designated roadways identified for the purpose of moving civilian traffic.

(c) Coordinate with the MAGTF G/S-1/3/4 and the host nation civilian authorities to establish a location for refugees.

(d) The identity of refugees should be established to prevent the enemy from infiltrating into the rear area.

(e) Host nation law enforcement and/or interpreter support, criminal investigators, and Marine interrogator translator team will be used as required.

(f) All personal belongings and vehicles will be searched. Metal detectors and explosive/drug detection MWD teams will be used as available.

(6) Vehicle Holding Areas: Holding areas will be operated to help regulate the flow of traffic along the MSR. They can be used in conjunction with checkpoints and defiles, to support river crossings or as required by the tactical situation.

(a) Holding areas will be identified during the route reconnaissance patrols and support the scheme of maneuver. Site selection considerations:

1. Vehicles need to be dispersed, covered, and concealed from air and ground observation.

2. Easy access to and from area. The first vehicle in is the first vehicle out.

3. The surface is firm enough to hold the weight of the vehicles. Inclement weather could have an adverse affect if the area will be heavily used.

4. Parked vehicles must face the exit to allow them to be quickly driven from the area.

5. A roadway must be established that allows selected vehicles to depart.

6. The area can be easily defended for a short period of time.

(b) The size of the holding area will dictate the manning requirement. At a minimum, MPs' will:

1. Control vehicle traffic into and exiting the area.

2. Establish a parking plan, coordinating with the convoy commander to park the vehicles. Hand and arm signals, flashlights, and chemical lights will be used as needed to direct traffic.

3. Security for the holding area is a unit responsibility. Coordinate with the convoy commander to establish security for the area. MP will conduct mounted/dismounted patrols around the holding area.

(7) Dismount and access control points: Dismount points are used to limit or eliminate vehicle traffic in certain areas. Access control points are used to screen entry into secured areas.

(a) Dismount points. Vehicles are directed into a parking area where the occupants are required to leave their vehicles and walk to their final destination. Site selection considerations:

1. Allows for vehicle to stop, passengers to dismount, and the vehicles to be parked.

2. Is easily accessible from a road.

3. Provides good cover and concealment.

(b) Access Control Points. A static post positioned to regulate entry into a specific area. Site considerations:

1. Fighting positions will be erected which cover likely avenues of approach.

2. Barriers will be used to slow and regulate traffic flow into and out of the area.

3. Specific entry/exit requirements will be determined by the senior MP officer.

4. Procedures for searching personnel, equipment, and vehicles will be implemented.

5. All vehicles will be searched before access is allowed. See APPENDIX K.

6. Metal detecting wands and inspection mirrors will be used.

(8) Temporary Route Signing: Route signing is the

primary method MPs use to regulate the flow of traffic throughout the battlefield. STANAG 2174 (Standard NATO Agreement) specifies the standards for sign construction and use. Standard NATO symbols will be used. See APPENDIX L.

(a) Types of signs include: DIRECTIONAL, GUIDE, WARNING, CONFIDENCE, CONFIRMATION, COUNTDOWN, REGULATORY, HAZARD, MILITARY & CIVILIAN CASUALTY EVACUATION ROUTES, BLACKOUT ENFORCEMENT AND NBC.

1. MP emplace temporary signs. Engineers will emplace permanent signs.

2. MP will prepare a traffic control plan depicting the location of signs and flow of traffic.

(b) Signs will be prepared to:

1. Identify routes.

2. Reroute traffic around problem areas.

3. Show drivers the locations of key areas, as well as danger areas.

(c) Guidelines for sign placement:

1. Use the least number possible. Road intersections, night use, urban area, and the problem areas that require attention.

2. Place hazard signs approximately 150 meters before hazard.

3. Place regulatory signs where the regulation takes effect. Place the signs on the same side as the vehicles are traveling about one meter off the traveled way, concealed from aerial view by slanting them slightly forward.

4. The height of the sign will be approximately the same height as a man standing. Foliage will dictate height in some areas. In urban areas, place signs so they are not hidden by vehicle and pedestrian traffic, and cannot be tampered with by children, and illuminated by existing streetlights.

5. A confirmation sign will be placed 150 meters beyond critical road junctions.

6. Signs will be placed on both sides of the road to guide traffic to and from the FEBA.

7. To aid in identification, routes will be color coded at night with chemical lights.

(d) Sign dimensions & material:

1. 14” wide and 18” long.

2. The white circle will be 12” in diameter.

3. 5” lettering will be used.

4. Signs may be constructed out of any available material that is practical.

APPENDICES:

K – Examples 0f TCPs & Procedures for Conducting a Vehicle Search.
L – Examples of Route Signs/Example of MSR Names

AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS

AREA SECURITY

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for the conduct of area security operations.

2. General. Area security is a major concern for the MAGTF commander. MP play an important part in the overall objectives of the rear area security (RAS) plan. Enemy forces operate in the rear area to disrupt our combat service support (CSS) operations and seek to divert ground combat forces from the front. MP play a vital role in ensuring CSS operations are not interrupted. With their mobility and communication capabilities, MP are able to detect, report, and engage enemy activity in order to prevent and/or slow enemy penetration into the rear area.

3. Assumptions.

a. Usually, the CSS element commander will be responsible for RAS. He will clearly define the security requirements for the CSS element. The senior MP will coordinate military police activities with the CSSE commander, which allows for the prioritization of missions to best compliment the RAS plan.

b. Individual units are responsible for their own local security.

Missions

1. Missions. Area security missions include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Area Reconnaissance and Surveillance. The collective information gathered during mounted and dismounted patrols of key terrain and likely enemy avenues of approach. The focus of reconnaissance and surveillance patrols is to keep commanders informed of changes occurring on the battlefield.

b. Response Force Operations. MP are the initial responders to threats in the rear area. MP neutralize enemy forces or delay them until a larger response force can respond.

c. Security for Port and Beach Operations. MP provide access control to the port/beach area and conduct mounted/dismounted patrols both in and around the port/ beach

area. Security for unit equipment, staging areas, and unit positions rests with the responsible unit commander.

d. Area Damage Control (ADC). MP identify and report damage, hostile or man-made, which inhibits combat and CSS operations. MSRs may become flooded with refugees or an NBC attack may leave areas contaminated and un-trafficable. MP report these conditions and implement traffic control measures to re-route traffic and lessening the disruptive effects.

e. NBC Detection and Reporting. See NBC Operations Section

f. Security of Critical Sites, Assets and HRP Security. MP may provide security to critical facilities by establishing an early detection security screen around the area. Convoys transporting sensitive material may be escorted. MP may assist in the security of VIPs.

g. **Air Base Ground Defense.** MP may assist in the security of an airbase and/or a forward air refueling point (FARP) by providing access control and area mounted and dismounted patrols. The ACE commander is ultimately responsible for ABGD and AT/FP concerns, but normally delegates that authority to the Marine Wing Support Squadron (MWSS) commander who is designated the Tactical Security Officer (TSO). Through the squadron AGSOC, the MWSS commander controls and supervises the operations of the ABGD BDOC. To assist in these duties, the TSO assigns another officer to oversee ABGD and BDOC operations; due to training and security experience, the MP detachment officer-in-charge is normally the officer assigned those duties as the RASO.

Flight Line Considerations

1. Policy

a. Photography of aircraft, personnel, restricted government property and restricted areas are unauthorized. Only the Air Base commander may give permission for photography.

b. No military police vehicles are permitted on the flight line and aircraft parking aprons, except under the following conditions:

(1) A bona fide emergency (if MP does not respond; in

circumstances that indicate the MP is either disabled or under duress; MP calls for immediate backup; attack on or immediate threat to critical aviation equipment or facilities, including aircraft; human life in immediate danger; etc.).

(2) If the vehicle or its equipment is needed on the flight line (PA system to hail fishermen/boats; transport prisoner/detainee; emergency gear box to render first aid; block traffic; blue lights at night as a beacon to guide other responding emergency vehicles; etc.).

(3) When ordered by competent authority (watch commander and above) for good cause.

(4) During tactical exercises only when coordinated in advance with Air Field Operations.

(5) The maximum speed on the flight line and taxiways is 15 mph; around aircraft the maximum speed is 5 mph.

2. Military Police Flight Line Security

a. Air Field operations is responsible for notifying Military Police 30 minutes prior to securing/opening the flight line. Upon notification, Military Police will either fully monitor alarm systems or patrol the flight line.

b. The watch commander/platoon commander will check gates.

c. Flight line MPs will patrol their area in a random manner considering use of cover and concealment at all times. The positioning of aircraft will dictate the emphasis of patrol. Position the sentry to observe all resources within the patrol zone.

d. Attention to duty while on post is reflected by the MPs general appearance, attitude, and alertness. Therefore, in addition to the 11 general orders, flight line MPs will:

(1) Stay within their assigned patrol zone.

(2) Keep conversations with personnel short, concise, and official.

(3) Refrain from sitting, eating, smoking, and/or using AM/FM radios.

(4) Patrol in a random manner using cover and concealment.

(5) Carry a 9mm pistol/30 rounds or a M16/60 rounds and as directed, a 12 gauge shotgun/10 rounds.

(6) Challenge all persons/vehicles on or near their post.

(7) Radio the dispatcher once every thirty minutes on the status of the flight line.

e. Military police (MP) will not drive patrol vehicles in the following areas:

(1) Runways/taxiways.

(2) Aircraft parking aprons.

(4) Aircraft tow-way.

f. Simple Challenge of Personnel (Cooperative). Military police within flight line boundaries will:

(1) Inform the dispatcher of the situation, location and number of personnel.

(2) If possible, assume a covered/concealed position.

(3) Issue the command, "HALT! Who goes there?"

(4) Command the individual to remove their Armed Forces Identification (AFID), and advance to be recognized. When they approach, command the individual to place their AFID on the deck and step backwards.

(5) Verify identity by matching the face with the picture on the AFID, and ask the individual a portion of the social security number.

(6) If all the information is correct, render the appropriate greeting and allow the individual to proceed.

(7) Inform the dispatcher the challenge is terminated and that the area is secure.

g. Complex Challenge of Personnel Uncooperative/Heightened Threat Conditions). Military police within flight line boundaries will:

(1) Instruct the individual(s) to halt and place their hands in the air.

(2) Immediately notify the dispatcher of the situation, location and number of personnel.

(3) Instruct the individual drop to their knees, lie flat on their stomach with their arms outstretched, palms up, legs spread and toes inboard while waiting for backup.

(4) Properly search and handcuff (if appropriate) the individual when backup arrives.

(5) Identify the individual and transport to a holding area for processing (if appropriate).

(6) Adhere to deadly force requirements set forth in MCO 5500.4

h. Simple Vehicle Challenge. Military police within flight line boundaries will:

(1) Notify the dispatcher. Use cover/concealment, and command the driver to halt. Request backup if necessary.

(2) Command the driver to turn off the engine, set the emergency brake, leave the headlights on, and turn on the dome light (lights pertain to night time only) once the vehicle halts.

(3) Cautiously approach the vehicle and identify the driver and occupants.

(4) Radio the dispatcher that the challenge is terminated, render the appropriate military courtesy, and allow the vehicle to proceed once all individuals are identified

i. Complex Vehicle Challenge (Suspicious/Heightened Threat Conditions). Military police within flight line boundaries will:

(1) Perform steps (1) and (2) above for a simple vehicle challenge.

(2) Request backup.

(3) Conduct a high-risk traffic stop.

j. Reporting the post. Once the MP determines through challenging that an individual is the officer of the day, staff duty officer, or other superior in the chain of command, the MP will report his post in this manner:

(1) Render appropriate military courtesy.

(2) State his name, rank, patrol zone, and the status of the post.

(3) Briefly state any special orders that may be in effect.

(4) Briefly state limits of his post and general responsibilities.

k. Foreign object damage (FOD) can occur to aircraft or personnel when loose objects are affected by the prop wash or jet engines. Enforce littering regulations.

l. Occasionally aircraft will leak fuel. Report this hazard immediately to the dispatcher. The desk sergeant will notify the unit representative, Fire Department, Environmental Department, and Joint Safety Office.

m. MPs will not normally patrol in areas where units are actively working on aircraft except when ordered by competent authority. For safety reasons, limit presence in these areas to visible and lighted areas, and only for the purpose of transit.

3. **Aircraft Crash/Mishaps**

a. Off-Base Response

(1) The desk sergeant will obtain the following information from the caller if the first report of an aircraft crash/mishap originates from a source other than the airfield operations.

(a) Specific location and time of crash/mishap.

(b) Whether the aircraft is burning and if it contains hazardous material cargo.

(c) Whether there are injured military and/or civilians.

(d) Description of aircraft to include letter number markings and colors.

(e) Quickest route to accident location from airfield.

(f) Caller's name and present location, home address, and direct emergency units to the crash/mishap site.

(2) The desk sergeant will: immediately notify the Operations Officer (working hours).

(a) Notify Federal Fire Department of all pertinent information.

(b) Contact the civilian law enforcement agency whose jurisdiction contains the crash/mishap site.

(c) Continue making notifications per reference.

(3) The Senior Officer/SNCO will identify and organize personnel who have responded to the recall and accomplish the following:

(a) Execute timely, safe movement of Military Police personnel to the crash/mishap sire using the following guidelines:

1. Coordinate departure with other responding agencies.

2. Use most expeditious route.

3. Obey all posted speed limits.

4. Keep all vehicles together.

5. Activate all code devices on vehicles if equipped.

b. On-Field Response

(1) The desk sergeant will obtain pertinent information from Air Field Operations or other appropriate authority and dispatch one available unit to Air Field Operations, with following instructions:

(a) Obey all speed limits.

(b) Activate all code devices on the vehicle while moving.

(c) Be cautious of other emergency vehicles responding to the crash/mishap.

(d) Check in with appropriate personnel at the control tower and remain at that location until specific instructions are given.

(e) Report pertinent information and status back to the desk sergeant expeditiously.

(2) All other units will be prepared to respond (if the patrol units have not already responded) with appropriate emergency gear for the crash/mishap site dispatched.

c. On-Base Response

(1) The desk sergeant will obtain pertinent information from Air Field Operations or other appropriate authority and dispatch nearest available patrol unit directly to the crash/mishap site, with the following instruction:

(a) Obey all speed limits.

(b) Activate all code devices on the vehicle while moving.

(c) Upon arrival at crash/mishap site, report situation to the desk sergeant and be prepared to take appropriate action outlined in paragraph (d) below.

(2) Based upon the initial estimate, the desk sergeant will dispatch appropriate additional units.

d. Action taken at Off-Base and On-Base Crash/Mishaps

AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS

(1) Upon arriving at an actual crash/mishap site, responding units will be guided by the on-scene Commander and the following:

(a) Take action to preserve life.

(b) Establish a security perimeter (normally approximately 500 feet from the crash/mishap area), and an Entry Control Point (ECP) sufficient distance to ensure protection in case of explosion and resulting flying debris, vapors and aircraft material fibers.

(c) Use caution when placing personnel on the downwind side of the crash/mishap site because of the possible presence of the aircraft caustic fibers or hazardous material cargo.

(d) Permit only the following personnel to remain inside the security perimeter:

1. On-Scene Commander (unit representative or Air Operations personnel).

2. Other emergency personnel to include Crash Fire Rescue (CFR), Federal Fire Department (FFD), Explosive Ordinance Disposal (EOD), medical personnel.

3. Duty Photograph.

4. FAA inspectors.

5. Chaplain.

6. Representatives of Group/Squadron involved.

7. Aviation Safety Representatives.

8. Facilities Maintenance Personnel.

9. Base Public Affairs Office personnel only (no civilian media personnel unless escorted by Base PAO personnel.

(e) Attempt to locate witnesses and record their names and addresses.

(f) Prevent persons from taking unauthorized photographs.

(g) Security personnel will not release any information to media representatives.

4. Follow-on Action.

a. The desk sergeant will ensure that journal and blotter entries and notifications are completed.

b. Preservation of voice recordings made in the course of the crash/mishap and Military Police response.

5. List of Emergency Gear for Aircraft Crash(Crash Box).

a. TCP Vests. Enough TCP vests should be kept in the crash box, to cover all military police that will be responding, to include other people on scene who may need them i.e. unit representatives, C.O.'s, FAA representatives etc.... These will be necessary for safety, being that there will be emergency vehicle's to include traffic that might be congested due to the crash/mishap.

b. Flashlights. These are necessary for all crashes day or night. Military police responding will most likely be at the scene during the course of the day and then will be there at night keeping a secure perimeter on the crash/mishap site, so flashlights will be necessary regardless of the time of day a crash/mishap may occur. Flashlights would also be useful at night for traffic control in the event of a crash/mishap that may occur in a heavily populated area.

c. MREs. These will be a necessity for the Marine's who will be securing the perimeter at the crash/mishap site through the course of the night, and being that a crash/mishap may occur in a rural area food may be hard to bring to any personnel securing the perimeter.

d. Radios. These are vital to a crash/mishap team's communication with on another and with MPD. These radios must be designed as crash/mishap radios and must not be used, except in the case of a crash/mishap. These radios must also be checked for battery serviceability by the armorer/gear NCO.

e. Water Jugs. These must be brought so the Marines on scene can keep hydrated.

f. 782 Gear. The 782 gear that should be in crash/mishap box should be enough to cover all of the personnel securing the perimeter. Personnel securing the perimeter should be given one of each of the following:

(1) ALICE pack

(2) H harness

(3) 2 canteens

(4) First Aid Kit

Tactical Employment Considerations

1. Procedures. The following actions/considerations should be taken when developing an area security plan:

a. Define unit area of operation; furthermore, identify joint, combined, and civilian security forces operating in your area of operation (AO). When possible, operate together in order to maximize manpower and resources.

b. Assign subordinate units patrol areas.

(1) Area will be patrolled using mounted and dismounted patrols.

(2) Mounted patrols will patrol along MSRs and off-road areas identified as likely enemy avenues of approach and key terrain.

(3) Dismounted patrols will operate in and around critical facility locations and friendly unit positions.

(4) All patrol activity in and around friendly positions will be coordinated with the RAOC/BDOC and that unit's operation center.

c. Conduct aggressive area reconnaissance and surveillance patrols.

d. Obtain intelligence on threat capabilities and likely courses of action, and focus security efforts to detect and counter the threat.

e. Establish essential elements of information to be collected. This information confirms or denies enemy courses of action.

f. Coordinate with higher headquarters and adjacent units to integrate security measures.

g. Locate and make contact with friendly forces in your AO.

h. Identify personnel to act as a response force should an enemy force be detected. The purpose of the response force may not be to defeat the enemy, but to delay it until a larger response force can respond.

i. Brief higher headquarters on the capabilities, limitations, and employment of MP as part of the rear area security plan.

j. Quickly report all enemy contact/activity to higher headquarters.

k. ADC Measures.

(1) Passive ADC Measures.

(a) Disperse personnel and equipment.

(b) Use the fighting positions and shelters.

(c) Wearing protective gear (NBC gear or flak jacket).

(d) Preparing plans to handle ADC operations.

(e) Planning and coordinating available host nation support.

(2) Active ADC Measures.

(a) Isolate the affected area by controlling or rerouting vehicle/pedestrian traffic.

(b) Report action taken using a SPOT report.

(c) Take actions to secure critical facilities and sensitive materials.

(d) Conduct NBC operations.

(e) Prevent looting and pilferage.

(f) Render first aid and request MEDEVAC as required.

(g) Monitor conditions on the MSRs and report conditions to the CSS commander.

(3) Coordinate supporting arms. See Section 6, Fire Support.

UNIT DEFENSIVE MEASURES

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for the establishment of unit defensive measures.

2. Assumptions. That MPs will be collocated with an established combat service support (CSS) unit. In this situation, MPs will contribute to the defense by performing area security and, as required, designated fighting positions contributing to the overall defense. In some instances, MPs will establish a tactical CP independent of the CSS element.

Principals of Defense.

1. Organization of the Ground. The Senior MP will assign specific sectors of fire to subordinate leaders and the principal direction of automatic weapons. He will point out on the ground general locations for each fire unit to occupy.

a. Mutual Support. Units and supporting weapons are located and employed to assist one another. Positions should be located so that more than one unit can bring an attacking force under fire at once.

b. Defense in Depth. Fighting positions are selected and fire units are employed in a layered manner, which prevents the enemy from quickly penetrating friendly defenses.

c. Surprise. Every means available is used to mislead the enemy as to the true location of positions, strength, and position of weapons.

d. Knowledge of the Enemy. Crucial to building defenses is knowing the capabilities and limitation of the enemy. By knowing what courses of action the enemy is likely to take will allow you to best plane and defeat the threat.

e. Defilade. To shield from enemy fire or observation by using natural or artificial obstacles (i.e.) hill, ridge, bank.

2. S.A.F.E. The acronym used to describe priority of work during the initial phase of establishing a hasty defense.

Security
Automatic Weapons Emplacement.
Clear Fields of Fire
Entrench

Establishing a Defensive Position.

1. The senior MP will:

a. Halt the unit in a covered and concealed location to the rear of the defensive position. Local security is established.

b. Along with subordinate leaders and a security element reconnoiter the position.

c. Designate fire unit sectors of fire, key weapons systems locations, location of SPs/OPs, and designate the CP location. In a company size defensive position, 1st Platoon will assume responsibility from 12:00 to 6:00. 2nd Platoon will occupy 6:00 to 12:00.

d. Ensure automatic and crew-served weapons position have interlocking fields of fire across the position front, tie in with adjacent units, and cover man-made/natural obstacles.

e. Position anti-armor weapons on high-speed avenues of approach maximizing the chance of flank shots.

f. Designate members to act as a react force.

g. Designate members to install obstacles.

h. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.

i. Consolidate subordinate unit leader fire plan sketches and submit to higher headquarters.

b. Security elements establish security and occupy defensive positions.

2. Subordinate units occupy defensive positions at the same time using different routes. The following is the priority of work:

a. Designate members to perform security.

b. Clear fields of fire. Do not over clear foliage.

c. Dig fighting position.

d. Physically reconnoiter in front of the position to locate dead spaces.

e. Make contact with adjacent units to locate a covered and concealed route.

f. Emplace Mines, booby traps, and early warning drives i.e. trip flares

g. Prepare fire plan sketches and aiming stakes.

h. Prepare overhead cover for fighting positions.

i. Camouflage position.

(1) Camouflage netting will be used to cover all vehicles and equipment. Camouflage will not interfere with the weapon systems or prevent the rapid movement of the vehicle to another position.

(2) Camouflage is continuous. Subordinate leaders will periodically inspect their positions and personnel for proper camouflage.

3. The communications chief will establish a telephone/wire gun-loop linking the subordinate leaders with the CP.

Conduct of the Defense.

1. Aggressive mounted and dismounted patrols will be conducted per Section 14.

2. Attacking enemy forces will be engaged at the maximum effective range of available weapon systems. When available, call for fire mission/close air support will be requested per Section 6.

3. Subordinate unit leaders will control the rate of fire for their units. The Senior MP will order FPF fires to be employed, Using the rapid rate of fire, when attacking forces reach the FPF line, and only on order of the Senior Commander.

4. All means available will be employed to defeat enemy forces, which have penetrated friendly lines.

Coordinating Instructions.

1. Vehicle-mounted radio systems will not be used in the defense.

2. Permission to fire the FPF will be authorized by the senior MP or higher headquarters. The primary means of notification will be the landline. Alternate means will be voice.

3. Fire plan sketches will be turned into the Senior MP one hour after assuming defensive positions.

4. The use of mine, booby-traps, and obstacles will be approved/coordinated with the Senior MP.

5. A clear chain of command will be established.

6. Enemy contact will be immediately reported per chapter 1 and Appendix I (Reports).

7. Subordinate units will contact the tactical CP before entering or exiting friendly lines.

8. Guides will be used to lead friendly personnel through unit barrier plans.

APPENDIX:

M - Example of Fire Plan Sketch & Range Card

PATROLLING

Introduction

1. Purpose. To provide standard operating procedures for mounted and dismounted patrolling.

2. General. Patrolling provides the commander with information, increases unit security, and on occasion can help to attrite the enemy. Continual patrolling is vital to the success of the rear area mission. MPs conduct both dismounted and mounted patrols in support of the CSSE. MP dismounted patrols focus primarily on rear area security in the immediate CSSE area, while mounted patrols are intended to extend the eyes of the commander outside of the CSSA.

3. Assumptions.

a. MP will be tasked with providing continuous rear area patrolling operations in support of the CSSE.

b. A majority of MP patrols will be for security and reconnaissance.

c. MPs will have vehicle assets (hardback HMMWVs) to conduct mounted patrols.

d. The Senior MP will determine the specific missions for each MP patrol.

e. The PL will report directly to the Senior MP.

Tasks Common to Dismounted and Mounted Patrols.

1. The senior MP will:

a. Determine the patrol requirements based on both the stated and implied mission.

b. Assign the proper sized unit to conduct the patrol based on the patrol requirements.

c. Provide the patrol units adequate tune to prepare for the patrol by reverse planning estimates.

d. Provide the PL with all relevant information to include (at a minimum) paragraphs one (1), two (2) and three (3) of the five paragraph order format.

e. Provide necessary skills, equipment and miscellaneous support for the patrol.

f. Review the PLs plan and preparations and guide him towards mission accomplishment.

g. Track the patrol's movements (by radio reports) on the MP tactical map and maintain the ability to support the patrol by reaction force or indirect fire.

h. Debrief the patrol immediately upon its return.

1. The PL will.

a. Plan and execute patrol preparations in accordance with APPENDIX N.

(1) Conduct a detailed map reconnaissance, taking into account terrain and load for movement rates, cover and concealment, and egress routes.

(2) Plan for the medevac of casualties, and/or ensure necessary litter equipment is carried.

(3) Hold an initial inspection to determine requirements for correction.

(4) Hold detailed rehearsals at slow, medium and full speeds to ensure mission comprehension.

(5) Report to the Senior MP with both the final plan for approval prior to issuing the order.

(6) Prepare a patrol overlay in accordance with APPENDIX N to include:

(a) Two sets of grid reference points.

(b) A North-seeking arrow.

(c) Overall classification of the overlay will be place centered in the top and bottom margins.

(d) Reference box containing the following information:

1. Name, Rank.

2. SSN.

3. Unit.

4. Date Time Group expressed e.g., Day, Time (Local) Month, Year 12 1930L May 95.

5. Map Name, edition and scale.

6. Key that depicts special symbology.

7. Mode of travel (Foot or Vehicle) & distance traveled.

8. Estimated time of departure and return.

(e) Location of friendly forces.

(f) Location of checkpoints or ambush sites (grid coordinates).

(g) Primary and alternate routes.

(7) Coordinate with forward unit coordination for reconnaissance, departure, and reentry of friendly lines (if necessary).

b. Conduct the patrol in accordance with this Section.

c. Upon return, immediately debrief with the Senior MP and the S-2.

2. The APL will:

a. Assist the PL in all patrol preparations and assume command in his absence.

b. Continuously monitor the location and disposition of all patrol members and equipment.

c. Assist the PL by coordinating the actions of task organized elements according to the mission.

3. The Navigator will:

a. Conduct a map reconnaissance of the patrol route with the PL.

b. Be thoroughly aware of the patrol mission and Tactical Area of Responsibility (TAOR)

c. Assist the PL by plotting the primary and alternate routes for the patrol, including azimuths, distances, checkpoints and pace-counts/mile-counts.

d. Navigate the patrol along the designated route keeping continual awareness of the patrol's location.

4. The Pace Counters will:

a. Translate the route, given by the navigator, into number of steps using personal pace count.

b. Maintain pace count and inform the navigator of distances as required.

Dismounted Patrols

Introduction

1. General. Mission and asset availability will dictate the method of patrol mobility. On foot, MP can conduct all types of patrols, and dismounted units provide very detailed reconnaissance and security capabilities. Dismounted patrols are preferable for conducting ambush patrols due to their stealthy nature. A dismounted patrol can be as simple as a "walking patrol" of a unit’s area to enforce law and order.

Tactical Employment

1. Dismounted Patrols will.

a. Depart friendly lines in column.

b. Assemble at IRP and conduct short halt. Reform into Patrol formation.

c. Conduct patrols along mission guidelines using checkpoints for references. Report when checkpoints are reached.

d. Conduct frequent listening halts at irregular times.

e. Conduct short and long halts as necessary to maintain security and head count.

f. Designate rally points ax least every 200 meters.

g. Actions at the objective.

(1) Ambush Patrols:

(a) Stop at Final Preparation Point, conduct long halt.

(b) PL, flanks, security and Security Unit Leader (SUL) inspect ambush site for suitability and placement.

(c) PL and SUL emplace flanks with field phones and wire running to the PLs tentative position.

(d) SUL remains in place with flanks; PL and security return to patrol.

(e) PL places remaining personnel.

(f) Claymores, sighting guides, and firing positions are emplaced.

(g) Patrol remains motionless and silent until the ambush is executed.

(h) Flank nearest enemy will signal the patrol of the approaching target with tugs on the wire.

(i) PL executes ambush with his weapon and shouts "FIRE!" when enough of the enemy have entered the kill zone to make the ambush effective.

(j) PL calls cease-fire and reinitiates as necessary.

(k) Search and EPW team is sent in.

(1) Patrol withdraws to Objective Rally Point to regroup and disperse physical EEI material throughout the patrol.

(2) Area Reconnaissance.

(a) Stop at FPP, conduct long halt.

(b) Divide into recon and security teams, each responsible for the recon of a specific sector of the objective or providing security for the recon teams.

(c) Conduct a reconnaissance of the objective, keeping in mind all Ms.

(d) Regroup at the FPP, continue patrol.

(3) Point Reconnaissance.

(a) Stop at FPP, conduct long halt.

(b) Move by covered and concealed route to good covered and concealed observation position.

(c) Observe the objective, taking notes and shooting azimuths to all targets/mission objectives.

(d) Withdraw on covered and concealed route to ORP.

(4) Zone Reconnaissance.

(a) Stop at FPP, conduct long halt.

(b) Divide into recon teams.

(c) Reconnoiter the area, each team covering one "zone" and thoroughly patrolling that zone in a looping, zigzagging or box pattern.

(d) Regroup at ORP, distribute EEIs, complete patrol.

(5) Economy of Force.

(a) Stop at the FPP, conduct a halt (time permitting).

(b) Conduct an attack to seize the objective and immediately establish a defense per Section 7 (Unit Defensive Measures)

(c) Await further orders.

h. (For other than Economy of Force patrols) Stop at RRP, conduct long halt, contact friendly unit, request guide.

i. Move single file through friendly lines, APL counts in.

j. Entire patrol immediately moves to debrief with Senior MP and S-2.

k. PL prepares patrol report in accordance with Senior MP and. S-2 requirements.

Immediate Action

1. General. During the patrol, situations may dictate the need for unhesitating, effective action or reaction by the patrol as a unit. Standing operating procedures that are rehearsed in the preparation stage of the patrol will greatly increase the patrols success and survivability.

a. Near Counter ambush Drill (Left or Right). Closer than hand grenade range. The command 'NEAR AMBUSH (LEFT OR RIGHT)" will be given by the first member of the patrol to see the ambush. The entire patrol will immediately turn 90 degrees to the appropriate side and assault through the ambush position while firing at the rapid rate. It is imperative that fire superiority be gained or regained immediately to ensure survivability.

b. Far Counter ambush Drill (Any Direction). Farther than hand grenade range. The command "FAR AMBUSH (DIRECTION)" will be given by the first member of the patrol to see the ambush. The unit under fire will take cover and return fire at the rapid late to gain fire superiority. The unit(s) not under fire will maneuver under the direction of the senior man to engage the ambush position.

c. Detection of the Enemy. If the enemy is spotted, the PL has several options for action. He may stand fast, withdraw, continue movement if unobserved, or engage. If the two units spot each other simultaneously (Meeting Engagement), the PL will

have to defend, withdraw, or conduct an immediate assault. If the enemy doesn't have observation, the PL can call for a hasty ambush.

(1) Immediate Assault. The PL or Unit Leader will call "ACTION (DIRECTION)" to initiate the immediate assault while firing a well-aimed shot at the enemy. The patrol will immediately move on line around the initiating unit and assault through the enemy.

(2) Hasty Ambush. The PL gives the hand and arm signal for Hasty Ambush, and the patrol quickly moves into ambush position. The ambush will be initiated and conducted in accordance with Section II, paragraph 1.

d. Break Contact. The PL will call "BREAK CONTACT..." followed by a direction and distance. If no direction or distance is given, the patrol will break contact to the nearest rally point. The most engaged unit will withdraw while the other units provide suppressive fire. The patrol will then continue to break contact by unit under the direction of the PL.

e. Air Attack. The command "AIR - (DIRECTION)" will be given by the first member of the patrol to see the ambush. The entire patrol will immediately hit the deck and seek cover and concealment and be prepared to fire. Firing at aircraft requires precise coordination of the entire unit, placing a "wall of lead" in front of the aircraft. The PL will give an ADDRAC and control the fire of the patrol.

(1) Slow Mover (Helicopter). Lead by 50 meters from side to side, or just over nose from the front.

(2) Fast Mover (Jet). Lead by 200 meters from side to side, or just over canopy from the front.

f. NBC Attack. The Marine detecting the attack will immediately mask and give the signal for gas. The patrol will follow suit, covering with ponchos in the eventuality of a spray attack. An NBC One (1) report will be immediately broadcast to higher. After any casualties are handled, and if enough patrol members remain able, the patrol will immediately continue with the original mission.

Actions At Danger Areas

1. General. The patrol route may take the patrol through terrain that could expose the patrol to enemy observation or fire. Whenever possible, the PL should avoid these areas when planning his route. During the patrol, the PL can bypass these areas by conducting a 90 degree offset or choosing to use the Alternate Route. If the area cannot be bypassed, the patrol must act as a team to cross the danger area safely and unobserved.

a. Linear. Point man will signal a short halt and call the PL forward. The PL will pull the flanks on line with the road for security, and the Security Unit will cross by twos to conduct a far side recon (clearing an area large enough for the patrol to reform safely). The Security Unit leader will signal the PL that all is clear on the far side (or attempt to return to the patrol if engaged). The PL will then cross, leaving the APL in charge of the near side. The patrol will cross by twos, until the APL (ensuring all patrol members have crossed) crosses with the flanks. The patrol reforms in a long halt on the far side.

b. Cross-compartment. The same procedure for linear areas is used, except the entire patrol moves on line before the Security Unit crosses.

Special Considerations

1. When the statement "Time has priority" appears in the mission statement other vital mission tasks may be bypassed if successful completion would mean ending the patrol past the return deadline. The PL will prioritize tasks in order of importance.

Mounted Patrols

Introduction

1. General. Mission and asset availability will determine the method of patrol mobility. In vehicles, MP can cover a great deal of ground in a short period of time, and carry heavy organic firepower. Mounted patrols are ideal for route reconnaissance, area security, and reconnaissance and surveillance missions.

3. Assumptions.

a. MP will not conduct mounted ambush patrols as standard procedure.

b. All route reconnaissance patrols will be mounted patrols.

c. The PL will task organize the mounted patrol as necessary.

Tactical Employment

1. Mounted Patrols:

a. Depart the MP Company area in patrol formation moving according to Section 8 (Vehicle Movement Techniques).

b. Conduct the patrol in accordance with the mission.

c. Report checkpoints to the tactical command post.

d. Make necessary situation reports per Section 21 (Reports).

e. The PL will ensure security is posted while team members collect data.

f. Conduct actions at the objective.

(1) Area Reconnaissance. .

(a) Move to FPP, dismount if necessary for security.

(b) Move by covered and concealed route to a gun defilade/covered and concealed position with observation of the objective.

(c) Take notes and azimuths to targets/mission objectives.

(d) Withdraw on covered and concealed route to ORP.

(2) Area Reconnaissance.

(a) Move to FPP, dismount if necessary for security.

(b) Split into reconnaissance teams, each responsible for a specific section of the objective.

(c) Conduct a reconnaissance of the objective, keeping in mind mission EEIs.

(d) Regroup at ORP.

(e) Continue Patrol.

(3) Route Reconnaissance.

(a) Observe and measure for all EEIs as per Section IV Essential Elements of Information and Measurement Techniques.

(b) Make all necessary route reports per Section 21.

(c) Complete a Route Reconnaissance Overlay per this Section.

g. Conduct remainder of patrol and return to RRP.

h. Contact forward friendly unit for guide.

i. Return to MP area and immediately debrief with Senior MP.

Security Measures

1. General. During mounted patrolling operations, MP will encounter situations requiring special security measures to prevent exposure to enemy observation and/or fire, or to engage or report on enemy activity.

a. Approaching Potential Drop Zone/Landing Zone. Security Units are detached to find a gun defilade covered and concealed position with fields of fire covering the DZ/LZ and the route of the reconnoitering unit. Reconnaissance teams approach and enter the DZ/LZ and conduct a zone reconnaissance to determine the suitability of use for enemy forces and possible countermeasures.

b. Approaching a Potential Defile. Security Units are detached to find a gun defilade covered and concealed position with fields of fire covering the near and far sides of the defile. Reconnaissance teams approach the defile on a covered and concealed route and examine the area for potential defile operations and local enemy activity.

c. Approaching a Bridge/Tunnel. Security Units are detached to find a gun defilade covered and concealed position with fields of fire covering both approaches to the bridge and (if possible) the underpass. Reconnaissance teams approach the bridge on a covered and concealed route and conduct the bridge reconnaissance, looking for signs of enemy activity or demolition prior to moving onto the span itself. Units should avoid driving onto a bridge span for reconnaissance purposes when enemy activity is expected; there is usually little cover or concealment on a bridge span.

d. Approaching Blockage or Obstruction. Security Units are detached to find a gun defilade covered and concealed position with fields of fire covering the obstruction and any possible enemy position. Reconnaissance teams approach the area on a covered and concealed route keeping on the alert for enemy activity, deliberate or hasty minefields, or ambush sites.

e. In all situations, MP should be especially watchful of mines, booby-traps, and ambushes in areas leading up to and exiting the above mentioned areas.

Immediate Action

1. General. The mounted patrol may choose from more options for immediate action drills than the dismounted patrol. The speed, mobility, firepower and dismounting capability of the mounted patrol give the PL the flexibility to choose from a variety of responses to any situation. The high noise and visibility profile and the limited off-road capability make the mounted patrol a more likely target for ambush than the dismounted patrol.

a. Near Counter ambush Drill (Left or Right). The unit under fire will move rapidly out of the kill zone while the least engaged unit (LEU) will provide suppressive fire. The PL may then decide to engage or withdraw.

b. Far Counter ambush Drill (Any Direction). Same as Near Ambush.

c. Detection of the Enemy. Depending on the mission, the PL may evade or a using the engagement techniques.

d. Break Contact. The LEU will provide suppressive fire for the unit initiating the break in contact. The movement will be a reverse of the Bounding Over watch procedure in Section 8.

e. Air Attack. Vehicles immediately herringbone moving into a covered and concealed position. M-2 .50 cal machineguns may engage.

f. NBC Attack. Marines mask and move immediately out of the contaminated area. Casualties are treated and the mission is continued.

g. Anti-Armor Attack. The LEU will provide suppressive fire for the unit under fire. Once the engaged unit is out of the kill zone, the PL engages to destroy the anti-armor threat or calls in supporting arms.

2. Engagement Techniques.

a. Mounted fire and maneuver. The Marines remain mounted. The entire patrol can fire as a unit, move as a unit, or fire on the move as a unit. Additionally, subunits of the patrol can remain stationary to provide stable firing platforms for suppressive fire while other units maneuver.

b. Mounted/dismounted fire and maneuver. Some units remain mounted, some units dismount. This technique is ideal for providing a heavy suppressive support-by-fire position for a dismounted assault.

c. Dismounted fire and maneuver. All units dismount. This enables the PL to employ all his Marines as infantry, bringing to bear all rifles, grenades and automatic rifles. The obvious drawbacks to this technique are the loss of mobility and firepower of the HMMWVs.

Special Considerations

1. Mounted patrols are affected by route trafficability, off-road conditions and weather.

2. The availability of POL supplies to support the vehicles could affect the mission.

3. The HMMWV "Hardback" can only withstand 5:56 mm rounds at the thickest point, and is not an armored vehicle.

Essential Elements of Information and Measurement Techniques

1. General. All patrols are tasked with observing for/obtaining certain mission-oriented information. Route Reconnaissance Patrols are tasked with observing, measuring, and reporting data specific to the reconnoitered route.

Route Widths

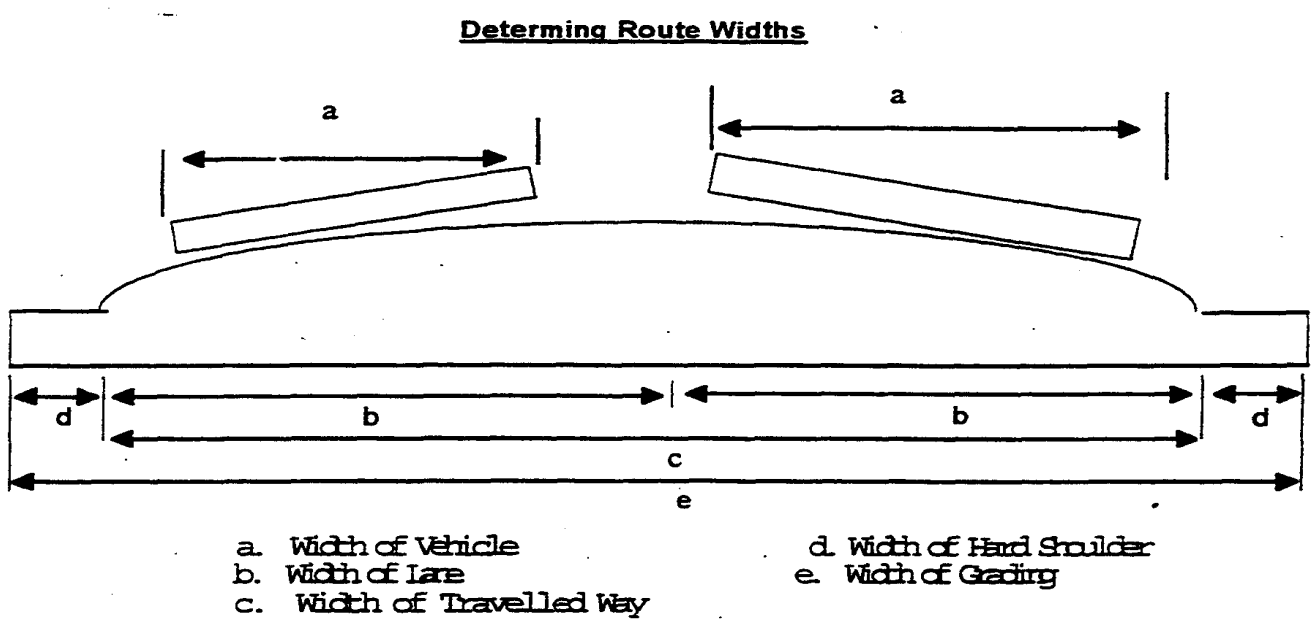


Figure 14-1

Flow Possibilities	Width for Wheeled Vehicles	Width for Tracked Vehicles
Isolated Vehicles of appropriate Width and only in one direction	At Least 3.5m (11.5ft)	At least 4m (13ft)
Generally one-way only; no over-taking or passing in the opposite direction	3.5m to 5.5m (11.Sft to 18ft)	4m to 6m (13ft to 19.Sft)
Single Flow	5.5m to 7.3 m (18ft to 24ft)	6m to 8m (I9.5ft to 26ft)
Double Flow	Over 7.3m (24ft)	Over 8m (26ft)

e. Route Type. Designation of a route's ability to stand weather. Use the chart in Figure 14-3 to help make a determination.

(1) Type X. All-season/all weather route.

(2) Type Y. Limited all weather route sometimes closed to maximum traffic load.

(3) Type Z. Fair weather route that quickly becomes impassable in adverse weather.

Road Surface Material

Route Type	Material		Symbol
Type X	generally heavy duty	Concrete	k
Type X	generally heavy duty	Bituminous (Asphaltic) concrete (bituminous plant mix)	kb
Type X or Y	generally heavy duty	Paving Brick or Stone	P
Type X or Y	generally heavy duty	Bituminous penetrated macadam, water bound macadam with superficial asphalt or tar cover	pb
Type X or Y	generally medium duty	Bitumen penetrated macadam, crushed rock, or stabilized gravel	rb
Type Y	generally light duty crushed rock or coral, or stabilized gravel	Waterbound macadam,	r
Type Y	generally light duty	Gravel or lightly metalled surface	l
Type Y or Z	generally light duty	Bituminous surface treatment on natural earth, stabilized soil, sand-clay, or other select material	nb
Type Y or Z	generally light duty	used when type of bituminous construction can not be determined	b
Type Z	General light duty	natural earth Stabilized soil, sand-	n

	clay, shell, cinders, disintegrated granite, or other select materials	
Type Z		v

f. Military Load Classification. Military Load Classification system is the effect a vehicle has on a road or bridge it is crossing. The effect is the result of a combination of factors including vehicle gross weight, the distribution of the vehicles weight, wheel base, tire size and air pressure, and speed. For MP purposes, broad groups are used.

(1) Average Traffic Routes. Class 60

(2) Heavy Traffic Routes. Class 80

(3) Very Heavy Traffic Routes. Class 120

g. Overhead Clearance. The maximum vertical distance between a road surface and any overhead obstruction where a vehicle can pass anywhere along the route. Unlimited clearance is denoted by the "infinity" symbol.

Route Obstructions (OB).

1. Factors restricting the type, amount, or flow of traffic on a specific route. An (OB) is placed in the Route Formula if any of the below listed constrictions are present.

2. Overhead obstructions. Bridges, tunnels, overhead power lines or overhanging buildings with clearance of less than 4.3 meters.

3. Reduction in traveled way widths. Widths below standard minimums prescribed for the type of traffic.

a. Gradients. Slopes of 7% or greater.

b. Curves. Radii of 25 meters (82.5 ft) and less.

c. Ferries. Fords. Bridges, and Tunnels.

d. Special Considerations. Some obstructions are temporary or seasonal.

(1) Snow. Regular, recurrent, and serious.

(2) Flooding. Regular, recurrent, and serious.

4. Categories of Bypass. The ability to negotiate an obstacle. All Bridges, Tunnels, Fords, Ferries will be assigned a bypass category and reflected as an overlay symbol on the Route Recon Report. See APPENDIX N.

a. Bypass Easy. The obstacles can be crossed in the immediate vicinity without work to improve the bypass.

b. Bypass Difficult. The obstacles can be crossed within the immediate vicinity, but the bypass will need preparation work prior to use.

c. Bypass Impossible. Local bypass is impossible.

5. Ford. A location in a water barrier where the current, bottom, and approaches allow personnel and/or vehicles and other equipment, whose suspension systems remain in contact with the bottom, to cross (not a bridge).

6. Ferry. A location where traffic and cargo are taken across a river or other water barrier by a floating vehicle.

Reconnaissance Formulas/Symbols

1. **Route Classification Formula.**

A/B/C/D/E/F/G

A= Route Width (Meters or Feet).

B= Route Type (X, Y, Z See Figure 14-3).

C= Lowest Military Load Classification (Based on the lowest Military Load Classification of bridges or the worst section of Road).

D= Overhead Clearance (Meters, Feet, or Infinity Symbol).

E= Obstructions to Tragic Flow (Overhead obstruction < 4.3m); Reduction in traveled way; Gradients > 7%; Curves with radii 2.5 m and less; Presence of ferries, fords, bridges or tunnels. Though the specific obstruction is not listed in

the formula, it will be recorded on the route recon overlay as an appropriate symbol. See APPENDIX N.

F= Conditions on Route (Regular, recurrent, and serious Snow; Flooding)

G= Length of Route. (In Meters or Feet); Enclose in parenthesis. Not part of the "Textbook" Route Classification Formula!

a. Example 1: 20Ft/Z/40/00 This formula describes a fair-weather route (Z) with a minimum traveled way with of 20ft and a military load classification of 40. The overhead clearance is (00) and there are no Obstructions to traffic flow. Base on Figure 14-2, this route can accommodate single flow for wheeled and tracked vehicles.

b. Example 2: 20Ft/Z/40/00 (OB) This formula describes a route similar to the one above, however there is an obstruction (OB). The obstruction could be a steep gradient, sharp curve or an overhead clearance less than 4.3 meters. Since the traveled-way width can support single flow wheeled and track vehicles, this route would not be capable of supporting double flow traffic, and thus be considered an obstruction.

c. Example 3: 7m/Y/50/4.6m (OB) This formula describes a limited all weather route (Y) with a minimum traveled-way width of 7 meters, a military load classification of 50, an overhead clearance of 4.6 meters, and an obstruction (OB). The route width is not suitable for double flow wheeled or track vehicles. This width constriction would be indicated (OB) in the route classification formula if the route was going to be used for double-flow traffic.

Example 4: 10.5m/X/120/00 (OB) (W). This formula describe an all-weather route (X) with a minimum traveled-way width of 10.E meters, which is suitable for double flow traffic for both wheeled and tracked vehicles, a military load classification of 120, unlimited overhead clearance, an obstruction (OB), and regular, recurrent flooding (V).

Limiting Characteristics	Criteria	Symbol
Sharp Curves	Curves with radii of 25m (82ft) or less; also an (OB)	c
Steep Gradients	gradients 7% or steeper; also an (OB)	g
Poor Drainage	Inadequate ditches, crown, or camber,	d

	culverts or ditches blocked, otherwise in poor condition.	
Weak Foundation	Unstable, loose, or easily displaced material	f
Rough Surface	Bumpy, rutted, or potholed to an extent to reduce convoy speed.	s
Excessive camber or superelevation	Falling away sharply as to cause heavy vehicles to slide or drag to shoulder.	j

2. **Road Classification Formula**:

lx(x?) 2/3 4 5 (6) (7)

a. Limiting Characteristics. This letter will be an A or B. B indicates the presence of limiting characteristics. Figure 14-4 above explains the criteria for limiting characteristics.

b. x= Signifies the appropriate symbol for limiting characteristics.

c. (?)= Represents an unknown characteristic. Used together with the limiting characteristic to which it refers.

d. 2/3= Minimum Width of Traveled Wav. Is expressed in meters followed by a slash and the total width of traveled way to include shoulders. If some type of median or fixed barrier separates the traveled way, the width of each traveled way is noted then the total traveled way. Example: 7 + 7 = 14.

e. Road Surface Material. Is expressed by a letter symbol. See Figure 14-3 above.

f. Road Length. Expressed in Kilometers (Km) and enclosed in parenthesis.

g. Obstructions. Expressed (OB) as in the Route Classification Formula. The same criteria also applies.

h. Route Conditions. Regular, recurrent, and serious. Snow (T); Flooding (V).

Note: All measurements in meters!

Example 1: A 5.0/6.2 k This formula describes a road with no limiting characteristics (A) or obstructions, a minimum

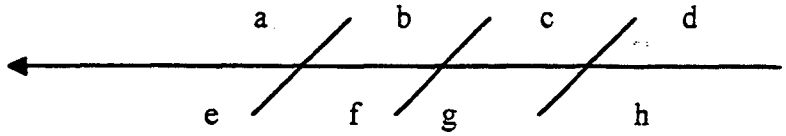
traveled way of 5.0 meters, a combined width of traveled and shoulders of 6.2 meters, and concrete surface (k).

Example 2: B G S 4/5 I (OB) This formula describes a road with limiting characteristics of steep gradients (g) and rough surface (s), minimum traveled way of 4 meters and a total w/shoulders 5, a gravel or lightly medalled surface (I), and an obstruction (OB).

Example 3: B c (f?) 3.2/4.8 p (4.3Km) (OB) (T) This formula describes a road with limiting characteristic of sharp curves (c) and unknown foundation (f?), minimum traveled way of 3.2 meters with a total traveled way w/shoulders 4.8 meters, paving brick or stone surface (p), 4.3 Kilometers long, with obstructions (OB), and subject to snow (V).

Example 4: A 7 + 7/20 k This formula describes a dual road with each traveled way 7 meters wide and with an overall width of 20 meters including shoulders and median. It is constructed with concrete (k) and has no limiting characteristics.

3. **Ford Symbol**.



a. The serial number of the Ford Site. Higher HQ will assign.

b. Type of Ford. V for Vehicle; P for Pedestrian; VP for both.

c. Stream Velocity. See APPENDIX N. A? will be used if unknown.

d. Seasonal Limitations. X - No seasonal limitations, except for sudden flooding of limited duration. Y - Seasonal limitation such as serious, recurrent, regular flooding or snow blockage. If the Y symbol is used her, then the route classification formula automatically becomes a Z.

e. Length of Ford. Reflected in meters.

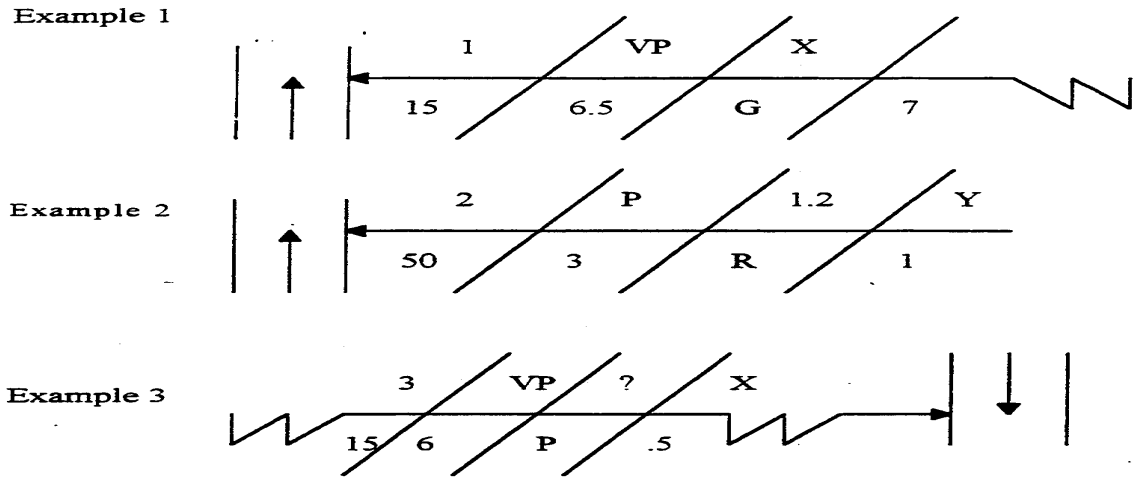
f. Width of the Ford. The approach/exit capabilities and bottom composition will determine the width of the ford.

Recorded in meters. This also affects your traveled way width possibilities.

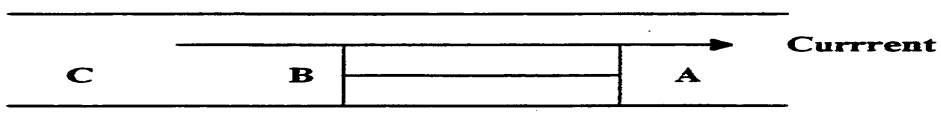
g. Bottom Composition. M - Mud, C - Clay, S - Sand, G - Gravel, R - Rock, P - Artificial Paving

Normal Depth. Measured in meters.

Note: The left and right are found by looking down stream. Current direction is important. An irregular line is placed on the corresponding end to represent a difficult approach.



Determining Stream Velocity



Measure distance AB
Through floating object into stream at C
Determine time required for object to float distance AB

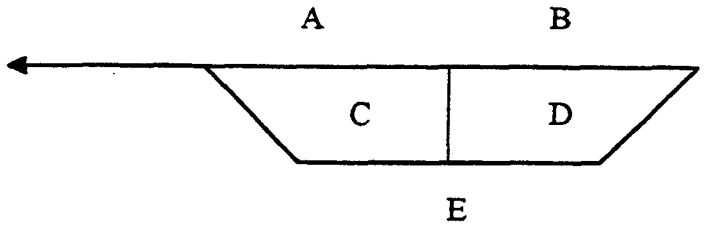
Velocity = AB (meters or feet)/Time to float AB (seconds)

Example 1: Ford # 1 is pedestrian and vehicular with a stream velocity of 1.5 meters per second, no seasonal limitations, 15 meters long, 6.5 meters wide, gravel bottom, .7 meters deep and a difficult approach on the right bank.

Example 2: Ford #2 is a pedestrian with a stream velocity of 1.2 meter per second, seasonal limitations, 50 meters long, 3 meters wide, rock bottom, and easy approaches.

Example 3: Ford #3 is a vehicular ford with stream velocity unknown, no seasonal limitation, 15 meters long, 6 meters wide, artificial paving, and difficult approaches on both sides.

4. **Ferry Symbol**.



a. A= The serial number of the Ford.

b. B= The Type of Ford V - Vehicle, P - Pedestrian

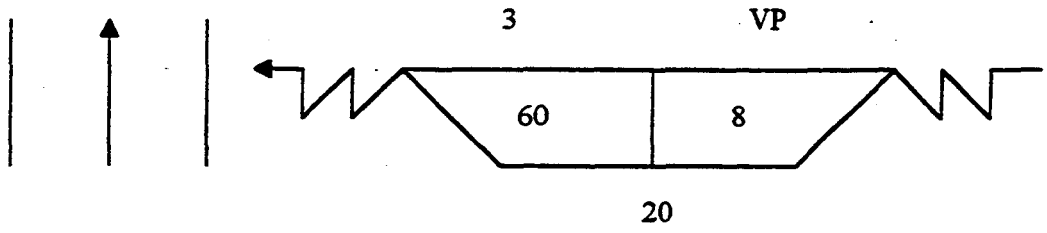
c. C= Military Load Classification of the Ferry Deck

d. D= The dead weight of the ferry in short tons

e. E= The turn-around time in minutes

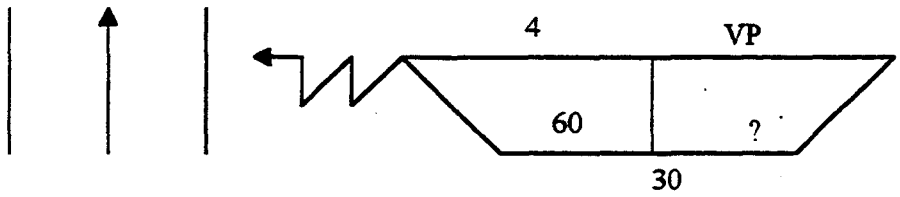
Note: The approach capability is indicated the same as the Ford Symbol.

Example 1



Example 1: Denotes Ferry #3 which is Vehicle and Pedestrian with a military load classification of 60, a dead weight capacity of 8 short tons, and a 20 minute turn-around. The approaches are difficult on both banks.

Example 2



Example 2: Denotes Ferry #4 which is Vehicle and Pedestrian with a military load class of 60, an unknown dead weight capacity, and a 30 minute turn-around time. The Approach is difficult on the right bank

a. Fords and Ferries Data.

(1) A QUESTION MARK ? will be used to annotate unknown information.

(2) Record date, time, and grid location.

(3) Military load classification and slope of approach and exit banks.

(4) Width of water obstacle.

(5) Maximum depth. Allow for tides. At no time will a vehicle be driven into the water to "Test" conditions or obtain measurements.

(6) Determine the stream bottom composition (clay, silt, gravel, etc.) in proportion and suitability.

(7) Estimate the current.

(a) Swift. More that 1.5 meters/second

(b) Moderate. 1 - 1.5 meters/second

(c) Slow. Less that 1 meter/second.

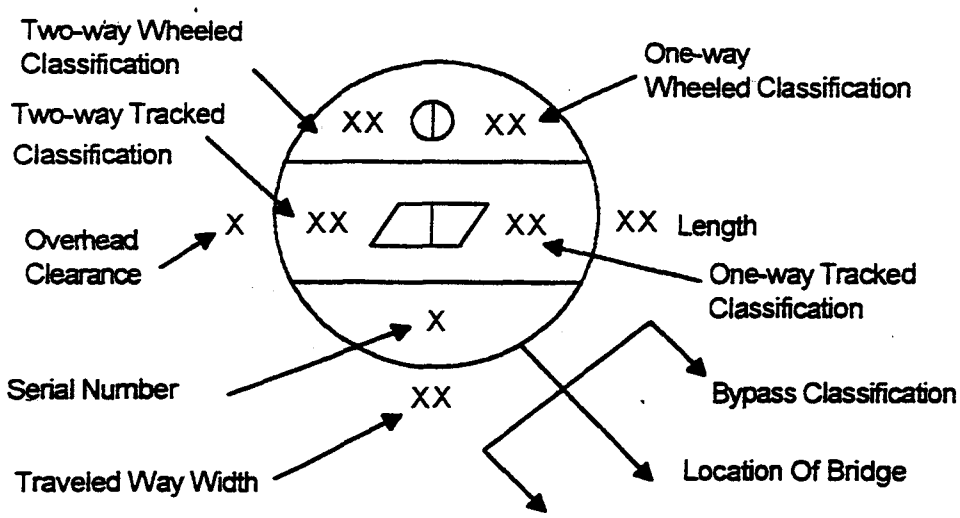
(8) The location of covered and concealed positions.

(9) Fords and ferries are considered obstructions (OB).

b. Radio a FORDREP or FERRYREP to the tactical CP, and record and report all other mission essential data on DA forms 1251 and 1252.

c. Assemble the data into a Ferry or Ford Classification Formula per instructions above.

5. **Bridge Symbol**.



a. Bridge Data. MP do not possess the technical expertise to conduct a detailed estimate of a bridges structural integrity and load capabilities. MP obtain the raw data for the engineers. The Engineer Recon Card will be used during the recon.

(1) A QUESTION MARK ? will be used to annotate unknown information.

(2) Record date, time, and grid location.

(3) Identify the type of bridge.

(4) Determine the load classification. Most bridges have a sign depicting max weights. If not, note the construction features.

(5) Determine single and double flow capabilities. This will be influenced by type of vehicle traffic and load classification.

(6) Physical condition of bridge.

(7) Minimum width of traveled way.

(8) Overhead Clearance.

(9) Estimate bypass capability. Is there an ability to Ford or Ferry?

(10) Other significant data.

(11) Damaged bridge locations can be rebuilt. Obtain structural information and extent of damage to aid engineers.

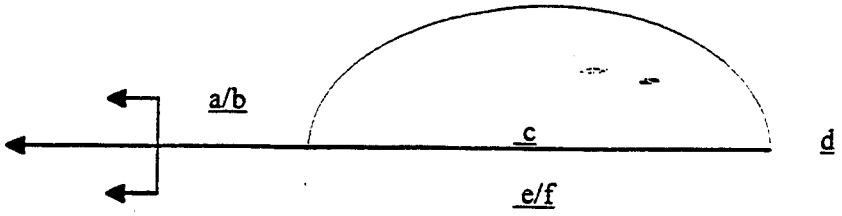
(12) Determine special traffic control measure required i.e., signs, vehicle/personnel holding areas, turn-around areas, defile requirements.

(13) Significant terrain features and other security relaxed issues.

b. Radio a BRIGREP to the tactical CP, and record all mission-required information on DA form 1249.

c. The Senior MP will assign each bridge a serial #.

6. **Tunnel Symbol**.



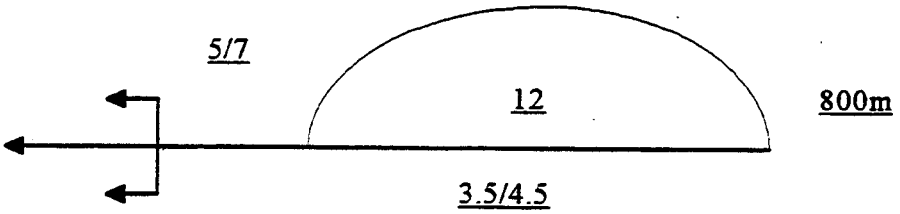
a. Minimum Overhead Clearance (meters).

b. Maximum Overhead Clearance (meters).

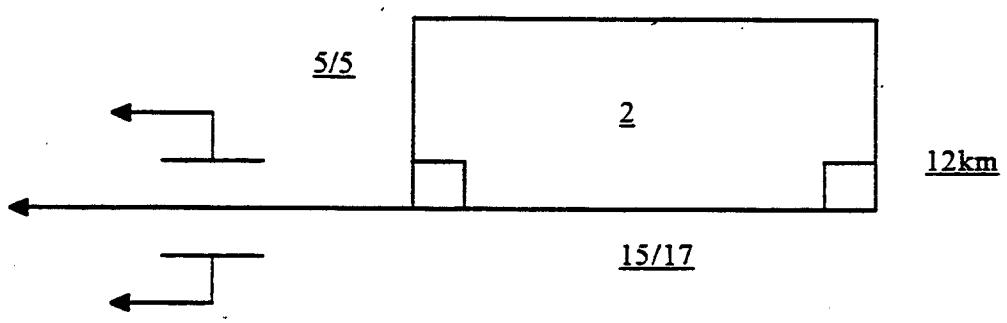
c. Serial Number of Tunnel

d. Total Length of Tunnel

e. Minimum traveled way width £ Total traveled way width including shoulders. Note: Difficulty of bypass is indicated on the arrow.



Example 1 denotes tunnel # 12 has a minimum overhead clearance of 5 meters and a maximum overhead clearance or 7 meters, a traveled way width of 3.5 meters total traveled way width is 4.5 meters. The tunnel is 800 meters long. The bypass is east.



Example 2 denotes Tunnel #2 has a 5 meters minimum/maximum overhead clearance with a 1.5 meter minimum traveled way width and a maximum traveled way width of 17 meters. The tunnel is 12 kilometers in length. The bypass capability is impossible.

7. Underpasses and Tunnel Data.

a. A QUESTION MARK ? will be used to annotate unknown information.

b. Record date, time, and grid location.

c. Type of Overpass/Tunnel

d. Length of Underpass/Tunnel.

e. Measure the width of the traveled way in meters by using the rope and plumb or measuring tape from sidewalk (or appropriate height on wall if sidewalk is trafficable) to sidewalk.

f. Measure the maximum overhead clearance and maximum clearance by dropping the rope and plumb from above the obstruction and taking the appropriate reading.

g. Structural condition.

h. Approach/Exit gradients.

i. Bypass capability.

j. Radio a TUNNELREP to the tactical CP, and record and report all other mission essential data on DA forms 1250.

k. Construct the appropriate map symbol.

Gathering Intelligence and Taking Measurements

1. Essential Elements of Information.

a. Check driving times and distances between easily recognized points.

b. Look for obstruction and restrictions (bridges, tunnels, steep grades, sharp curves, ferries, snow blockage, defiles, flooding, rock slides, battle damage etc.)

c. Note location and type of possible ambush sites on route.

d. Terrain from which the enemy could deliver direct or indirect fire to disrupt MSR traffic.

e. Identify natural defensive areas where MSR traffic could seek shelter from enemy ground or air forces.

f. Identify areas which restrict/blackout communication.

g. Locations of bridges and tunnels suitable for demolition.

h. Locations suitable for holding areas.

i. Locations suitable for enemy prisoner of war collection points, straggler control points, and displaced citizens control points.

j. Possible landing and drop zones. Soviet doctrine calls for company size or smaller units to use LZ/DZs up to 10 kilometers from their objective.

k. Recent weather effects i.e., snow, rain, and mud or rock slides.

l. Unreported damage or new blockages.

m. Uncontrolled traffic congestion i.e., refugee traffic or slow convoys.

n. Percent and length of steep grades having a slope of 7 percent or greater.

o. Curves having a radius of 45 (82.5 ft) degrees or less.

p. Military load classifications and limiting dimensions of bridges. Include bypass category.

q. Location and limiting data on ferries, fords, and tunnels. Include bypass category.

r. Width restrictions (like underpasses) below minimum standards. Include the distance of restriction.

s. Areas suitable for short halts or bivouac sites that offer easy access to and from the MSR.

t. Rock fall and slide areas that may present a traffic hazard.

u. Overhead clearance of less the 4.3 meters.

v. Civilian or military road numbers or other designators.

w. Other obstructions to traffic.

2. Measurements.

a. Identification and location of the reconnoitered route.

(1) When possible, the route should begin and end on easily identifiable terrain features.

(2) Mark the route on the map with a beginning and ending grid.

(3) Confirm the route on the patrol by observing route signs and taking resection measurements from easily recognizable terrain features. If GPS is available, it should be used to maintain accurate location throughout the patrol.

(4) Take mileage readings at starting and ending grids, ensuring to account for any off-route or non-linear travel.

b. Distances between easily recognizable points both on the ground and map.

(1) Take mileage counts between known points.

(2) Take resection or intersection azimuth readings from known points on the route to off-route map features.

Percent of Slope

1. Determining the percent of slope and length of grades (7% or greater is an OB).

a. Slope is the ratio of the change in elevation over distance.

b. The clinometer is used to measure the percent of slope.

c. Line of sight and pace method.

(1) With head and eyes level, a Marine stands at the bottom of the slope.

(2) The Marine sights an easily identifiable spot, approximately eye level, on the slope and fixates on the spot.

(3) The Marine walks to the spot and records the number of paces taken.

(4) This procedure is repeated until the top of the slope is reached.

(5) The Marines pace count determines the length of the slope.

(6) The following formula is used to determine the percent of slope:

Vertical Distance (V)= Number of Spots Measured x 1.75 (avg. height of man in meters)
Horizontal Distance (Fn = Number of Total paces x .75.
Formula: Percent of Slope = V/H z 100 .
Example: # Spots: 12; # Paces 300
(12 x 1.75)/(300 x .75) x 100 = %Slope
(21)/(225) x 100 = 8.8% Slope

Curve Radius

1. Determining the radius of road curvature ((R)of 25 meters (82 5 feet) and less is an (OB)).

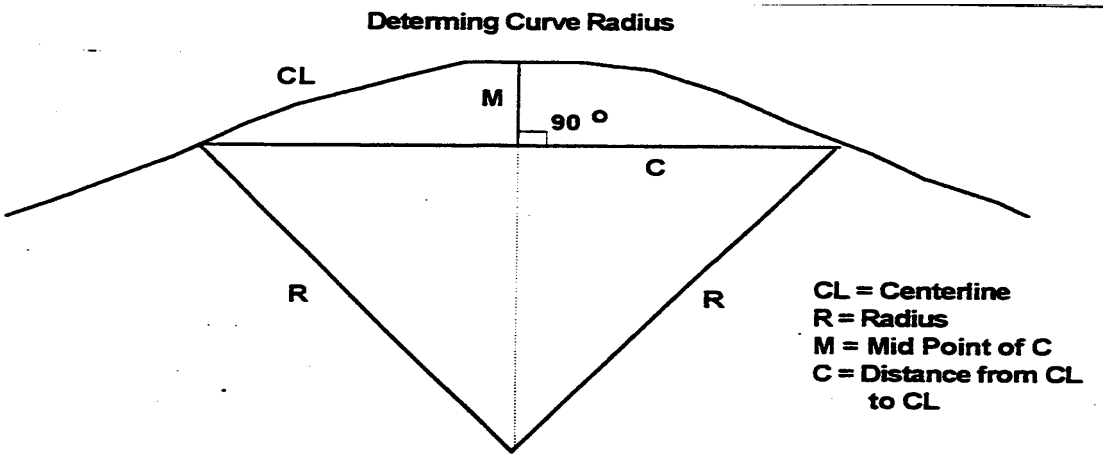
a. Measure from the centerline (CL) of the road to the centerline of the road at the extremities of the curve (C) using a measuring tape, pace count, or a rope and plumb line.

b. Measure perpendicular distance from the center of tape to the centerline of road (M).

c. Use the following formula to determine the radius of curvature:

Formula: R = C^2 + M
8m 2

Example: C = 15m M = 2
R = 15^2 + 2 R= 15m
16 2



(1) Short Halts and Bivouacs Areas.

(a) Record date, time, and grid location.

(b) During map reconnaissance, locate potential sites.

(c) Provides drive off facilities, adequate cover and concealment, and dispersion.

(d) During patrol, drive off road and inspect site on foot for suitability. If possible, drive around entire site to observe from all sides.

Route Reconnaissance Overlay.

1. Route Reconnaissance Overlays will include: See APPENDIX N.

a. Two sets of grid reference points.

b. A North-seeking arrow.

c. Overall classification of the overlay will be placed centered in the top and bottom margins.

d. Reference box containing the following information:

(1) Name, Rank.

(2) SSN.

(3) Unit.

(4) Date Time Group expressed e.g., Day Time(Local) Month Year / 12 1930L May 01.

(5) Map Name; Edition, Scale.

(6) Key: Depicting special symbology.

(7) Route Formulae for all MSRs (axial and lateral)

(8) Remarks to include all pertinent data on critical points and known, suspected or likely enemy positions.

e. All EEI and route data recorded on the patrol.

APPENDIX:
N - Patrolling and Tips

OBSTACLE AND BARRIER OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for the employment of obstacles and barriers, not mines.

2. General. Effective use of obstacles and barriers complement and enhance the overall effectiveness of unit defensive measures. Properly employed obstacle and barriers delay and disrupt the enemy's advance. Obstacles and barriers

make it hard for the enemy to move in some areas or diverts them into others. Furthermore, it becomes easier to engage the enemy as he slows to negotiate the obstacle/barrier.

3. Assumptions.

a. MPs will be responsible for constructing a majority of their own obstacles and barriers.

b. The Senior MP will coordinate with the senior engineer concerning the employment of on-call obstacles.

c. Engineer and/or heavy haul support will be available for technical support and to assist in the construction of a large, complicated obstacle/ barrier plan, and to position large obstacles.

d. MPs may provide physical security guidance concerning the employment of obstacles and barriers for other units as requested.

e. The senior MP will be responsible for coordinating with local / host national police and government agencies before obstacles and barrier are employed that disrupt civilian roadways. The tactical situation and local SOFA treaties will influence how and where obstacles / barriers may be employed.

f. The MAGTF commander will establish guidance concerning the employment of vehicle and personnel mines.

Employment

1. Procedure.

a. The degree in which obstacles and barriers are employed in the defense will depend on the location of the defensive position.

b. All tactical traffic control measures i.e., TCPs, check points, roadblocks, and defiles will employ obstacles and barriers to support their defensive position.

2. The senior MP will.

a. Through the MAGTF commander, authorize the type/use of obstacles and barriers.

b. Coordinate the use of all obstacle and barrier affecting civilian roadways with local/host nation law enforcement and appropriate transportation/civilian engineering agencies.

c. Ensure the type and location of obstacles and barriers are depicted on the traffic control plan.

d. Coordinate, through the CSSOC/RAOC, engineer and heavy haul/lift support.

3. Platoon Sergeant will.

a. Determine the availability of obstacle material and develop an obstacle/barrier plan.

b. Provide the senior MP an overlay depicting the location and type of obstacle.

c. Ensure unit security is established while obstacles and barriers are being constructed.

d. Ensure the obstacle and barrier plan supports the employment of available weapon systems.

4. Entrances to Port facilities and unit positions-

a. Establish an obstacle plan that prevents vehicles from approaching the entry point at a high rate of speed. An "S" pattern will be employed using steel or concrete obstacles. The spacing of these obstacles will be determined by the type/size of vehicles using the entry point.

b. Make the obstacle difficult to bypass by tying it in with existing features.

c. Cover the obstacle and avenue of approach with an automatic weapon system.

d. Ensure the weapon system can safely engage a vehicle should the entry be penetrated.

e. The obstacle and barrier plan should trap the vehicle while the MP is verifying driver/passenger(s) identity and searching the vehicle.

f. A board or plywood panel with spikes should be readily available to employ in the roadway.

5. Obstacle/Barriers blocking roadways should-

a. Be visible to vehicle operators at night i.e., mark with chemical lights or reflective tape.

b. Be positioned to allow vehicle operators to safely turn around.

c. Should be easily moved when used in conjunction with a TCP or checkpoint.

d. The use of pyrotechnic, i.e. trip flare, as an early warning device is encouraged when such devices are authorized.

6. Safety Measures.

a. No horseplay around barbwire entanglements.

b. Keep away from face.

c. Wear leather gloves or wire gauntlets.

d. Hold wire palms down.

e. Work as a team.

f. Work facing the enemy and from the enemy to the friendly side.

g. Careful consideration should be given when employing obstacles and barriers in roadways to ensure friendly vehicles are not damaged.

h. Personnel departing/entering friendly lines will request permission via the tactical CP, and be guided through the barrier plan.

APPENDIX:
O - Examples of Obstacles and Barriers.

NBC OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for operating in a nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) environment.

Procedures

1. MOPP Analysis Questions:

a. What is the mission?

b. What is the work rate? See APPENDIX P.

c. How long will the work take?

d. Is the unit targeted?

e. What is the warning time?

f. What is the weather?

g. What additional protection is available?

h. Is it day or night?

Route Reconnaissance/Routine Patrol.

1. MP teams moving about the battlefield will possess the capability to detect and react to an NBC environment.

2. Each MP Team vehicle will be possess an ABC-Ml 1, (2) M256 kits, (1) M13 and M258 kit per MP.

3. Survey the Area for.

a. Dead animals.

b. Dead Persons with no signs of obvious causes of death.

c. Signs of exposure in fellow Marines.

4. Upon encountering a suspected NBC environment:

a. Immediately go to MOPP 4.

b. Transmit the NBC 1 report, found in section 21.

c. Attempt to determine the type of agent using the M256 kit and/or bio sampling kit.

d. If type of agent is determined, report line G of NBC 1 report.

e. Mark the area with the NATO marking kit. See APPENDIX P.

f. Establish a manned or unmanned roadblock preventing access to the contaminated area.

(1) Place the road block upwind and out of the contaminated area in a location to allow vehicles to turn around.

(2) Clearly mark the roadblock with reflective material.

(3) Transmit the location of the roadblock to the RAOC/CSSOC via MP tactical CP.

g. Conduct a route reconnaissance to determine an alternate route around the affected area.

h. Employ traffic control measures to reroute traffic.

Conducting a Survey.

1. Using the M256 Detector Kit.

a. When conducting the test, hold the sampler detector so the wind is blowing toward you. Also, hold the sampler upwind to avoid vapors from the protective equipment.

b. Open the kit and remove one sampler-detector. Before Starting, check the kit and the sampler-detector discard date. Carefully read and follow the instructions.

c. Open the protective bag by tearing along the tear line marked with arrows. Carefully remove the sampler detector. The protective bag should be retained for easy reference to the numbered instructions.

d. Handle the sampler carefully. Hold it by the hinged protective strip in the closed position. Do Not Touch the sampler-detector agent test spots because incorrect test results could be produced. Leave the protective strip in a closed position until step 10 is completed.

Caution: The hinged heater assembly (number 4 on the sampler detector) produces hot vapors and is hot to the touch. Protective masks and gloves should be worn *when* handling *the sampler-detector*. Keep away from your face and bare skin.

e. Swing the hinged heater assembly away from the square shaped test spot.

f. Pull-off and discard the pull tab (number 1) to expose the Iewisite detecting tablet. Rub *the white* paper side of the lewisite tablet by rubbing tab (number 2) on the lewisite detecting tablet. Repeat this rubbing until a mark is visible.

g. Holding the sampler-detector in the vertical position with the number ampoules facing you, finger-crush the four reagent ampoules in the center (number 3). Force the liquid through the formed channels to the test spots to insure wetting.

h. Holding the sampler-detector horizontally, check to make sure that the hinged protective strip is over the test spot. Also make sure the hinged heater assembly is away from the square shaped test spot.

i. Finger-crush one of the two green ampoules (number 4). Immediately swing the hinged heater assembly over the square shaped test spot. Venting any resulting vapor away from your body, leave the heater assembly in place for two minutes. After two minutes have elapsed, swing the hinged heater assembly and protective strip away from the test spots.

j. Holding the sampler-detector by the protective strip, expose the test spot to the air (while shielding them from direct sunlight) for ten minutes.

k. After ten minutes, finger-crush the second green ampoule (number 4) and swing the heater assembly over the test spot, venting the vapors away from the body. Leave the heater assembly in place for one minute. After one minute, remove *the heater* assembly from the test spot.

l. Hold the sampler-detector vertically with the test spot down. Finger-crush the remaining two ampoules (number 5). Force the liquid through the channels to the test spots to insure wetting. Re-rub the lewisite detecting tablet with the lewisite rubbing tab. Immediately turn the sampler-detector over to determine by observation, safe/danger color comparisons. Using those shown on the M256 instruction cards can also make Safe/danger observation comparisons.

Note: Immediately after the required exposure time, compare the blood agent and lewisite test to your safe/danger observations. Blister ages (H and CX) develop color immediately after all the ampoules have been broken; comparison of nerve agents require a two minute waiting period.

At low concentrations, only a slight change in the lewisite rubbing tablet may be evident. Compare the first rubbing mark with the second before making a judgment. However, yellow and orange colors may occur on the blood agent indicator paper when there are no agents present. A blue or pink color must be present for a positive test

2. Using M8 Paper. Used when the suspected substance is in liquid form (puddles, small drops, or barely visible droplets). There is a sheet of M8 paper in the M256 detection kit.

a. Remove the book of M8 paper from the kit and its protective bag.

b. Tear out a sheet from the book. If perforated, use half a sheet.

c. Blot, do not rub. the M* paper on the suspected liquid agent. Observe for any color change.

d. Compare the color change with the typical colors shown on the inside of the book. Some decontaminates give false positive tests on the M8 paper. The M8 paper 'may indicate positive results for as area in which decontamination have been used. Confirm these tests with vapor tests by using the M256 kit.

3. Testing Vapor with the M256 Mt. Use one box and/or can and a sampler-detector for blood ages, and a separate box and/or can and sampler-detector for nerve, blister, and lewisite agents. These tests can be run at the same time providing separate boxes and/or cans and sampler detectors are used.

a. Blood Agent Test.

(1) Obtain a box or can, and place it open end down over the suspected liquid agent. This will allow the vapors to concentrate in a small area.

(2) Remove the sampler-detector from the kit.

(3) Open carefully and remove the sampler-detector from the protective bag.

(4) Hold the sampler-detector by *the hinged* protective strip in a closed position. Keep the hinged protective strip in a closed position to protect the test spots.

(5) Finger-crush only the two ampoules in the center pocket (number 3). There are outer ampoules marked 3; do not crush these.

(6) Rotate the sampler-detector holding the spots down. Force the liquid from the ampoules through the formed channels into the blood agent test spots to insure wetting.

(7) Swing the hinged heater assembly and hinged protective strip away from the test spots. Discard the two loose protective strips of paper under the hinged heater assembly. Swing the hinged heater assembly back over the test spot.

(8) Place the sampler-detector under the box or can. Expose the spot for ten minutes. Remove the ampler-detector after ten minutes.

(9) Turn the sampler-detector over and determine safe/danger conditions.

b. Nerve, Blister, and Lewisite Test.

(1) Obtain a box or can, and place it open end down over the suspected liquid agent. This will allow the vapors to concentrate in a small area.

(2) Remove the sampler-detector from the kit.

(3) Open carefully and remove the sampler-detector from the protective bag while holding the sampler-detector by the hinged protective strip in a closed position. Keep the

hinged protective strip in a closed position to protect the test spots.

(4) Discard the tab (number 1) to expose the lewisite detecting tablet.

(5) Rub the top half of the white paper side of the lewisite tablet-rubbing tab (number 2) on the lewisite-detecting tablet. Repeat rubbing until a mark is visible.

(6) Hold the sampler-detector in the vertical position so that the ampoules are pointed down.

(7) Finger-crush the two outer reagent ampoules (number 3). Do not crush the two ampoules in the center pocket (number 3).

(8) Rotate the sampler-detector until the test spots are in the down position. Force the liquid from the two outer ampler through the formed channels to the blister agent test spots and the nerve agent test spot to insure wetting.

(9) Check to ensure the hinged protective strip is over the test spots. Hold the sampler-detector horizontally with your left thumb over the center test spot. Swing the heater assembly away from the test spot. Discard the two loose protective strips of paper under the hinged heater assembly.

(10) Finger-crush one of the two green ampoules (number 4). Immediately swing the hinged heater assembly over the test spot. Vent the vapors away from your body. Leave the hinged heater assembly in place for two minutes..

(11) After two minutes, swing the hinged heater assembly and the hinged protective strips away from the test spats.

(12) Place the sampler-detector with the instructions side facing up under *the box/can* for ten minutes. After ten minutes remove.

(13) Holding the sampler-detector by the hinged protective strip, finger-crush the second green ampoule (number 4). Swing the hinged heater assembly over the test spot. Vent the vapors away from the body, and leave the hinged heater assembly in place for one minute.

(14) Swing the hinged heater assembly away from the test spot after one minute.

(15) Hold the sampler-detector test spots down.

(16) Finger-crush the remaining two outside ampoules (number 5). Force *the* liquid down the formed channels to the blister and nerve agent test spots.

(17) Re-rub the lewisite tablet running tab (number 2) on the lewisite-detecting tablet next to the first rub mark. Immediately observe for color differences between the two marks.

(18) Turn the sampler-detector over to observe the safe/danger conditions.

Assumptions.

1. Enemy forces will not employ nuclear weapons as a first choice weapon.

2. Enemy forces can employ chemical/biological weapons.

3. The chemical protective equipment will provide sufficient protection to allow combat operations to continue during a chemical attack.

4. Tactical MP Command Post.

a. Coordinate with higher headquarters to determine current enemy NBC threat and MOPP condition.

b. Brief subordinate leaders concerning the present NBC threat/condition prior to assuming duty.

c. Prepare contingency plans for the evacuation of subordinate units in the event of NBC attack.

d. As required, coordinate with higher headquarters to determine the location for treatment of contaminated personnel.

e. Direct the inspection of contaminated food, water, and equipment.

f. Designate personnel to perform equipment/personnel decontamination.

g. Relay all NBC reports to higher headquarters.

h. Prevent access into contaminated areas by re-routing vehicle/pedestrian traffic.

5. Subordinate Leaders.

a. Be familiar with APPENDIX P of this SOP when supervising work when MOPP gear is worn.

b. Ensure personnel are correctly wearing the appropriate protective gear for the designated MOPP level.

c. Ensure personnel are familiar with NBC procedures.

6. Administration and Logistics.

a. Supply. Supplies contaminated by NBC weapons will be separated and suspended from use until decontaminated or disposition is made.

b. Evacuation.

(1) Personnel. All NBC casualties will be evacuated separately from non-contaminated personnel.

(2) Material. Normally, contaminated material will be separated from non-contaminated material until decontamination is complete.

c. Reports. All reports will be in accordance with Section 21.

(1) Command and Signal.

(2) Command. In accordance with specific operation order.

d. Signal. NBC reports will be transmitted over the primary net to higher headquarters.

e. NBC Alarms.

(1) General Alarm. An NBC general alarm will normally be transmitted over radio nets. The Alarm "GAS" will not be transmitted over radio nets.

(2) Local Alarm. The primary alarm will be the siren. The vocal alarm will be "GAS" or "Spray". Alternate alarms are hand and arm and metal on metal. Vehicle horns will not be used.

(3) "All Clear". "All Clear" will not be passed over the radio net. "All Clear" will be verbally sounded. The audible sound will be a continuous blast for one minute on a vehicle horn. Personnel unmasking is not an "All Clear" signal.

(4) NBC 1 reports will be sent "FLASH" precedence.

APPENDIX:

P - NBC OPERATIONAL PLANNING

MARITIME PREPOSITIONING FORCE OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Procedure. To publish standard operating procedures for MP support of a MPS off-load.

2. General. Military Police support during an MPF operation involves a creative mixture of all MP capabilities. The focus of effort is to support the CSS commander's mission during the off-load and throughput of maritime pre-positioned equipment and supplies (MPE/S). MP support the CSS commander by providing traffic circulation control, area security, law and order, and possibly, EPW/CI operations.

3. Assumptions.

a. The size of the MP detachment directly correlates to the degree of supportability.

b. The senior MP will be included in all stages of planning, and be a member of the advance party.

c. Initially, MP's will fall under the operational control of the LFSP commander. The LFSP will maintain control of CSS operations until the CSS commander assumes control of CSS operations ashore.

Tactical Employment

1. CSS Concept of Operations.

a. Off-load/through-put. An MPF off-load involves the timely off-load and distribution of MPE/S. Once a port or beach area has been secured, the MPS elements will arrive in-theater and marry-up with personnel strategically airlifted in place to conduct the off-load and throughput. Ships are then off-loaded pier-side or in-stream. A pier operation group (POG) is established to handle pier-side off-load operations, and a beach operation group (BOG) is established for in-stream off-load operations. MPE/S is off-loaded and a bar code located on the MPE/S is scanned at the BOG/POG for accountability. The MPE/S is moved to the MCC, scanned again, and placed in serials for distribution to the appropriate AAOE. The MCC will control the rate of distribution. Each AAOE will scan MPE/S as it arrives, verifying receipt. The AAOE is responsible for the final distribution of the MPE/S to the owning unit.

b. Regeneration. When the operation ashore is complete, MPE/S must be back-loaded. The process operates in reverse fashion. Each AAOE receives the MPE/S from the owning unit. The AAOE then accounts for all equipment and prepares it for back-load. Before MPE/S is placed back on the ships, it must under go an agricultural wash-down inspection. This is usually done between the AAOE and the MCC. Working with the POG/BOG, the MCC feeds MPE/S in priority sequence.

2. MP Concept of Operation. The senior MP, or designated representative, will deploy with the advance party to conduct initial reconnaissance, determine the CP location, and conduct initial liaison with local law enforcement agencies. Upon arrival of the main body, the priority of work will be to:

a. Recover and account for all embarked gear and personnel.

b. Provide initial area security. The tactical situation will dictate the degree of security required.

c. Assist the headquarters commandant to establish critical facilities, i.e. CSSOC/RAOC.

d. Establish the MP CP in accordance with Section 5 (Tactical CP Operations).

e. Conduct liaison with local security/law enforcement to begin joint operations.

f. Establish a traffic control plan and validate it through route reconnaissance validating primary and alternate MSR's.

g. Conduct route signing in accordance with Section 1 (Maneuver and Mobility Support Operations).

h. Employ traffic control measures to accommodate off-load and throughput. See Section 1.

i. Establish a traffic control plan to facilitate the wash-down/retrograde of MPE.

3. Procedure.

a. The Senior MP will:

(1) Provide the CSS commander with a written MP estimate of supportability based on stated and implied missions per Section 21 (Reports).

(2) Prepare a site survey checklist per Section 21.

(3) Task organize an MP detachment capable of:

(a) Conducting BCC.

(b) Providing area security.

(c) On order, establishing EPW/CI operations.

(d) Provide basic law and order.

(4) Complete an MP operations order.

(5) Complete a traffic circulation plan and a traffic control plan. This plan establishes traffic flow from the Port Operations Group (POG) or Beach Operation Group, through the MCC, to each of the MAGTF AAOE's. Identify MSR's leading out of the AAOE's to support the commander scheme of maneuver. Planning should be coordinated with the CSSE commander and movement control officer.

(6) Establish and operate a tactical command post per Section 5.

(7) Coordinate all security/law enforcement activities. Liaison will be made with other military and civilian law enforcement agencies operating in the area of operation. An effort will be made to consolidate security and law enforcement capabilities. Where operationally feasible, MP will operate in a joint environment.

(8) Coordinate security activity with Fleet Anti-terrorism Security Teams (FAST), which maybe assigned to the MPS ships.

(9) Assign patrol zones, static posts, and coordinate mounted and dismounted patrol activities.

(10) Identify an EPW/CI holding location away from the CSS area.

b. TCPs will operate per Section 1.

c. Dismounted patrols will be conducted in and around unit AAOE's and tactically important areas. The patrol leader will:

(1) Conduct the patrol in accordance with Section 14 (Patrolling).

(2) Coordinate patrol activity with the CSSOC/RAOC, via the desk sergeant.

(3) Make contact with the AAOE operations center watch officer/SNCO, inform that person on the status of the patrol, and obtain a name. The name will be transmitted back to the desk sergeant, and recorded in the desk journal.

4. Administration.

a. Rule of Engagement (ROE)/Use of Force will be in accordance with Section 11 (ROE/Use of Force), and the specific ROE published by higher headquarters.

b. Incident Complaint Reports and issuance of tickets will be per Section 4 (Law & Order Ops).

CONVOY PROCEDURES

Introduction

1. Purpose. To provide standard operating procedures for convoy operations.

2. General. All military police convoy operations are conducted by following certain convoy procedures. These procedures ensure missions are accomplished safely and securely.

Procedures

1. Convoy Commander.

a. Receive warning order and initiate planning.

b. Analyze the mission and available information to identify specific tasks with respect to KOCOA and METT-TSL.

c. Review essential elements of friendly information and initiate immediate measures to reduce OPSEC indicators.

d. Request available intelligence and combat information on the enemy, area of operations and weather.

e. Request maps, aerial imagery and other special topographic products if not already processed.

f. Conduct a detailed terrain analysis to identify routes, if possible conduct a leader's recon.

g. Determine the march order.

h. Plan a route in based on intelligence and reconnaissance; ensuring the entire route meets the military load classification requirements of the convoy.

i. Compute march data to determine rate of march/time/ distance. See table below.

(1) Rate = Distance / Time (e.g. R = 100/4, 25 km/hr to move 100 km in four hours)

(2) Time = Distance / Rate (e.g. T = 75 / 15 5 hours to drive 75 km at 15 km/hr)

(3) Distance = Rate X Time (e.g. D = 25km/hr X 100km=25km/hr X 4)

j. Incorporate required medical support into each convoy; plan medevac procedures.

k. Request engineer support as required.

l. Develop a plan for vehicle recovery.

m. Designate control measures such as phase lines, checkpoints and holding areas.

n. Task organize combat elements according to the specific mission.

o. Conduct a convoy brief.

p. During movement the convoy commander positions himself where he can best control the convoy.

q. Make continual estimates of the situation, altering the route as necessary.

r. Coordinate supporting arms through direct communication with the forward observer.

2. Assistant Convoy Commander. Will assist the convoy commander with all planning and organization, assuming command in his absence.

3. Security Element Commander.

a. Plan the security section of the convoy brief.

b. Organize and train the security team.

(1) Conduct detailed rehearsals for reaction to near and far ambushes, breach and other tactical contingencies.

(2) Ensure all convoy personnel understand their role in any tactical situation.

(3) Train the breach team and incorporate their rehearsals into the convoy security rehearsals.

c. Advise the convoy commander on convoy security.

d. Lead the Security Element in tactical situations.

4. Vehicle Commanders.

a. Ensure vehicle driver follows the correct route.

b. Command troops riding in the vehicle in tactical situations with the direction of the security element commander.

c. Ensure each Marine in the vehicle has all required gear.

d. Ensure vehicle drivers/A-drivers conduct pre-inspections and prepare vehicles for convoy movement.

5. Drivers.

a. Follow correct routes.

b. Be on the lookout for ambush sites.

c. Conduct first echelon maintenance and servicing enroute in accordance with APPENDIX Q.

d. Ensure proper use and maintenance of the vehicle.

Weapons and Security Employment

Immediate Action

1. General. Weapons placement is a vital part of the convoy security plan. Proper weapons employment will enable the convoy to respond quickly to various tactical situations.

2. Head. M2, .50 Cal machine gun mounted in the turret. The lead vehicle is responsible for security to the front of the convoy. The lead vehicle should maintain a sizable (500m to 1.5 km) buffer between itself and the main body, giving the convoy commander time to react or change routes as required by enemy action.

3. Main Body. The main body vehicles, to include any 5 tons/LVSs, should mount a mix of weapons (M2's, M240G's, M249's) enabling a flexible response from the column.

4. Trail Vehicles. The trail vehicle, responsible for rear security of the convoy, should mount a Mk-19 for covering dead-space and area targets.

5. Security Element. The bulk of the security element not mounted on HMMWVs should be positioned in the column where they can best respond to threats to any convoy element.

Movements

1. Day Movement.

a. Drivers will drive at the prescribed rate of march.

b. Maintain a minimum of 100 meters distance between vehicles, dependent upon visibility and terrain.

c. Use lights on all hardball surfaces and major roadways during administrative movements.

d. See APPENDIX Q for further instructions.

2. Night Movement.

a. A-drivers will utilize AN/PVS-7b NVGs to assist the driver.

b. Maintain dispersion of 10 meters between vehicles unless NVGs or ambient illumination are available.

c. Use familiar roads when possible.

d. Minimum march rate of 5 mph.

(1) 5 MpH without NVGs.

(2) 40 MpH with NVGs on hard surface road.

(3) 20 MpH with NVGs on unimproved road according to conditions.

e. Use blackout lights past the line of light.

f. Use lights during administrative movements.

g. A ground guide will be used when entering unit positions.

3. Control of vehicle movement.

a. A checkpoint system will be established to report the location of the convoy along the route. This system facilitates monitoring the progress and security of the convoy.

b. Prior planning is needed to control the movement of routine administrative vehicles. Precautions should include the use of escorts, alternate routes and staggered departure times.

4. Communications.

a. Multiple radios spaced at intervals throughout the column should be available whenever possible.

b. Each radio operator must recognize that his primary job is to give the alert in the event of ambush. Alternate radio operators will be designated in case the primary operator becomes a casualty.

c. Radio, the primary means of communications, should be augmented with preplanned smoke, noise and visual signals.

5. Halts (Scheduled and Unscheduled). Convoys should not halt without planning and coordination. Only scheduled halts should be conducted if possible and unscheduled halts should be strictly regulated.

a. Scheduled Halts. Will be planned with consideration to:

(1) An area large enough to accommodate the convoy and to allow for the same dispersion provided by the march interval.

(2) Cover and concealment to the extent available.

(3) Security, to include:

(a) Air guards.

(b) Flank, forward, and rear area security.

(c) Forward and rear point security of the route.

(d) Alert condition prescribed by convoy commander for duration of halt.

(e) Appropriate defensive measures for all hands.

(4) Activities at the halt should include:

(a) Accounting and reorganizing

(a) First echelon maintenance i.e. fuel, oil, water, tires etc.

(c) Relief or rotation of drivers.

b. Unscheduled Halts.

(1) Lead element reports road restrictions to convoy commander.

(2) Column stops, maintaining vehicle interval and dispersion.

(3) Report obstacles to higher HQ and that convoy has stopped.

(4) Report continuation of mission to higher HQ.

(5) Schedule is adjusted as necessary.

6. Disabled Vehicles.

a. When a vehicle is disabled during the movement it will not be allowed to halt the progress of the remainder of the convoy. Operators will be instructed to pull off the roadway and to signal all following vehicles forward.

b. Towing by wrecker is avoided unless, because of the type of failure and/or operational conditions, a tow bar would be unsafe or not capable of towing the vehicle.

c. The trail officer notifies the convoy commander of all disabled vehicles and advises him of his ability to affect timely repair/recovery. In combat, the decision to destroy vehicles or cargo that cannot be towed or recovered is made by the convoy commander.

d. When time is available, the vehicle crew and trail personnel should remove critical cargo or parts from any vehicle that is to be destroyed.

Immediate Action

1. General. When conducting motor transport convoy operations in a hostile environment, no operational area can be considered to be totally secure. Precautionary measures must always be taken into account during the planning, preparation and conduct of movements. See APPENDIX Q.

2. Passive security measures. The following steps are taken to minimize the effects of any attack:

a. Keep the maximum dispersion that conditions allow.

b. Spread key vehicles throughout the convoy.

c. Harden and camouflage vehicles.

d. Wear body armor and helmet.

3. Reaction to Ambush

a. Unblocked:

(1) Never halt in the kill zone. All vehicles will rapidly drive out of the kill zone to continue on with the mission. The convoy commander will get casualty/ammunition reports from the vehicle commanders and report to the CP.

(2) The enemy is seldom able to contain an entire convoy in a single kill zone. More frequently, only a part of the convoy, the head, trail or a section of the main body is ambushed. This will allow non-engaged (or less engaged) units to react to the ambush by firing at the rapid rate until the unit in the kill zone is clear.

(3) The security element leader will lead the security element and assume control of the convoy during any tactical situation.

b. Blocked:

(1) All units return fire at the rapid rate.

(2) Security element establishes flank security around any obstacles to enable the breach team to move forward.

(3) Breach-team moves forward to clear the obstacle.

(4) Simultaneously, security element can maneuver to attack the ambushing enemy force, taking extreme caution to avoid being caught in a second ambush. The focus of effort should be on clearing the obstacle and continuing the mission.

(5) If the head (recon element) becomes decisively engaged, the security element must assist that element with extraction.

c. Fire and support. A convoy commander has several different assets available to destroy the enemy.

(1) DS/GS mortars or artillery.

(2) Close Air Support (CAS) or Rotary Wing Close Air Support (RW-CAS).

(3) Reaction forces.

(4) Non-driving personnel can be utilized to place a heavy volume of fire on the enemy forces as vehicles move out of the kill zone.

d. Subsequent actions.

(1) Disabled vehicles must be bypassed or pushed out of the way. Follow-on vehicles will pick up occupants of these vehicles.

(2) HMMWVs must not block convoy vehicles by halting in the traveled portion of the road to return fire.

(3) As soon as the enemy has withdrawn, been defeated or the vehicles have made it out of the kill zone the convoy commander will call a temporary halt and reorganize his assets.

(4) Wounded are treated and arrangements are made for evacuation if necessary.

(5) If disabled vehicles cannot be repaired for travel, their cargo should be redistributed if time is available.

(6) If necessary, disabled vehicles are destroyed after removing as many recoverable items as possible. The

convoy commander will make all decisions concerning the destruction of vehicles.

(7) A detailed report is made to higher headquarters.

(8) Full accountability for Marines, equipment and vehicles is established.

(9) Mission is continued.

3. Air defense.

a. Designate one (1) vehicle for aerial lookout.

b. Give alarm before attack.

c. Pull off the road in a herringbone formation to avoid presenting a linear target to attacking aircraft.

d. Concentrate a heavy volume of fire on attacking aircraft in accordance with Machinegun Procedure, CHAPTER 1, Weapons.

4. Mines and booby traps. Arrange for engineer support to sweep road.

Convoy Escort Procedures

1. General. MPs may receive a hasty mission order to escort unmanned/unarmored units from point-to-point. It is necessary to have well established SOPS due to the lack of planning time available to the commander in these situations.

2. Escort Team Leader. The senior MP of the detail will be the escort team leader. He will be responsible for:

a. Organizing and outfitting his unit.

b. Gathering all applicable essential elements of information, i.e. route reports and enemy situation.

c. Writing a FRAG-0 and preparing a strip-map to include return route to MP HQ.

d. Locating an easily recognizable and secure holding area where the two units can link-up.

e. Establishing a TCP at the holding area to guide the friendly unit.

f. Briefing and receiving information from the convoy commander prior to departure.

g. Integrating with the security element commander's security plan. If the convoy commander designates the escort team leader as the security element commander, executing the mission of that billet according to SOP.

h. Securely escorting the convoy from the start point to the release point.

3. Assistant Escort Team Leader. Second-in-command, responsible for assisting the escort team leader and assuming command in his absence. Primarily responsible for logistics requirements.

4. Composition. The Escort Team should be made up primarily of hardback or up-armored HMMWV's.

Coordinating Instructions

1. General. The parent unit of the convoy has several vital responsibilities.

2. Logistics Chief/Company Gunnery Sergeant.

a. Ensure all vehicles are loaded the day prior to stepping off.

b. Ensure vehicles are loaded in accordance with prescribed vehicle load list/diagram.

c. Ensure wrecker support is on-call for the convoy.

3. Headquarters Personnel.

a. Maintain radio contact with the convoy at all times, ensuring timely radio checks are conducted and that proper radio procedures are followed.

b. Maintain the location of the convoy on the situation map at all times.

c. Maintain communications with the react force (if available).

4. React Force. If sufficient forces are available, the unit commander will designate a reaction force with vehicle and weapons assets to support the convoy.

a. React Force Commander.

(1) Conduct liaison with the convoy commander and the security force commander to obtain a copy of their orders, strip maps, and intelligence data.

(2) Write FRAG-Os based on multiple contingencies, using the convoy's signal plan to prevent blue-on-blue contact.

(3) Conduct detailed rehearsals with the react force covering multiple contingencies.

(4) Maintain a point of contact or communications with the HQ element to ensure rapid response. Monitor the convoy net to keep updated on the convoy's situation.

(5) Ensure all vehicles and Marines are prepared to React within the pre-designated time allotment.

APPENDIX:
Q - CONVOY OPERATIONS

VEHICLE MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

Introduction

1. General. Reconnaissance, security and mobility are critical to successful military operations. In support of these requirements, military police conduct maneuver and mobility support operations (MMSO) across the full range of military operations.

During peace operations, military police aid the safe flow of food and supplies and authorities with road and highway regulation during disaster relief operations. While performing MMSO functions, military police work closely with the logistic movement control center to implement plans for controlling the movement of combat resources along line of communication. In multinational operations, this support integrates available hot nation and allied force capabilities.

In wartime, military police expedite forward, lateral, and rear movement of forces on the battlefield. To assist the movement of forces across the battlefield, military police operate traffic control points and conduct mobile patrols to help stragglers to their respective units. In addition, military police help clear LOC by directing and controlling the movement of civilians whose location or direction of movement may hinder military operations. They provide escorts to move U.S. noncombatants from assembly points to theater embarkation terminals.

2. Purpose. To establish procedures for vehicle movement in tactical situations.

3. Procedures.

a. The senior MP will determine the movement technique based on the likelihood of enemy contact.

b. Teams will travels in column. Teams will make-up squads, and squads will make-up platoons. A lead element will be positioned forward so only a small unit makes contact with the enemy. The remaining element will follow in trace prepared to support the lead element by fire and maneuver. The distance between the lead element and the other vehicles is determined by the likelihood of enemy contact and the terrain.

Tactical Movement Principles.

1. Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance. Military Police conduct route reconnaissance and surveillance operations to assist operational and intelligence collection planning efforts by gathering detailed information on a specific route and it’s surrounding terrain. Mobile MP teams record and report the condition of MSRs and other critical roadways to identify weather effects on road surfaces, traffic capability, route damage, NBC contamination, and enemy activity. Military Police continually monitor MSRs and surrounding terrain to provide early warning of enemy activity to commanders.

2. In Military Operations Other Than War, route reconnaissance is conducted to open new routes to support peace operations, humanitarian assistance or areas devastated by natural or man made disasters. Military Police conduct detailed and continuous route reconnaissance. To provide updated information to the commander and units traveling the MSRs.

3. Main Supply Route Regulation and Enforcement. To support force movement, MP units enforce MSR regulation plans by controlling traffic activities. Enforcement of these efforts focus on ensuring that only authorized traffic uses controlled MSRs.

4. The command with jurisdiction over the road network sets the highway regulation plan, which includes MSR regulation plans as well as in engineer route, bridge and tunnel reconnaissance reports. Unit standing operating procedures (SOPs) and command directives also may concern MSR regulations. The LMCC establishes route classifications using information provided from MP route reconnaissance missions.

5. Military Police use TCP's, roadblocks, checkpoints, holding areas and defiles at critical points to monitor MSRs and enforce command regulations. Mounted MP teams patrol between static posts to observe traffic and road conditions, to gather information on friendly and enemy activity, and to assist stranded vehicles and crews. Changes in road condition and enemy activity along MSRs are reported immediately through MP channels.

6. Main Supply Route Control Measures. While performing MMSO military police permit MSR traffic to flow as smoothly and naturally as possible. To keep traffic moving and to regulate MSRs, military police move traffic through defiles, establish vehicle-holding areas, set up roadblocks, checkpoints, traffic control points and monitor route signs.

7. Support for River Crossing Operations. Military police support river-crossing operations by helping to move rapidly across river obstacles. River crossing MP support serves to reduce congestion, speed the crossing, and enable the maneuver forces to maintain momentum. The MP employment for a river crossing is influenced by the battlefield situation.

8. The number and placement of MP supporting this operation vary with the size of the force crossing the river and the degree of enemy resistance expected or encountered. Military police perform maneuver and mobility support activities leading up to, within the crossing area, and on the entry and exit sides of the river.

a. To Support River-Crossing Operations:

(1) Establish holding areas.

(2) Enforce MSR regulations.

(3) Direct units to proper crossing locations.

(4) Move units through crossing areas on schedules.

(5) Support for passage of lines.

9. Support for Passage of Lines. Moving a maneuver unit through the position of a placed unit that is in contact with the enemy is a critical action. The degree of MP support depends on the commander's needs and the number of military police available. The MP commander, the division logistics staff officer (G-4), and the division G-3 plans and coordinate the passage of lines operation.

a. Military police support a passage of lines by:

(1) Established TCP's

(2) Escorting and guiding vehicles

(3) Setting up temporary route signs.

10. Support for Area Damage Control.

a. Area damage consists of downed trees, urban rubble, damaged or destroyed bridges, craters in the road and contaminated road networks that affect military operations.

b. Area damage control (ADC) measures taken before, during and after hostile actions and natural or manmade disasters minimize effects and reduce damage. The focus of ADC is to limit the impact on military operations and to the local populace as quickly as possible.

c. The amount of MP support needed for ADC operations depend on the extent of the damage, the importance of the affected area, and the impact of the damage on military operations. Damage to an area may be so great that roads may be closed and MSR traffic may be rerouted. If roadways are passable, military police conduct MMSO in the affected area. Military police conduct route and area reconnaissance to determine the traffic capability of the routes into, out of, and around affected areas.

d. ADC Support.

(1) Enforce emergency restrictions on movement into, within, and out of the affected area.

(2) Enforce curfews, orders, and movement authorization and prioritization.

(3) Watch for theft, pilferage, or arson against military property.

(4) Direct dislocated civilians.

(5) Collect straggles.

11. Straggler and Dislocated Civilian Control Operations. Military police conduct straggler control operations to assist commanders in maintaining combat strength by locating and returning stragglers to their units. Military police locate stragglers at TCPs, checkpoints, roadblocks, defiles or while on patrol. For large numbers of stragglers, special posts and collecting points are set up along MSRs or military police can operate straggler posts at established TCPs, checkpoints, and roadblocks.

a. To expedite movement on MSRs, military police conduct dislocated civilian control operations. Although the HN usually takes measures to control the movement of their populations during a conflict, a mass flow of civilians can seriously affect the movement or security of military units. If needed, military police redirect or prevent the movement of civilians when: their location, direction of movement or actions hinder military activity. During control operations, military police direct dislocated civilians to secondary roadways and areas not used by military forces.

b. Information Collecting, Reporting, and Dissemination.

(1) General. Through information collecting, reporting and dissemination operations, military police contribute to the initial intelligence preparation of the battle space (IPB).

(2) IPB information given by Military Police.

(a) Terrain that can help or hinders a combat

support operation (e.g., presence of water supply for a chemical decontamination point).

(b) Terrain that can be critical to the AO security mission (e.g., presence of potential DZs, LZs communications sites and depot sites).

(c) Civil-Military considerations (e.g., presence of built-up areas, refugee evacuation routes and populated areas sympathetic to the friendly or enemy cause)

(d) Military Police contribute to the intelligence cycle process by conducting reconnaissance patrols which fill intelligence gaps or update information on critical areas and high-value targets. For example, after G-3/G-4 planners assign MSRs from the MEF support area forward, military police check the terrain for the presence of high value targets. Once identified critical bridge routes and other HVT's, which the enemy will want to destroy, can be surveyed or replacements planned.

12. Halts.

a. Only the senior MP should call an unscheduled halt, with the exception of frontal enemy contact, vehicle malfunction or other emergencies where the MP involved should request a halt.

b. Immediately establish local security.

(1) A-driver will dismount and provide flank security.

(2) The lead and trail vehicle will train mounted weapon systems to the front/rear. Swing elements will alternate left to right.

(3) Air Guards.

(4) Intervals will be maintained while the column or formation slows to a halt.

(5) Terrain permitting, each vehicle in column will immediately conduct a herringbone, cueing off the lead vehicle.

(6) Engines will be left running while halted unless otherwise instructed.

(7) The convoy commander could call a Herringbone formation, or coil formation.

13. Counter-Mine Road Driving.

a. Avoid driving over freshly filled potholes or debris on the roadway.

b. Avoid driving on the shoulder, especially at a bend in the roadway.

c. On dirt roads avoid any discolored patches or fresh earth on the roadway.

d. If available, use a mine sweeping team from the Combat Engineer Detachment to clear the roadway prior to movement.

e. Sandbags should be placed on the floors of all vehicles and in the beds of all troop carrying trucks at least one layer deep.

14. Avoiding Observation.

a. Blackout can be utilized at night or low light conditions. A driver should tape headlights to avoid accidental illumination. Vehicles without working blackouts lights should have their lights taped with field expedient light filters.

b. Both hull-down and full defile positions should be used when available to avoid observation and provide cover from enemy fire.

c. Use the Terrain for Protection. Terrain Offers natural concealment from enemy observation and cover against fire. Using terrain to protect vehicles is difficult, so, terrain driving should become a habit. It must be used when in contact with the enemy and when contact is possible or expected.

d. Basic Terrain-Driving Rules.

(1) Use available cover and concealment.

(2) Avoid sky lining.

(3) Do not move directly forward from a hull-down position.

(4) Cross open areas quickly.

(5) Avoid possible kill zones. Platoons and squads must avoid wide-open spaces, especially were high ground dominates, or where terrain can cover and conceal the enemy. They must also avoid obvious avenues of approach into enemy territory. It is better to cross-difficult terrain than fight the enemy on his terms. Engineers can work the terrain to improve mobility.

(6) Take Active Countermeasures. Platoon leaders should use smoke, direct fire, and indirect fire to suppress known or suspected hostile positions. The enemy should never be allowed an open, unhindered shot at mounted or dismounted friendly elements. This calls for constant alertness and thorough planning and coordination.

15. Vehicle intervals.

a. Traveling: 50 meters pending on road conditions and visibility or briefed otherwise.

b. Traveling over watch and Bounding Over watch: Enemy and terrain will dictate.

c. Blackout: 10 meters unless night vision goggles are used. Maintain 5 mph.

d. Ensure all-around security by assigning sectors of fire, staggering and disperse vehicles during halts and make the best use of weapons systems.

e. Do not move directly from a covered position.

f. Bypass likely ambush sights and danger areas.

g. Make contact with the smallest element.

h. Organize elements based on METTT.

i. Choose a course of action that will help you defeat the enemy, if mission requires.

j. Choose a course of action that prevents you from becoming decisively engaged with the enemy. MPs will not become decisively engaged unless directed by higher authority.

k. Maximize the HMMWV's capabilities of mobility, speed and firepower.

l. Choose your battles according to the mission and if casualties jeopardize mission accomplishment do not engage.

16. Moving to contact immediate action.

a. The senior MP will be positioned with the base of fire where he can control the fire.

b. The lead element will fix the enemy while the remaining maneuver to destroy the enemy.

c. Sniper fire. The lead vehicle will return fire and destroy the target. The trail element will maneuver as required. A dismounted patrol will sweep the area and gather intelligence.

d. Indirect Fire. Elements will quickly depart the impact area in formation or, on order, break formation and regroup at the last rally point.

e. Ambush.

(1) Vehicle(s) in the kill zone will return fire and move out of the kill zone.

(2) Elements not in the kill zone will establish a base of fire and support the withdrawal of elements in the kill zone.

(3) Elements break contact and return to the last rally point.

(4) The senior MP will decide whether to destroy the enemy or break contact.

17. Crossing Danger Areas. Danger areas are those areas (Known enemy positions, roads, trails, streams and open areas) where there is an increased chance of detection, and the enemy has a tactile advantage.

a. Bounding Over-watch will be used to cross danger areas.

b. The rear element will stay on the near side and cover the roadway.

c. The lead element will cross the danger area and secure the far side.

d. The trace element will cross the danger area.

e. The lead element will move ahead and resume the movement.

f. The trace element or lead element size will be determined by the convoy commander based on the size of the danger area and the size and strengths of possible enemy elements.

Convoy Operations.

a. Planning Guidance. The senior MP will:

(1) Analyze the mission and available information to identify specific tasks.

(2) Conduct a detailed map/terrain analysis to identify primary/alternate routes, key terrain, and danger areas.

(3) Identify the distance, estimate time of movement, time and distance to key locations and vehicle movement formations and intervals.

(4) Time permitting, conduct a leaders reconnaissance.

(5) Determine March order.

(6) Ensure there is an effective spread of vehicle mounted weapon systems.

(7) Prescribe a rate of speed, assembly area, schedule of events and maximum catch up speeds.

(8) Designate control measures such as phase lines, checkpoints, supplies, equipment and safety issues.

(9) Coordinate communication procedures specifying alternate means of communication.

(10) Plan for the use of night-vision goggles.

(11) Coordinate the vehicle march with the senior MP and the RAOC/CSSOC.

(12) Prepare strip maps that identify critical points, danger areas, distance between critical points, mileage ticks on the map, start point, release point, order of march, maximum catch up speed, vehicle intervals and control measures.

(13) Vehicle and personnel accountability procedures.

(14) Rehearse/review response options to enemy contact and establish rally points.

(15) Determine weapons and ammunition purposes.

(16) Plan for the recovery of disabled vehicles.

b. Vehicle preparation operator’s will.

(1) Perform daily, weekly, monthly maintenance inspections.

(2) Check for all leaks that could cause a malfunction in the vehicles operation or cause future problems.

(3) Check vehicle waterproofing.

(4) Inspect vehicles batteries for corrosion, security of mounts and cables.

(5) Inspect tires and inflation. Ensure proper inflation for the area that you are in.

(6) Inspect vehicle internal/external loads ensuring proper stowage making sure all gear is strapped down securely.

(7) Ensure ring mounts are functional.

(8) Vehicles will not be operated with the weapons system mounted unless there is a gunner is in the turret.

(9) Ensure the vehicle is SL-3 complete and is in

good working order.

(10) Ensure ammo is properly stored.

(11) The number of fuel cans will not exceed the number of stowage tie downs.

(12) Ensure there is adequate water in marked containers and it is separated from fuel.

Safety.

1. Vehicle operators will use seatbelts at all times.

2. Gunners in the turret when the vehicle is moving will wear body armor, helmet, goggles, and safety strap.

3. All personnel in the vehicle will wear body armor and helmet properly.

4. The vehicle will be prepared for fording before going into deep water.

5. No Marine will operate a vehicle without a license.

APPENDIX:

R - Vehicle Movement Techniques Diagrams.

LAW AND ORDER OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standing operating procedures and promulgate guidance concerning law and order operations in a tactical environment.

2. General. Aggressive law and order operations help the MAGTF commander maintain combat effectiveness. MP assist commanders in curtailing or eliminating criminal activity by enforcing rules and regulations. Just as importantly, MP activities must not hamper the commander's ability to accomplish the tactical mission. Law and order missions are:

a. Law Enforcement.

b. Criminal Investigations.

c. Accident Investigation.

d. Crime Prevention and Physical Security.

e. US Military Prisoner Confinement.

3. Probable Cause.

a. PC to search exists when there is a reasonable belief that a person, property, or evidence connected to a crime is located in the place or on the person to be searched. based on credible information having a factual basis, that:

b. PC information generally comes from:

(1) Written Statements.

(2) Credible oral statements communicated in person, or other means of communication.

(3) Information known by the authorizing official, i.e. the CO.

4. PC to apprehend a military member exists when:

a. A crime has been, is being, or is about to be committed; and

b. The person to be apprehended is the person who committed the crime.

5. Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA). Rules and procedures between the United States and a foreign country concerning how either party deals with legal issues.

6. Assumptions. The following assumptions will be made until intelligence can provide an actual picture of the threat.

a. MP will deploy with the capability to accomplish the above stated missions. The MAGTF commander will establish mission priorities.

b. If school trained investigators (criminal, accident, or MWD team) are not available, attempts should be made to provide these services by agreements with local military police units (Army, Navy, Air Force, Coast Guard, other allied service) or host nation police agencies.

c. The request for MP involvement will be:

(1) Commanders seeking MP assistance.

(2) An MP personally witnesses a criminal act.

(3) The MP receives a report of criminal activity.

(4) The senior MP will coordinate and assign MP assets to investigation.

Criminal Investigations (Felony)

1. Missions. The MPI mission encompasses several different roles during combat and contingency operations in order to support unit commanders:

a. Criminal Investigations. Investigating incidents applicable with various violations contained within the punitive articles of the Uniform Code of Military Justice is the primary mission of MPI. At a minimum, NCIS will investigate the following major criminal offenses:

(1) Murder, manslaughter, negligent homicide, or medically unattended deaths.

(2) Serious assaults which are aggravated through the use of a weapon or which require the victim to be treated or admitted at the hospital for lacerations requiring sutures and/or broken bones. Weapons include, but are not limited to, firearms, knives, sticks, bats, tire irons, glass bottles, and weapons, which could result in death or serious bodily injury.

(3) Rape, sodomy, and indecent assault.

(4) Pandering or prostitution.

(5) Robbery.

(6) Forgery or fraud, excluding unauthorized use of telephone credit cards.

(7) Arson, as determined by a fire marshal or where arson cannot be eliminated as a possible cause.

(8) Extortion.

(9) Drug offenses including theft of drugs.

(10) Burglary or housebreaking.

(11) Black-market activities.

(12) Larceny of government/private property valued in excess of $500 or a logical suspect has been determined. Additionally, all larcenies involving the theft of explosives, pyrotechnics or firearms.

(13) Larceny of any police badge/credentials.

(14) Child abuse as indicated after examination by a physician.

(15) Child sex abuse involving suspected/actual child sex abuse to include carnal knowledge and indecent assault.

(16) Suicides and attempts where self-inflicted injuries are of a serious nature requiring hospitalization or possible disability. Additionally, all attempts where the suspect has a secret or higher security clearance.

(17) Obscene telephone calls when there is a pattern or multiple calls.

(18) Bomb Threats.

(19) Worthless/insufficient funds checks in amounts exceeding $1000 when requested by command or when negotiated on a closed account.

(20) Destruction of private/government property when damages exceed $500.

(21) Request for assistance from local authorities or other investigative agencies involving the aforementioned crimes.

(22) Violations of the law of land warfare.

(23) Any crime, when directed by the senior MP.

b. Protective Services. Although not a primary assignment, MPI may be assigned as personal protective details for designated military and government officials.

c. Crisis Negotiations. During a crisis situation involving hostage(s) or barricaded suspects, MPI may conduct negotiations with the suspect to resolve the incident.

d. Intelligence Gathering. This is not a mission of MPI; however, during the course of investigations, vast amounts of pertinent intelligence are obtained. This information may provide assistance to other sections within the military and government.

2. Investigative Procedures. When initiating an investigation, MPI follows a standard course of events:

a. Notifications. Military Police (5811) should respond to the scene and ascertain facts of the incident and provide crime scene security. Notification of MPI is determined by the seriousness of the incident.

b. Preliminary Investigations. Preliminary investigations are conducted to determine the scope of the incident and to collect the facts of the incident. This includes, but is not limited to, a crime scene examination, interviews of victims, witnesses, suspects, and the seizure of evidence.

c. Conducting Investigations. The investigation will be conducted utilizing the guidance set forth in the U.S. Army publication FM 19-20 (Law Enforcement Investigations).

d. Reporting Investigations. MPI will generate a Report of Investigation (ROI) on investigations assumed by MPI or investigations referred to the appropriate agency in accordance with the Marine Corps Law Enforcement Manuel, Appendix B (Investigative Reporting Procedures). Additionally, MPI will conduct the appropriate notification(s) to commands of the units involved in incidents.

e. Evidence Collection. Evidence seized as part of on-going investigations should be safeguarded and a proper chain of custody will be maintained. The evidence will be maintained until disposition of the evidence can be authorized by the adjudicative authority involved in the incident.

f. Testimony. MPI investigators may be required to testify at Courts-Martial and Non-Judicial Punishment proceedings when requested.

g. Search Authority. During the course of an investigation, an investigator may make liaison with commanders and obtain command authorization for search & seizure of areas controlled by a specific battalion commanders or higher echelon authority. This authorization is based on probable cause, which is based on the fourth amendment of the Constitution.

h. Search Warrants. During the course of an investigation when leads surface outside the jurisdiction of the military, investigators may attempt to obtain a search warrant from the local or federal authorities.

i. Liaison. Throughout the course of investigations, investigators make contact with a vast number of local, state, federal, military and international law enforcement agencies, to complete their investigations. Contact is also made with a variety of financial institutions and corporations.

j. Laboratory Analysis. Investigators have at their disposal several other government agencies, such as the U.S. Army and NCIS laboratories to conduct forensic analysis. These analyses include, but are not limited to, narcotics identification, latent print identification, trace evidence, serology analysis, firearm analysis, tool mark impression analysis, and questioned document analysis.

k. Polygraph Examinations. Further, MPI may request NCIS to provide polygraph examinations as an investigative tool.

3. The Senior CID agent will:

a. As soon as practical establish liaison with the nearest NCIS office to coordinate available technical/ investigative support.

b. Assign investigators to cases and coordinate and supervise their activities.

c. Assume investigative jurisdiction on all major criminal incidents.

d. Defer investigative jurisdiction to NCIS or other law enforcement agencies, on those incidents not within their investigative jurisdiction.

e. Obtain a CCN from the desk sergeant and maintain an administrative log of all CID cases.

f. Weekly, provide the Senior MP with a written synopsis and courses of action for each on-going CID investigation.

g. CID agents will work closely with counter intelligence units and host nation police authorities. This will allow for a focus of efforts resulting in useful intelligence.

h. Reporting and documentation procedures will be in accordance with applicable orders. Further, criminal statistical data will be maintained and presented upon request of the senior MP.

i. Provide the Desk Sergeant a journal entry.

j. IMPORTANT: All criminal investigations, not assumed by CID, will be investigated by a 5811/12/13 MP on an ICR.

Criminal Investigations (Misdemeanor)

1. Assumptions.

a. An MP, 5811 MOS, will initially respond and conduct the preliminary investigation of all criminal incidents. Major

criminal incidents will be referred to Military Police Investigators (MPI) for investigation.

b. Referrals. MPI is the principal criminal investigative agency during tactical operations. As determined by the local commander and applicable orders, all major criminal offenses will be referred to the Naval Criminal Investigative Service (NCIS) for investigation.

c. Host nation and/or other US military investigative resources could be used to lend investigative assistance/ expertise.

2. Procedure.

a. The Desk Sergeant will:

(1) Assign a case control number to all criminal incidents. A log of cases will be maintained and record the following:

(a) Case control number. See Appendix S.

(b) Nature of offense.

(c) Name and unit of subjects.

(d) Date received and date sent to unit for disposition.

(2) Review each ICR, and ensure the proper paperwork is completed for investigation. See Appendix S.

(3) Make notifications per Chapter 1 (Tactical Command Post Operations).

b. A military police officer will investigate the crime, exhausting all leads and questioning all suspects.

c. The investigating military police officer will complete an ICR and all required enclosures.

Accident Investigation

1. Assumption. All vehicle accidents will be investigated provided they do not interfere with tactical or mission-essential operations. Accidents will be investigated by a school trained 5813 MOS MP.

a. The following vehicle accidents require an investigation:

(1) Accidents resulting in a fatality.

(2) Accidents involving host nation persons and/or property.

(3) Accidents involving substantial vehicle damage and/or multiple vehicles.

(4) Minor vehicle accidents do not require formal investigation, but will be reported when practical.

b. IMPORTANT: If a 5813 accident investigator is not available and/or the MSR must be cleared quickly, a 5811 will complete an ICR.

c. The Senior Accident Investigator will:

(1) Assign investigators to cases and coordinated supervise their activities.

(2) Assume investigative jurisdiction on all traffic accidents.

(3) Coordinate with host nation authorities to obtain/exchange traffic accident information.

(4) Obtain a CCN from the desk sergeant and maintain an administrative log of all AID cases.

(5) Conduct investigations in accordance with applicable orders.

(6) Weekly, provide the Senior MP with a written synopsis and courses of action for each on-going AID investigation. Further, provide the senior MP with accident statistical data upon request.

2. MSR Traffic Regulation Enforcement. The primary method of MSR traffic enforcement is the issuance of verbal or written warnings. The following applies:

a. Written Warnings. A DD Form 1408 (Armed Force Traffic Ticket) will be used to document a written warning/violation.

(1) The WHITE copy is retained by the MP and mailed to the violators command.

(2) The YELLOW copy is filed as a record of the violation.

(3) The PINK copy is given to the violator.

b. Verbal Warnings. If the violation is minor and the MP determines a verbal warning is appropriate, the following action will occur.

(1) Inform the violator why he/she was stopped.

(2) Obtain the individuals name, rank, SSN, unit, and phone number.

(3) Radio this information to the desk sergeant who will make a desk journal entry.

(4) Allow the violator to proceed.

c. Forward moving convoys will NOT be ticketed. A verbal warning will be given to the senior convoy member. Follow the guidance listed above and allow the convoy to proceed.

Crime Prevention and Physical Security.

1. Crime prevention is accomplished by making units aware of the detrimental effects of criminal activity. The senior MP will provide commanders with instruction and information on recognizing, countering, and preventing criminal activities.

2. MP will provide advice to unit commanders concerning security for rear area units, particularly those targets of interest to the enemy or criminal elements; e.g., CPs, arms and munitions storage areas, money facilities, command and control centers, and communication facilities.

Military Working Dogs (MWD).

1. All MWDs are trained for patrol. Each MWD is then trained in either drug or explosive detection.

2. The senior MP will control the employment of MWDs. Uses of MWDs are:

a. Explosive detection to include detecting, bombs, tripwires, mines.

b. Locate enemy or bypass enemy positions.

c. Guard EPWs.

d. Conducting flight line security/security patrols.

e. Drug detection during an inspection, search, or inventory.

3. The MWDs alert can be used to establish probable cause (PC). The Factual basis and the reliability of the MWD are combined to obtain an authorization to search from the responsible commander.

4. The use of MWDs for the purpose of ferreting out drugs or contraband that threatens military security and performance is a reasonable means to provide PC:

a. When the MWD alerts in a common area, such as a barracks passageway; or

b. When the MWD alerts on the air space extending from an area where there is a reasonable expectation of privacy.

c. The Military Dog Handler will:

(1) Maintain patrol and explosive records for their Military Working Dog.

(2) Care for their Military Working Dog to include feeding and medicating MWDs and report any medical problems to the veterinarian and Kennel Master.

(3) Maintain a tidy and sanitary kennel area. Maintain an explosive drivers license and attend explosive safety training for handling of MWD explosive scent kit.

(4) Apply all knowledge obtained in Military Working Dog Handlers Course, and from the Kennel Master/ Trainer, to stay proficient in all training areas.

(5) Maintain all Military Working Dog gear issued to Dog Team.

(6) Maintain all Military Working Dog feed and weight charts.

d. The Kennel Master will:

(1) Organize, supervise, and evaluate all operational and training aspects of a Military Working Dog Section.

(2) Maintain continual training and certification standards for all Military Working Dog teams.

(3) Support law enforcement agencies and military units with explosive detection support.

(4) Provide Military Working Dog demonstrations when required.

(5) Provide Military Working Dog teams for Deployments and TAD, where and when needed.

(6) Conduct inspections to ensure proper levels of sanitation requirements are met and maintained.

(7) As primary Explosive Training Aid Custodian, ensure proper security measures are maintained for all training aids.

(8) Issue all MWD gear and maintain accurate ECR's. Ensure handlers stay current in other Marine Corps training and 5811 training.

Search and Seizure

1. Procedure.

a. PC Searches Based Upon Prior Authorization (Mil.R.Evid 315). Authorization to search an area may be granted by a "Neutral and Detached" commander who has jurisdiction of the area to be searched. As a rule, if that commander is involved in the evidence gathering process he is no longer neutral and detached.

b. Searches without prior authorization (Mil.R.Evid 315(g)).

(1) Exigency Search. Permitted under circumstances demanding some immediate action to prevent the removal or disposal of property believed, on reasonable grounds, to be evidence of a crime.

(2) Insufficient Time. PC exists and there is reasonable belief that the time required to obtain authorization would result in the destruction, removal, or concealment of the property or evidence sought.

(3) Lack of Communication (Mil.R.Evid 315(g)(2)). PC exists and destruction, removal, or concealment of the property or evidence is a genuine concern, but communication with an authorizing official is precluded by military necessity.

(4) Search of an Operable Vehicle (Mil.R.Evid 314(d)). Two factors are controlling. First, a vehicle may easily be removed from the jurisdiction if a warrant or authorization were necessary; and second, the court recognizes a lesser "expectation of privacy" in automobiles. This rule also applies to aircraft, vessels, and tanks, as well as, automobiles and trucks.

c. Searches Not Requiring Probable Cause (Mil.R.Evid 314).

(1) Searches Upon Entry to and Exit from US. Installations, Aircraft, and Vessels Abroad. Commanders of such areas can authorize searches of person(s) or property to ensure the security, military fitness, or good order and discipline of the command.

(2) Consent Searches (Mil.R.Evid 314(e)). The owner or other person having control over the area to be searched consent to the search. If free and voluntary consent is given, no PC is required. A written consent form will be used.

(3) Stop and Frisk (Mil.R.Evid 314(f)). There are two elements to this rule. First the Stop; the MP has a reasonable suspicion to stop a person(s) for identification; second, should the MP making the stop have reasonable ground to fear for his/her life, a limited frisk or pat down of the person(s) outer-garments is permitted to determine if the person(s) is armed. Further, if the MP has no reason to fear his/her life, a frisk is not authorized.

(4) Search Incident to a Lawful Apprehension (Mil.R.Evid 314(g)). For this search to be admissible, the PC

for apprehension must be valid. If there is PC, the MP may search the person and any place that person could reasonably reach.

(5) Emergency Searches to Save Life or for Related Purposes (Mil.R.Evid 314(i)). In emergency situations, searches conducted in an effort to render immediate medical aid, to obtain information that will assist in the rendering of such aid, or to prevent immediate or ongoing personal injury.

(6) Plain View Seizure (Mil.R.Evid 316(d)(4)(C)). When a government official is in a place where they have a lawful right to be, whether by invitation or official duty, evidence of a crime observed in plain view may be seized.

d. Body Views and Intrusions. Extraction of Body Fluids (Mil.R.Evid 312 & 313). The non-consensual extraction of body fluids (e.g., a blood sample) is permissible under two circumstances:

(1) Pursuant to a lawful search authorization; or

(2) Where circumstances show a clear indication that evidence of a crime will be found, and that there is reason to believe that the delay required to seek authorization could result in the destruction of evidence.

e. Involuntary extraction of body fluids will be conducted by a person with appropriate medical qualifications.

f. Intrusion for Valid Medical Purposes (Mil.R.Evid 312(f)). Evidence or contraband obtained from an examination or intrusion conducted for a valid medical purpose may be seized and will be admissible in court-martial. Note. A chain of custody must be established and maintained.

Self-incrimination

1. Procedure. Protections of Article 31. No person subject to the code shall:

a. Compel any person to incriminate himself or to answer any questions the answer to which may tend to incriminate him.

b. Interrogate or request a statement from an accused or a person suspected of an offense without first informing him of the nature of the accusation and advising him that he does not

have to make any statement regarding the offense of which he is accused or suspected, and that any statement made by him may be used as evidence against him in a trial by court-martial.

c. Compel any person to make a statement or produce evidence before a military tribunal if the statement or evidence is not material to the issue and may tend to degrade him.

d. No statement obtained from any person in violation of this article, or through the use of coercion, unlawful influence, or unlawful inducement, may be received in evidence against him in trial by court-martial.

e. All military person(s) suspected or accused of an offense will be advised of their rights under Article 31. This advisement will be recorded on a statement of suspect form.

f. All civilian person(s) suspected or accused of an offense will be advised of their rights under the 5th Amendment.

g. The MP administering such rights will read it verbatim from a rights card.

U.S. Military Prisoner Confinement

1. Assumption.

a. Whenever possible, US. military personnel awaiting trial will remain under the custody of their command. Unit commanders will use organic assets to detain their personnel.

b. MPs and Correction Specialists will be used to detain US. military personnel only when they present an immediate hazard to the mission, themselves, or others.

c. U.S. military prisoners, requiring confinement, will be moved from forward operating units and detained in a temporary detention facility established in the MAGTF rear area.

d. MP/Correction Specialist operating the detention facility will be augmented by personnel from the prisoner's units.

e. A Correction Officer/SNCO will operate the detention facility, and supervise the activities of security personnel.

2. Procedure.

a. Site Location.

(1) The site should afford the prisoner the same shelter as other Marines.

(2) Look for an area already constructed i.e., a tennis court. This will reduce the amount of security construction required.

(3) In some cases, an existing confinement facility may be available i.e., a local jail.

(4) Construct a shelter to provide prisoners protection from enemy fire.

(5) The facility should be inspected and approved by a medical officer.

(6) The prisoner's unit will ensure all confinement papers are completed, and the prisoner is qualified for detention by a medical officer.

(7) US. Prisoners will never be detained in the same facility as EPWs or CIs.

(8) Convicted military prisoners will be evacuated from the theater of operation to a permanent confinement facility as soon as possible.

b. The Corrections Officer/SNCO will:

(1) Establish a SOP for the operation of the detention facility in accordance with applicable orders.

(2) Coordinate and supervise the activities of personnel assigned to the detention facility.

(3) Establish procedures to ensure 100% prisoner accountability is maintained.

(4) Establish procedure to receive and store prisoner personal belonging.

(5) Maintain statistical data on prisoners assigned.

(6) Brief the senior MP concerning detained personnel.

APPENDIX:

S - Case Control Numbers and Military Police Forms

INTERNMENT OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for the handling, processing, and temporary internment of enemy prisoner of war (EPW) and civilian internees (CI).

2. General. In any conflict, the Geneva Conventions provides for the safe and humane treatment of belligerents and civilians. US policy demands all persons who are captured, interned, or held by US forces during a conflict be treated humanely.

Policy and Notional Concept of Operation

1. Policy.

a. All persons will be treated according to the Geneva Convention until a determination has been made concerning their status.

b. Once in your custody, EPWs and CIs will be protected from:

(1) The dangers of the battlefield.

(2) Natural dangers such as wild animals, severe weather, etcetera.

(3) Maltreatment from fellow servicemen, allies, other EPWs/CIs or civilians.

(4) EPWs/CIs should be protected from acts of intimidation and against insults and public humiliation. This includes news media filming or taking photographs of the EPWs/CIs unless approved by higher headquarters.

c. Violations concerning the handling and treatment of EPWs/CI will be immediately reported via the chain of command.

d. EPWs/CIs will not normally be held on a ship unless:

(1) They are captured at sea. They are then moved to the nearest shore facility.

(2) They are being transferred between land facilities.

(3) Such action will improve their safety and/or health prospects.

e. Whenever possible, criminal investigators, the S-2 officer and interrogation translator teams (ITT) will assist in the handling, questioning, and processing of all EPWs/CIs.

f. EPWs will be flexi-cuffed during transportation. When EPWs are moved over water, flexi-cuffs will be removed.

g. The senior MP will direct when the need to blind-fold EPWs for operational security.

2. Concept of Operation. Notionally, this is the process an EPW will take from capture to repatriation:

a. The ground combat element (GCE) will take EPWs during the attack. Military Police will gather the EPWs into a forward collection point until movement to the rear is coordinated.

b. Military Police will assume responsibility for the EPWs and move them to a holding area in the rear area. Here the EPWs are processed and held until released to the US. Army or host nation authorities.

c. Corrections Specialist assigned to the operating force will augment the Military Police EPW holding and processing mission as determined by the senior MP

d. The US. Army or host nation will intern the EPWs until repatriation.

Handling Procedure.

1. EPWs we be handled using the six Ss; Secure, Search, Silence, Segregate, Safeguard, and Speed.

a. Secure. EPWs should be protected from the effects of the battlefield and maltreatment.

b. Search. This is done for the safety of the capturing unit and to gather information. All weapons and equipment that could be used as weapons will be confiscated. Maps and documents could be of intelligence use and should be delivered to intelligence personnel immediately. EPWs can retain, protective equipment (helmet, protective mask, etc.) and personal effects including money and valuables. Money and valuables will be removed during later processing.

c. Silence. Talking among EPWs is not allowed unless to answer your questions. Talk between recently captured EPWs is usually centered on plans to overpower their captures or escape. By insisting on silence, you decrease their ability to coordinate

an escape or prejudice intelligence opportunities. Silence may be an operational necessity. Though gagging is not illegal, it should be used only as a last resort.

d. Segregate. EPWs will be segregated into the following categories; officer, senior enlisted, junior enlisted, and by sex. Segregating EPWs disrupts the chain of command and decreases military effectiveness during the early stages of capture. Civilians will not be held with military personnel.

e. Safeguard. As mentioned above, you have the responsibility to safeguard everyone in your custody and any intelligence material found.

f. Speed. As soon as possible, EPWs will be transported to the rear for processing and further interrogation. Use all available transportation assets returning to the rear. Speedy removal from a familiar area also reduces the chance of escape.

2. Capture Tags. At a minimum, capture tags will contain the following information:

a. Serialized. Each capture tag will be numbered sequentially. A CSS serial # can be written on the capturing unit EPW tag if one is already completed.

b. *Name and Rank of EPW.

c. Service number.

d. Date of birth.

e. *Date of capture.

f. *EPWs nationality and unit.

g. *Location of capture and capturing unit.

h. *Special circumstances of capture.

i. *Description of weapons/documents.

* Denotes information that should be provided by capturing unit before acceptance of custody.

Tactical Employment

1. Collection Point and Holding Facility Considerations.

INTERNMENT OPERATIONS

a. The senior MP will determine the best location to establish the collection point/holding facility. Possible locations will be identified during route reconnaissance.

b. Coordinate transfer procedures with the GCE or appropriate G/S staff officer. Further, attempt to establish communication (land-line preferable) to facilitate the transfer procedure.

c. Coordinate engineer, logistical, and transportation needs through the RAOC/CSSOC.

d. Coordinate medical treatment procedures through the RAOC/CSSOC to include:

(1) Medical personnel to triage and provide medical treatment to stabilized wounded EPWs for transportation.

(2) Procedures for emergency MEDEVAC of seriously wounded EPWs.

(3) Handling of EPWs/CI with infectious diseases.

e. Determine the personnel requirements for security/operation of the collection point and holding facility, and transportation of EPWs to the holding facility and permanent interment facility.

f. Ensure EPW operations are capable of sustaining twenty-four hour operation.

g. Establish procedures for the final disposition of weapons and contraband. This should be coordinated through the CID and the CSSOC/RAOC.

h. Coordinate security force augmentation through the CSSOC/RAOC.

2. Selecting a Holding Area Location.

a. The location should be well within the CSS area.

b. Existing structures could be used provided they can be properly secured i.e., fenced in lots, stadiums.

c. Look for flat, clear ground.

d. Look for existing power and water points to tap into.

e. Close to an MSR. This makes delivery of EPWs and supplies easier.

f. Location should not allow EPWs to gather intelligence while being held.

g. Should not put EPWs in an unhealthy environment either natural or man-made.

h. Should not be placed near a legitimate military target.

i. The site should allow for a landing zone for MEDEVAC operations.

j. The size will be determined by S-2 estimates of expected EPWs and METT-TSL.

3. Selecting a Collection Point Site.

a. Hastily constructed 5-10 kilometers from the FLOT.

b. The principals in paragraph 2,a-j, above apply.

Collection Point Operations

1. Procedure.

a. Positive accountability will be maintained during all stages of handling EPWs. A log will be maintained to document the receipt and transfer of EPWs and their property. The log will contain, as a minimum, the following information:

(1) Capture tag serial number.

(2) Name and rank of EPW.

(3) EPW's unit.

(4) From whom the EPW was received and date.

(5) Weapons or personal property (start a chain of custody).

(6) To whom the EPW was transferred and date.

b. A secure area will be established to receive the EPWs. The area and security element should allow for vehicle traffic and off-loading.

c. A simple search will be performed before placing the EPW into the collection point. The purpose of this search is two-fold: it is primarily designed to remove weapons and contraband from the EPW; secondly, anything that could be of intelligence value is removed and delivered to an intelligence representative.

d. EPWs will retain all protective gear (helmet, flak jacket, gas mask) and personal items (wallet, jewelry, religious items, and money).

e. EPWs requiring immediate medical attention will be separated from the others. Those seriously wounded will be MEDEVAC'd to the nearest hospital capable of EPW treatment. The following actions will occur:

(1) Ensure those EPWs leaving the area for medical treatment are properly tagged and accounted for before being transported. Departure time and destination will be recorded.

(2) Injured EPWs still posing a threat will require a security element.

f. Ensure all EPWs possess a tag from the capturing unit. An EPW tag will be recreated for those EPWs not possessing an EPW tag. The EPW tags attached by the capturing unit will be used for accountability until replaced at the holding facility.

g. Handling Seized items.

(1) As mentioned above, only weapons, contraband, and items of intelligence value will be removed.

(2) All items will be tagged with the bottom portion of the EPW tag, evidence tag, or blank tag. The bottom portion of the tag will be taped to the item or bag containing the item. At a minimum, the following information will be recorded:

(a) Date of capture.

(b) Serial Number if appropriate.

(c) Unit seizing the item.

(d) Location of capture.

(e) Disposition of item (where it will be stored).

(3) A secure location will be designated to store the items until they can be delivered for final disposition. A MILVAN would be ideal.

(4) A strict chain of custody, similar to the procedures for handling evidence, should be established.

(5) All items will be transported to the holding facility for disposition.

h. Establish a forward collection point as depicted in Appendix T. The volume of EPWs and rate of transportation will determine the size of the collection point.

i. An automatic weapon(s) will be employed with the primary intention of preventing escape. Fields of fire will be established that do not engage friendly forces.

j. Segregate the officers from the enlisted EPWs. Space allowing, segregate the NCOs from the junior enlisted.

k. EPWs will remain flexi-cuffed until delivered to the holding facility. Gagging and use of a blind-fold is authorized when it is a tactical necessity only!

l. EPWs will be transported from the collection point as soon as possible. When feasible, arrange to have the EPWs delivered directly to the holding facility. Distance and availability of transportation will probably be the deciding factor.

m. Prepare a roster of EPWs for each serial. This roster will be carried by the senior MP escorting the EPWs and delivered to the MP at the holding facility receiving point.

n. Ensure head facilities and water points for drinking and cleaning are available.

Transportation

1. Procedure.

a. Movement considerations:

(1) Movement from collection points to the holding area, and movement from the holding area to a permanent internment facility.

(2) All rearward moving, empty transport should be utilized.

(3) The S-4 will coordinate the use of commercial buses or other modes of transportation.

(4) Number of EPWs to transport.

(5) Distance to transport and turn-around time.

(6) Security escort requirements.

b. EPWs will be handled using the 6 S's.

c. An EPW roster will accompany each serial. The senior MP of the security element will use this roster to account for all EPWs, and give this to the MPs at the holding facility.

d. Convoys will not stop unless there is an emergency or length of movement requires a rest stop.

e. EPWs should be allowed to use the head before transportation.

f. The security element will:

(1) Have hand-held communication between vehicles.

(2) MP riders will be in a tactical position to observe each other and all the EPWs in/on the vehicle.

(3) Vehicles permitting, a lead and trail security vehicle will escort the convoy

(4) At a minimum, there will be two MPs per transportation vehicle.

Holding Area Operations

1. Procedure.

a. The senior MP will determine the best location for the holding facility. The MAGTF commander will approve the location.

b. The size of the holding facility is determined by S-2 estimates of anticipated EPWs and METT-TSL. Security force augmentation may be required. The senior MP will anticipate and coordinate these requirements with the MAGTF commander.

c. Establish a holding facility in accordance with Appendix T. The holding facility provide for:

(1) Segregated berthing areas.

(2) A receiving area.

(3) An administrative processing area.

(4) Head facilities.

(5) Sanitation areas for cleaning.
(6) Potable water points.

(7) An area to conduct further questioning.

(8) A medical treatment area.

(9) Adequate power supply for security lighting and administrative operations.

(10) A maximum-security area.

(11) A secure area to store seized items.

(12) Protection from the affect of direct/indirect enemy fire.

d. Processing EPWs at the holding facility. The following stations will be established:

(1) Receiving Area.

(a) EPWs will be segregated and staged here awaiting entry into the processing area.

(b) The senior MP escorting the EPWs and an MP at the receiving area will visually account for each EPW using the EPW roster.

(c) An interpreter will inform the EPWs what is going to happen.

(d) A MP will escort each EPW through the processing procedure.

(2) Search.

(a) Two MPs will perform a detailed strip search. Clothing and personal belonging will be thoroughly inspected for material of intelligence value, weapons, and contraband.

(b) Interrogator/translator teams, CID, and local translators will be used to question the EPW. Those possessing intelligence will be moved to another location for further questioning.

(c) Unless otherwise directed, personal belongings will remain with the EPW.

(d) Weapons and contraband will be seized and tagged for disposition.

(3) Shower/Shave/Disinfection. Ideally, the EPWs will be immediately transferred to a permanent internment facility.

(4) Medical Evaluation/Immunization.

(a) A medical officer will screen each EPW. Those EPWs requiring further medical examination/treatment will be moved elsewhere for treatment.

(b) EPWs with personal medication will be allowed to retain such medication if authorized by a medical officer.

(5) Clothing/food issue.

(a) Each EPW will retain their own clothing.

(b) Each EPW will be issued one MRE, and a blanket.

(6) Administration.

(a) An EPW serial number will be assigned, e.g. US-0000001-12JUL95, to each EPW. The first part of the serial number is the nationality, then the processing number. The last part is the date taken prisoner.

(b) An EPW tag will be prepared, and affixed to the EPW's left breast pocket.

(c) The serial number will be written on the EPW's left hand in indelible ink.

(d) The EPW's information will be entered into a logbook.

(e) The EPW's serial number will be annotated on the seized item tagged.

(f) A clerk will enter the EPWs information into a computer database.

(7) Photo/fingerprint/height/weight. A determination will be made concerning the necessity of this step.

(8) Impound Property. The EPW will retain all personal property. These items will be impounded at the permanent internment facility.

(9) Records Review. A NCO will:

(a) Ensure the EPW tag is properly filled out and attached to the EPW's left breast pocket.

(b) Ensure the serial number is written on the EPW's left hand.

(c) Ensure all administrative actions are complete before moving the EPW to the holding facility.

(10) Movement to Holding Area. The escort MP will move the EPW into the holding facility. Another MP will place the EPW into the appropriate portion according to classification.

g. Security.

(1) Security is based on METT-TSL and includes:

(a) The number of security personnel.

(b) Adequacy of holding facility.

(c) Number of EPWs.

(d) Morale and physical condition of the EPWs.

(e) Ensure safe fields of fire for automatic weapons.

(2) Posting requirements will be identified and a guard force will be established.

(3) Off-duty security personnel and those working in processing will act as the response force in case of emergency.

(4) Elevated guard posts will be placed around the facility.

(5) A 50-meter clear zone will be cleared around the facility.

(6) Lighting.

(a) Perimeter lighting will be designed to illuminate the clear zone around the facility.

(b) Area lighting will be designed to illuminate the interior of the facility.

(c) Special purpose lighting will be designed to illuminate key area i.e., the receiving point or spot lights that can be used by the elevated security posts in a random manner.

(7) Use of MWD Teams.

(a) Perimeter security.

(b) At the receiving point.

(c) Guarding work details.

(d) Most effective when employed as a psychological deterrent.

(8) Be alert for EPWs causing or inciting problems. When possible, these EPWs will be separated from the others.

(9) MPs working within the facility will be unarmed.

(10) Automatic weapons should be employed to cover the perimeter of the facility, and used as a last resort to prevent the escape of an EPW.

(11) Random and frequent walking patrols will be used around the perimeter.

(12) A daily inspection will be conducted of berthing areas and the perimeter for signs of escape activity. Be alert for signs of tunneling, weapons, and contraband.

(13) Accountability formations will be held at reveille, taps, and randomly throughout the day.

(14) EPWs brought outside the holding facility will be thoroughly searched upon reentry.

Transfer of Custody

1. Internment. The MAGTF commander will determine where EPWs will be permanently interned based on operating agreements with the host nation and availability of US Army MPs.

2. Forward Collection Point. Ideally, EPWs could be moved directly from forward collection points to the permanent interment facility.

3. Transfer. As soon as possible, arrangements will be made to transfer the custody of EPWs.

4. Procedure.

a. A roster will be prepared for each group of EPWs released.

b. A MP and the receiving agency will conduct a joint inventory to ensure all EPWs are accounted for.

c. Personal items removed from the EPWs will be turned over to the receiving agency. A joint inventory will be conducted to ensure all items are accounted for.

d. A report will be submitted to the CSSOC/RAOC concerning the number of EPWs released.

Coordinating Instructions

1. Use of Force/Deadly Force.

a. During the receiving process at the holding facility, the EPWs will receive a briefing, in their language, concerning the use of force.

b. The minimum amount of force necessary will be employed to counter the threat and/or prevent the escape of an EPW to include:

(1) Verbal Commands.

(2) Physical restraint techniques.

(3) PR-24.

(4) MWD Teams.

(5) Riot Control Agents (use of riot control agents will be approved by the MAGTF commander).

c. Deadly Force will be authorized:

(1) To prevent the death or serious bodily injury of security personnel or another EPW.

(2) After all lesser means of countering the threat have failed or are impractical to employ.

(3) After the order to "HALT" is given. The security personnel should be able to issue this warning in the language

understood by the EPW. Further, each EPW will understand what the word "HALT", in English, means.

(4) When the EPW has cleared the outer perimeter, escape is probable, and all lesser means of force have been used or are impractical.

d. A daily report will be submitted to the RAOC/CSSOC concerning numbers of EPWs handled. The report will include:

(1) Scope of report.

(2) Total number of EPWs handled and total number of sub-categories.

(3) Number wounded and transported for medical treatment.

(4) Moral and physical appearance of EPWs.

(5) Status of supplies i.e., water, food, and issued items.

APPENDIX:

T - Collection Points, Holding Facilities, and Construction Material

NON LETHAL WEAPONS AND CONTROLS

RIOT CONTROL/CIVIL DISTURBANCE OPERATIONS

Introduction

1. General. Although riots by foreign nationals against overseas assets and civil disturbances by U.S. citizens require that MP's master two different sets of laws and regulations, both incidents require the expertise of similar techniques. The ability to plan, coordinate and execute riot and crowd control operations in order to diffuse potentially lethal situations are vital Military Police skills that necessitate extensive coordination and training.

Control Principles

1. General. There are 7 control principles, all having equal value except the minimum use of force, which supersedes all others. These are principles, which have been found to have the greatest value to the broadest spectrum of operations, but many mission-specific principles will have to be developed by the Senior MP.

a. Threat Awareness. Operational success is highly dependent on timely and accurate threat information. MPs must be able to prepare for and respond to threats before they escalate.

b. Professional Imagery. In many situations, the demonstrators and the control force are competing for the sympathy of the public. Absolute professionalism based on situational awareness is vital to ensure public support for the operation.

c. Coordinated Preparation. A variety of municipal, city, county, state, federal (and possibly foreign/military) organizations may play a part in the operation. Detailed coordination prior to execution is vital to ensure all parts work smoothly to support one another.

d. Operational Unity. Civil disturbance operations may have no single commander. If actual unity of command cannot be established (one overall commander), operations centers should be co-located.

e. Public Acceptance. In order to prevent uninvolved civilians from directly or indirectly supporting the demonstrators/ rioters, and to keep the area isolated, it is vital that the public accepts the role of the control force and allows them to operate. This ties in directly with professional imagery.

f. Objectivity-Neutrality. As the object of the operation is the restoration of law and order and not punishment or retribution, control force personnel and commanders must maintain absolute objectivity and neutrality when dealing with the public to maintain public acceptance. Reprisals will be counterproductive.

g. Minimum Force. In a civil disturbance, the use of the military must be considered a last resort. Unlike combat operations where the use of overwhelming firepower is desirable, civil control operations require minimal and disciplined force application to accomplish the mission in order to maintain professional imagery and public support.

2. Application of Force. Force should only be applied incrementally and minimally to accomplish limited tactical objectives. See Section 11 Rules of Engagement/Use of Force.

3. Selective Lethal Force Application. The senior commander on scene will be the only authorizing agency for the selective use of lethal force.

4. Detention and Apprehension. See Section 4 Law and Order Operations.

Planning and Preparation

1. General. The mission of military forces during civil disturbances is to assist civil authorities in the restoration of law and order and the protection of lives and property. Riot control against foreign nationals may involve the protection of embassy property, the dispersal of refugee mobs, and/or the local commander dictates. Effective planning requires coordination with local civilian/host nation authorities to provide complete coverage of all matters pertaining to the operations and ensures that areas requiring joint effort are properly considered.

2. Assumptions

a. All legal matters will be directed to, and decided by, the local/MAGTF commander and his/her legal aide.

b. Rules of engagement will be written prior to mission execution. If time does not permit the creation of mission-specific ROE, use Section 11 Rules of Engagement/Use of Force as a guideline for operational limiting factors.

c. The Senior MP will be subordinate to the local military commander, but will have a "working relationship" with local

civil authorities and will take only military orders and directions.

d. Time will be allotted for planning and training prior to execution. Riot control operations require specific technical and tactical expertise, and are dangerous undertakings with untrained units/Marines.

e. The Senior MP will execute/be responsible for (but will not be limited to) all planning tasks.

f. Criminal Investigation Division (CID) can be assigned to assist with criminal intelligence development.

g. The Senior MP will coordinate/conduct the training of non-58XX personnel that may be augmented from other units as part of the control force.

3. Planning and Training Phase. Encompasses all preparations that are made prior to the unit being alerted. Steps to be executed are:

a. Threat Analysis/Intelligence Gathering. A fluid and continuous process that requires dedicated efforts and resources for success. Conducted primarily by the G/S-2, the Senior MP must be aware of the threat and play an integral part in analyzing information and disseminating intelligence.

(1) Intelligence and criminal information is gathered . Intentions, plans, strategies and tactics are targets of intelligence gathering procedures.

(2) Threat information is gathered and disseminated identifying groups and key individuals that may become crowd/mob leaders. Photographs/drawings of key individuals are disseminated and posted.

(3) Vulnerability information identifying weaknesses and high-risk targets is gathered, and solutions are developed to shore-up identifiable problems. Key vulnerabilities dictate immediate and detailed response planning.

b. Operations Planning. Provides for the primary tasks to be accomplished in controlling a riot/civil disturbance. Operations planning should be centered on a concept of decentralized control to allow for rapid response by on-scene control force commanders, and should continue through deployment. The following steps should be taken to establish SOPs and plans for likely areas of deployment/general situations to supplement general ROE SOP:

(1) Conduct reconnaissance of areas and routes based on intelligence (if feasible) and create operational plans and overlays.

(2) Create a plan to isolate affected areas.

(3) Create a security plan for priority facilities that are vulnerable to dissident activity, that are critical to the well being of the community and that have a political, media or strategic value to the dissidents.

(4) Create a patrol plan.

(5) Create plans for crowd control.

(6) Create plans for the neutralization of special threats.

(7) Coordinate delineation of command and control for joint operations with civil authorities to include joint patrols, exchange of equipment, etc., maximizing the use of existing civil police operational boundaries.

(8) Conduct site survey/map reconnaissance for command post location, preferably co-locating with the civil authority's command post. If an Emergency Operations Center has been established, command post should be co-located or placed within the EOC. See Section 5 Tactical Command Post Operations.

(9) Plan for movement to the objective, taking all means of available transportation into account. Route reconnaissance executed during the planning phase should be used to plan specific route approaches.

(10) Conduct detailed communications planning with the G/S-6 and local/civil authorities. Radio security measures should be executed in accordance with Section 19 Communications. The communications plan must not rely solely upon local/civil communications devices and networks for success.

(11) Ensure weapons T/E reflects operational necessity based on mission statement, commander's intent, and ROE. Use of non-lethal measures and legality options should be considered.

(12) Ensure special control items such as barricades and wire obstacles are pre-fabricated and readily available.

(13) Prepare a unit alert plan, dictating recall procedures and all T/O and T/E. Establish vehicle and personal

load plans in accordance with the mission per Section 15 Equipment Standardization and Pre-Deployment Planning.

c. Training. Individual, team, and unit training are vital to the success of any disturbance control mission. Training should be designed to give each individual an understanding of the entire subject area and enable him to function efficiently both individually and as a member of a unit. Training must be sufficiently realistic and intensive to develop Marines to the point they will carry out distasteful and dangerous assignments with disciplined response to orders and an objective attitude. One Marine acting outside the bounds of the mission/ROE or failing to respond properly at a critical moment can create a disaster. Training should be based on operational planning.

(1) Weapons and Special Equipment. (See Appendix G) Every member of the control force must be proficient with his assigned weapon. Special equipment may include, but are not limited to:

Riot control agent dispensers	Cameras
Ladders	Grenade launchers
Public address systems	Ropes
Shotguns	Night illumination devices
Sting Grenades	Sniper rifles
Firefighting apparatus	Grappling Hooks
Sticky foam dispenser	

(2) Exercises. To reinforce training and test it's effectiveness, command post and field training exercises should be conducted.

(a) Try and include local/civil forces in training to establish a good working relationship and develop joint SOPs.

(b) Emphasize realism, to include the use of "OPFOR" Marines playing the part of civilians/rioters.

(3) Unit Training Objectives. Unit training must cover all aspects of civil disturbance operations, and should emphasize:

(a) Riot control formations and unit movement.

(b) Combined weapons employment.

(c) Alert plan and load plan rehearsal.

(4) Special Teams Training. Special teams will be task organized to respond to mission specific tasks. Special teams training may include:

(a) Snatch team training (see Procedure, 3 h).

(b) Sniper team/designated marksman training.

(c) Special Reaction Team (SRT) training.

d. Alert Phase. May be of short duration or may extend over several days/weeks. Unit is fully prepared and ready to execute the planned mission. Steps to be executed are:

(1) Execute unit recall procedures.

(2) Ensure vehicles are pre-loaded and protected and Marines are dressed in the prescribed uniform.

(3) Ensure weapons, ammunition, riot control agents and munitions are ready for issue.

(4) Ensure continuous intelligence updates are gathered from the G/S-2 and disseminated to the Marines.

(5) Ensure intelligence briefings are conducted by the G/S-2 on the local situation and key leaders and organizations.

(6) Ensure the SJA/Adjutant on ROE and general restrictions conducts legal briefings.

(7) Ensure a Public Affairs Officer briefs the Marines on media relations, releasable information, and "media rules of engagement" (can the Marines talk to reporters, etc.).

(8) Ensure troops are allowed to rest if time allows.

Procedure

1. General. Certain tasks must be accomplished in control operations in order to restore law and order/prevent violence. The commander must have a high degree of flexibility and adequate preparation time to successfully accomplish the control mission, and in order to do so, he will have to accomplish several operational and integrated tasking.

2. Operational Tasks. Although these tasks are presented in a logical order, tactical necessity may require the commander to accomplish the most pressing task first.

a. Isolate the Area. The restriction and sealing off of the disturbed area. The objectives of isolation are to prevent the disorder from spreading to unaffected areas, to prevent the escape of individuals bent on expanding the disturbance, to expedite the departure of uninvolved and to exclude the unauthorized personnel from entering the affected area. In order to isolate an area, several techniques may be employed:

(1) Barricades and roadblocks. Physical barriers limiting entry and exit, preferably pre-fabricated during the planning stage of the operation. See Section 12 Obstacle and Barrier Operations.

(2) Perimeter patrols. Established to prevent individuals attempting to bypass barricades and roadblocks from entering, or wanted individuals from departing, the area.

(3) Pass and Identification Systems. Used to facilitate authorized access and departure to and from the control area. Procedures should be established for press personnel, firefighters, emergency medical personnel, public work crews, and any other personnel authorized by the commander.

(4) Public Utility Control. Ensure civil authorities retain the means for turning on and off water, electricity, gas, street lights and telephones to support the tactical mission of the control force.

b. Secure Likely Targets. Certain buildings, utilities and services are critical to the well being of an area. In addition, certain buildings or areas may have symbolic meaning (e.g. a U.S. embassy, a control force command post), which makes them likely targets. If assigned the mission of securing likely targets, the Senior MP will have to determine where to allocate his assets (and coordinate the use of civil assets) based on:

(1) The importance of the facility to the overall well-being of the installation or community.

(2) The vulnerability of the facility to acts of violence.

(3) The intent and capability of the demonstrators.

c. Control Crowds or Mobs. There are four basic crowd control techniques available to the Senior MP, and all can be accomplished by a variety of means. See Crowd Control Techniques (par. 3 this section) and Appendix U.

(1) Monitor. Control force teams observe the progress and development of the crowd without becoming physically involved or communicating with the crowd. This enables the commander to gauge the crowd's intent and disposition, and allows him to vary his force as necessary to prepare for likely events.

(2) Disperse. Action taken to fragment a (usually) small crowd. The commander must consider that this action may increase the scope of the disturbance, so control should be established over the routes of dispersal and key personnel should be detained/apprehended. Methods for dispersal include:

(a) Proclamation.

(b) Show of force.

(c) Use of crowd control formations.

(d) Use of riot control agents.

(3) Contain. Restraining the crowd within the area it is currently occupying, thereby containing aggressive activity. This is a good technique when the apprehension of key individuals is desired. Methods for containment include:

(a) Crowd control formations.

(b) Perimeter patrols.

(c) Barricades.

(4) Block. Physical denial of a crowd's advance upon a facility or area, which is the potential or actual target of the dissidents/instigators. The primary methods for blocking are:

(a) Crowd control formations, principally the line.

(b) Easily erected barricades, such as vehicles, concertina wire and water filled barrels.

d. Establish Control Area. Reducing or eliminating those conditions, which encourage or contribute to the continuation/ outbreak of violence and lawlessness in the controlled area. Acts of violence, particularly looting, arson and vandalism, are significantly reduced when the physical and psychological environment of lawlessness is counteracted.

(1) Looting. May start at any time or place, and is not restricted to any group or type of individual. Extreme

caution and the adherence to the principle of minimum force must be observed when dealing with looters. There are many measures that can be taken by civil authorities to prevent looting, and the Senior MP should coordinate with the proper personnel to facilitate these measures. Security measures should center on sensitive areas such as liquor and drug stores, or any store that sells guns. It is (obviously) desirable to keep liquor, drugs and guns out of the hands of rioters. Deadly force is not authorized to control looting.

(2) Arson. Purposefully setting fire to buildings with the intent of destruction. Arson may be committed without apparent motive, and is very dangerous to the community and protected assets. Detection and prevention will be extremely difficult due to the ease of committing the act. Standard physical security measures should be followed, and the civil authorities should make all attempts to keep streetlights illuminated.

3. Integrated Tasks. Tasks executed concurrently with the five operational tasks. Some are more important than others, and the following list is by no means all-inclusive:

a. Gather, record and report information.

b. Apprehend law violators.

c. Maintain communications.

d. Maintain a mobile reserve for flexible response.

e. Inform the public to maintain public acceptance and preserve order.

f. Protect fire fighting and other civil service operations from violence.

4. Crowd Control Techniques.

a. Communications of Interest/Intent. The commander and the senior civil commander should attempt to meet with the leaders of the crowd/key individuals to gather information about their intentions and to attempt to guide their actions towards peaceable results. It may be possible to achieve a compromise, or even prevent any form of assembly. The intent of the control forces should not be delivered as an ultimatum, which may further incite the key individuals to violence.

b. Canalization. Once the leader's intent is understood, it may be possible to canalize the crowd away from sensitive areas by either positive or negative deterrents.

c. Diversion. Effort to divert either the leadership or the crowd from it's apparent or slated objective. This effort is facilitated if communications exist with the crowd leadership. Techniques may be direct (barricades) or indirect (promoting another area/site).

d. Cooperation. An attempt to get the leadership to cooperate, and intersperse itself between the crowd and the control force. This can be done by setting up negotiations in a strategic location, or appointing the leadership marshals in charge of crowd control.

e. Proclamation. Establishes the illegal nature of the crowds actions and is an excellent medium to convey the intent of the control force commander. Specific goals/actions should be demanded, but a loose timeline should be given if one is given at all. Public address systems are ideal for making proclamations.

f. Show of Force. Marching a well equipped, highly disciplined force into view of the crowd may be all the force necessary to convince the crowd/leadership to cooperate. Show of force may also take the form of patrolling and the manning of static posts.

g. Crowd Control Formations. Troop formations used to physically break up the crowd, primarily using the riot baton. Once formations are used, the commander must be ready to quickly (but carefully) escalate the level of force in response to crowd reaction. See Appendix U.

h. Apprehension of Crowd Members. The apprehension/ detention of an individual can only be justified if that person is in violation of the law or is an enemy combatant. If possible, civil law enforcement personnel should make apprehensions. If necessary, "snatch teams" may be task organized from the control force to move into a crowd and make an apprehension/detention. The Senior MP must be careful not to send such a small force that the crowd overwhelms it.

i. Employment of Water. Water from a fire-hose may be effective in moving small groups on a narrow front such as a street. Personnel applying water should be protected by formations, and in some instances, shields. Use of water on innocent bystanders should be avoided, and an escape route should be provided. If possible, personnel other than firefighters

should apply the water to preserve the image of firefighters as "lifesavers".

j. Riot Control Agents. Very effective means of crowd dispersal. The effects are temporary, and may result in greater violence. Authority for the use of riot control agents rests with the senior commander, and in all cases will require National Command Authority approval before use. See Appendix U.

(1) Area will affect the amount of agent necessary to have the desired effect. Most agents disperse quickly and lose potency in open air.

(2) Sufficient quantity must be used even in contained areas. Heavy concentrations should be placed on critical points.

(3) Agents should not be used indoors or in tight, restricted areas to prevent personnel from becoming injured while attempting to escape or from being overcome by agent.

(4) Weather, such as rain and wind, will have strong effects on agents. Means of dispersal must be carefully weighed in consideration with the weather. Commanders must be careful not to employ agent only to have it blow back on their own Marines.

5. Area Control Techniques.

a. Patrolling. To include mounted, dismounted, waterborne and airborne patrols. The presence of the control force should be felt in all parts of the controlled area.

b. Restrictions. To include the use of curfew, martial law, and the restriction on the sale of certain goods such as liquor and guns. Extreme restrictions may have an adverse affect on public acceptance, and may spread the control force thin with enforcement duties.

OC Considerations and Employment

1. SPRAY PATTERNS AND METHODS OF DELIVERY.

a. Spray Patterns are defined as how the OC is displaced when leaving the nozzle of the OC canister. There are three basic spray patterns used by all manufacturers. They will be employed according to the type of canister and the environment in which they will be used.

(1) Fog (Cone/Mist) - Smallest particulate size.

(2) Stream - Larger particulate size.

(3) Foam - Most concentrated particulate size.

b. Hand Held Fog/Cone spray patterns- this type of pattern is dispersed in a wide formation (similar to a shotgun effect) making it easier to acquire the target. The spray is completely filled with microscopic droplets causing every area around the subject's eyes, nose, and face to be covered.

(1) Full cone patterns are affected more by wind conditions and generally do not have as many spray bursts per canister (due to the nozzle design), or the effective range (3 to 8 feet) as stream patterns.

(2) The minimum spraying distance is 36 inches.

c. Hand Held Ballistic Stream Pattern. A powerful concentrated stream, which allows a greater range in its delivery system. Use of the stream contains the contamination in a more concentrated area.

(1) The ballistic stream can be used to select an individual in a crowd with greater accuracy and reduce the likelihood of contaminating other subjects or troops, which may be in the area.

(2) This pattern hits the subject with a splash or splatter effect (dependent upon the distance) giving it an effective range of 3 to 12 feet.

(3) The minimum spraying distance is 36 inches.

d. Jet Foam Pattern. A powerful fast acting foaming surfactant that coats the face upon contact. This pattern hits with greater impact, has better surface adhesion, reduces cross contamination, and has an effective range of 3 to 5 feet.

(1) It is designed for climate-controlled environments such as courtrooms, hospitals, schools, and holding facilities. It is easier to see the application during low light conditions.

(2) The minimum spraying distance is 36 inches.

(3) Some throwback potential exists and may possibly be inhaled; the product may become slippery on smooth surfaces.

e. The method of delivery is defined as how the OC is applied to the aggressor(s) depending upon the particular spray pattern. The three most effective ways to deliver OC are:

(1) Up and down. OC is dispersed by spraying in an isolated sweeping motion from the nose to the mouth, dividing the head in half. This method of delivery is recommended with the fog spray pattern.

(2) Side to side. OC is dispensed by spraying in a sweeping motion from ear to ear concentrating on the eyes. This method of delivery is recommended with the stream spray pattern.

(3) Spiral motion. OC is dispensed by spraying in a tight circular motion concentrating on the facial area. This method of delivery is recommended with the foam spray pattern.

2. Types of OC Delivery Systems.

a. High Volume Magnum MK-9

(1) MK-9 Fog Delivery - A full cone spray dispersal system designed to distribute a large quantity of OC into a vast area.

(a) Contains one pound of OC offering extended ranges (6 to 15 feet) and multiple bursts making it excellent for crowd control.

(b) Caution must be exercised when using these type units in small confined areas as they could possibly displace the oxygen supply.

(c) The minimum spraying distance is six feet.

(d) The recommended method of delivery is an isolated controlled motion from nose to mouth.

(2) MK-9 Stream Delivery - Capable of delivering large quantities of OC in a more controlled fashion than fog systems, minimizing cross contamination and respiratory effects.

(a) The OC particulate will not remain airborne as long as fog deliveries and it is designed to visually impair numerous subjects at distances of 6 to 15 feet.

(b) Containment should be in place to control multiple subjects who are visually impaired.

(c) The minimum spraying distance is 6 feet.

(d) The recommended method of delivery is an isolated controlled motion from ear to ear.

(3) MK-9 Foam Delivery

(a) A full cone spray dispersal system designed to distribute a large quantity of OC into a vast area.

(b) It contains 1 pound of OC with an effective range of 6 to 9 feet (in climate-controlled conditions) and is capable of multiple bursts. It is designed for high volume applications in sensitive ventilated enclosed environments such as hospitals and courtrooms.

(c) Exercise caution when using these type units in small confined areas as they could possibly displace the oxygen supply.

(d) The minimum spraying distance is 6 feet.

(e) The recommended method of delivery is an isolated controlled motion in a circular pattern.

(4) MK-21/MK46 "Riot Extinguishers"

(a) Capable of delivering large quantities of OC in a more controlled fashion than fog systems, minimizing cross contamination and respiratory effects.

(b) The OC particulate will not remain airborne as long as fog deliveries and it is designed to visually impair numerous subjects at distances of 12 to 30 feet.

(c) A secure perimeter should be in place to control multiple subjects whose vision is impaired.

(d) The minimum spraying distance is 12 feet.

(e) The recommended method of delivery is an isolated controlled motion from ear to ear, above the subject(s) head. Saturation of clothing may affect the respiratory system of the subject(s) without impairing their vision.

3. Hydraulic Needle Effect.

a. *The* hydraulic needle effect is an important factor to consider when employing OC. This is the consequence of the OC particulates penetrating the soft tissue of the eye. This is due to the correlation between the distance and the amount of pressure (size of the canister) in which it is delivered. Concerns have been raised about the possibility of soft tissue injury, prolonged irritation or possibly infection.

(1) Because of the possibility of the hydraulic needle effect, minimum safe distances have been established for each delivery system.

(2) Instances of hydraulic needle effect are rare, but nevertheless should be taken into consideration.

(3) Safety of the individual employing OC should never be compromised by delaying the use of OC in tactical situations for the concern of a hydraulic needle effect. *Let your tactical situation determine your tactical response.*

4. General Employment Considerations.

a. Cross Contamination- Because the OC formulation is heavier than air, the vapor rate of OC is very low and minimizes the possibility of transfer or cross contamination. Vaporization is when a substance changes from a liquid to a gas state and should not be confused with very small droplets or particulate, which may remain airborne such as a fogger.

(1) These airborne particulates may move across rooms or through ventilation systems and are most prevalent in:

(a) Fog Delivery Systems
(b) Spray nozzles that utilize conical spray patterns.

(2) Environmental Factors:

(a) Wind and rain

(b) Fans or ventilation

(c) Heat and humidity

b. Flammability and carcinogenic properties:

(1) Depending on whether a product is oil or water based, there will be a specific requirement for solvents and emulsifiers to ensure even suspension of the capsaicin. It is these ingredients that make up the majority of the formulation and should be closely evaluated for their safety.

(2) First Defense OC products are nonflammable and non-carcinogenic. Although propylene glycol (emulsifier) and ethanol (solvent) are used in First Defense products, they are not used in sufficient quantity for the formulation to be carcinogenic nor combust if it comes into contact with a flame or a source of heat.

(3) First Defense OC products meet the non-flammability and non-carcinogenic requirement set forth by ALMAR 305/98.

c. Awareness

(1) Use early with the element of surprise and prior to escalation of physical contact.

(2) Communicate with fellow troops when spraying a subject who is in the proximity of or in physical contact with another troop.

(3) Use code words such as “spray” or “OC”. Avoid words like “nuke him”.

d. Target Area/Spray Volume

(1) The primary target when employing OC is the facial area assuring coverage of the eye zone (eyes, forehead, and brow). The secondary target is the nose and mouth.

(2) Discharge into facial area using as much as required.

(a) If the open eye is contaminated, a one-half to one second burst should be adequate to achieve the desired effects. However, expecting an individual to accurately employ a projector for two bursts of one half second to one second during a confrontation may be unrealistic.

(b) In situations where the subject is hit around the eyes, i.e. forehead or cheek, an ample amount of formulation should be employed to ensure that enough fluids are present to carry the OC particulate into the eyes.

(c) For multiple opponents, use as much as required to control the situation based upon the threat.

e. Employment Formula

(1) Spray the subject until it is determined that the subject is contaminated or that the OC is ineffective and other measures are necessary.

(2) Command them to get on the ground and end every command with “Do it now.”

(3) Evaluate their response. Repeat steps 1 through 3 if required to escalate or de-escalate force.

(4) Control them. Avoid pressure/weight on their back.

(5) Medically check the subject and start decontamination if the situation allows.

Non-Lethal Weapons and Munitions

1. General. The needs for less then lethal means have been an issue for the military for quite some time. Because of military involvement in places such as Haiti and Somalia, mission requirements dictated a less than lethal approach. The intended purpose of non-lethal munitions serves many purposes.

a. It is the intent of non-lethal munitions to "modify behavior" of aggressors in a hostile environment.

b. Non-lethal munitions allow us to maintain a margin of safety from the aggressors. The more distance that we can keep from violent rioters or protesters, the safer the individual Marine. Distance is safety!

c. Non-lethal munitions create a pause in confrontation. This pause serves in giving the controlling force an element of surprise to further assess the situation and continue force or decrease force as needed.

d. Most importantly, non-lethal munitions give the commander another choice or tool in which to draw from in his choice of force options. Non-lethal munitions are not a replacement for lethal force!

2. Types of Non-Lethal Munitions.

a. There are two areas in which non-lethal munitions can be categorized, non-flexible and flexible projectiles.

(1) Non-flexible projectiles are generally composed of rigid or semi-rigid material. These projectiles are usually comprised of wood, rubber, or dense foam. Examples of non-flexible projectiles are the rubber ball round, fin stabilized round, and the foam baton round.

(2) Flexible projectiles are generally composed of lead silica, sand filled cloth bags, or a membrane containing a gelatin like substance. Characteristically they conform to the contour of the surface they strike. An example of a flexible projectile is the 12-gauge beanbag round.

b. The second type of munitions is the single and the multiple projectiles.

(1) Single projectile munitions are rounds that launch one projectile. These rounds are intended for direct fire targets but maybe used for area targets depending on the range.

(2) Multiple projectile munitions are rounds that launch more then one projectile. These rounds are generally intended for area targets but maybe used for point targets depending on the range.

3. Characteristics of Non-Lethal Hand Thrown Devices:

a. Sting ball Grenade: Sting ball grenades are employed in the same manner as fragmentation grenades, and the same amount of caution should be taken when using them. It has a soft rubber body topped with a mechanical, M201A1, pull-pin style fuse. Its detonation is summed up below in a seven-step sequence.

(1) The pin is pulled which releases the spoon.

(2) When the spoon is released, a small metal "striker" flips over, hitting the primer.

(3) Once the primer is struck it detonates.

(4) This ignites a delay element that lasts 1.5 seconds.

(5) An audible pop will be heard when this is complete, and the fuse or bouchon separates from the rest of the devise. This is done to keep the fuse from becoming a projectile.

(6) As the fuse separates it ignites an additional delay element that lasts 1.3 seconds.

(7) Finally, an instantaneous build up of pressure causes the soft rubber body of the sting ball grenade to burst releasing 100 .25 caliber rubber pellets, throwing them in all directions.

(8) The maximum effective radius of this device is 2 to 3 meters. The minimum safety distance from friendly troops is 4 meters.

b. Diversionary Device: Unlike the sting ball grenade the diversionary device is not classified as a grenade, because it does not have any projectiles. The body of the diversionary device is made up of cardboard, aluminum, or steel. All of which are specially designed to ensure that upon detonation the body does not become a projectile. Diversionary devices create a temporary state of confusion. They do this by causing an

instantaneous and simultaneous combination of light, sound, and pressure. Which all happens within 54 milliseconds. This is sometimes referred to as a sensory overload.

(1) A brilliant flash of light. This light is 125 times as bright as the largest "Mid-Life." It is so bright that it bleaches a fluid in your eyes, called rhodopsin. This fluid is essential for low-light visibility. What's even more amazing, is the fact that you will still notice these effects through closed eyelids.

(2) A thunderous loud noise. This noise is measured by the decibel (dB) system. A decibel is a unit of measurement used to express the relative difference in power, usually between acoustic and electrical signals. For instance the dB level near the muzzle of an M16A2 is 165 dB. While the dB level of a diversionary device at 3.5 feet away is 183 dB. To the average person 183 dB will sound twice as loud as 165 dB. The sound of the diversionary device lasts only .009 seconds, or 9 milliseconds.

(3) Pressure wave. As a diversionary device detonates it can increase and/or decrease normal atmospheric pressure, which is 14.667 psi, by +5 psi to -.6 psi. 19.667 psi is the threshold at which less than 1% of the population may sustain permanent hearing damage.

(4) MK 141 MOD O Minimum Safety Range. Because of the potential injury hazard that exists from aluminum shards of the electro-static discharge protective wrapping this, device should not be employed within distances less then ten feet from friendly or unfriendly personnel. The time of delay until this device detonates is 1.340 - 1.840.

4. Characteristics and Ranges of Non-Lethal Munitions:

a. 12 gauge service shotgun munitions:

(1) Beanbag round: The bean bag round launches a heavy cordura nylon bag filled with number 9 shot. The effective engagement range on a point target is 30 meters. At 50 meters primarily an area target should be engaged. This round is considered to be a long-range munitions. This munition can be engaged further than any other non-lethal munition. It is very effective and very painful. This round should not be fired at distances closer then 30 meters and only shot at center mass unless deadly force is authorized.

(a) *Product Specifications:*

Length:	2.45 Inches
Total Weight:	770 Grams
Projectile:	Single Bean Bag
# of Projectiles:	1
Primer:	Percussion
Propellant:	Smokeless / 3.4 Grains
Velocity:	300 FPS
Min Range:	30 Meters
Max Range:	50 Meters
Employment:	Direct Fire

(b) *Projectile Specifications:*

Size:	2 x 1 3/4 Inches
Weight:	585-685 Grains
Material:	Cordura Nylon Bag w/#9 Shot

(2) Rubber Fin Stabilized round: This munition has superior accuracy to other types of non-lethal projectiles because it is constructed with fins for stabilization. It's designed to be direct fired and has a hardness of 70 to 80 durometers "A" scale. It is ideally suited for intermediate range crowd control applications. This round should not be fired any closer then 15 meters and only shot at center mass unless deadly force is authorized.

(a) *Product Specifications*:

Length:	2.45 Inches
Total Weight:	140 Grains
Projectile:	Rubber Projectile
# of Projectiles:	1
Primer:	Percussion
Propellant:	Smokeless / 7.7 Grains
Velocity:	530 FPS (average)
Min Range:	15 Metes
Max Range:	30 Meters
Employment:	Direct Fire

(b) Projectile Specifications:

Length:	1.75 Inches
Diameter:	1.7 Inches
Weight:	110-120 Grains
Material:	Rubber

b. M203 40MM Grenade Launcher munitions:

(1) Foam Baton round: This round contains three projectiles of equal size and shape. They are made out of a dense foam, which have a hardness of 25 plus or minus 10 on the Durometer "A" scale. The effective engagement range of this munition is 5 to 15 meters. Because of the unpredictability of the trajectory beyond 15 meters, it may become ineffective for its intended purpose. This round can be effective against single or multiple targets. This round should not be fired at distances closer then 5 meters and only shot at center mass unless deadly force is authorized.

(a) *Product Specifications:*

Length:	4.8 Inches
Total Weight:	3.85 Ounces
Case Diameter:	1.59 Inches
Rim Diameter:	1.721 Inches
Propellant:	Smokeless
Projectile:	Foam Baton
# of Projectiles:	3
Velocity:	325 FPS
Min Range:	5 Meters
Max Range:	15 Meters
Employment:	Direct fire

(b) *Projectile Specifications:*

Length:	1.5 Inches
Diameter:	1.5 Inches
Material:	Foam Rubber
Weight:	250 Grains (each)

(2) Rubber Ball round: There are 22, .60 calibers rubber balls, those range in hardness of 60 durometers "A" scale. Its large shot spread makes this round ideal for crowds and/or multiple targets. This round is designed to be direct fired, but also can be used in skip fire applications. This munition should not be fired at any distance closer then 5 meters and only shot at center mass unless deadly force is authorized.

(a) *Product specifications:*

Length:	4.8 Inches
Diameter:	1.5 Inches
Total Weight:	4.10 Ounces
Rim Diameter:	1.721 Inches

Case Diameter:	1.59 Inches
Propellant:	Smokeless 7.3 Grains
Projectile:	.60 Cal. Rubber Balls
# of Projectiles:	22
Velocity:	325 FPS
Min Range:	05 Meters
Max Range:	15 Meters
Employment:	Direct Fire

(b) *Projectile Specifications:*

Caliber:	.60 Caliber each
Diameter:	1.5 Centimeters
Material:	Rubber
Weight:	34 Grains each

5. Tactical Employment Considerations:

a. Tactical employment considerations are factors that play an important role in the use of non-lethal munitions. All considerations must be reviewed in order to ensure maximum effectiveness of the munitions. Some considerations should include but are not limited to:

(1) Distance. As the distance increases, effectiveness and accuracy of the projectile decreases. The selection of the munition will be a contributing factor in the desired level of effectiveness.

(2) Shot Placement. Shot placement will be dictated according to the level of threat presented. When munitions are employed with a non-lethal intent, shot placement will be center mass. When munitions are deployed with a lethal intent, the point of aim will change to the head, neck, or red areas.

(3) Level Of Threat. An individual's intentions or the threat that is displayed will be a determining factor in the decision to use non-lethal or lethal force. For example, a crowd that is verbally aggressive but posses no weapons presents a less threat then a crowd throwing rocks and carrying clubs. In situations that present a lesser threat, shot placement and selection of munition become an important issue.

(4) Age. Age will effect the decision to employ non-lethal munitions. For example, a group of elderly people will generally not present as great of threat as a group of young men.

(5) Level Of Clothing. The level of clothing will effect the effectiveness of the non-lethal munitions. If heavy clothing is worn the maximum effective range could decrease.

(6) Lethal Capabilities. Lethal capabilities will always augment non-lethal munitions. If the situation arises deadly force should always be available.

6. Physical Effects of Non-Lethal Munitions:

a. Non-lethal munitions are not intended to kill or seriously injure. Impact munitions are designed to cause physical discomfort, blunt trauma, or immediate incapacitation. When a projectile impacts human tissue, its velocity is transformed into energy. There are two basic types of physical consequences that can occur upon impact. They are:

(1) Blunt Trauma:

(a) The desired effect of impact munitions; an impact from an object that leaves the body surface intact and may cause sufficient (non-life threatening) reaction to incapacitate the individual(s).

(b) Damage to the body of the individual will depend largely on the range of the target, where the round strikes the body, and munition selected.

(2) Penetrating Trauma:

(a) The undesired and unintended outcome for impact munitions. Penetrating trauma leaves an entrance and possibility an exit wound.

(b) Penetration from impact munitions could occur primarily from an object striking an area of soft tissue void of any supporting bone structure or muscle mass.

(c) Minimum safe firing distances are established to help reduce this effect.

(d) Damage to the body of the individual will depend largely on the range and the selection of the munition.

6. Psychological Effects of Non-Lethal Munitions:

a. Non-lethal rounds create a tremendous psychological effect if employed decisively and in a tactical sound manner. The mere presence of a well-disciplined unit that may or may not be firing projectiles will inevitably change an individual(s) behavior. Two conditions exist because of psychological effects. They are:

(1) Anxiety. A fear of the unknown. The crowd may hesitate in their willingness to escalate force because the control forces are armed with weapons. The crowd doesn't know whether or not weapons will contain lethal or non-lethal munitions. It is important not to say what type of ammunition you are employing. This maintains the element of surprise when using non-lethal munitions.

(2) Panic. The emotional or physical reaction to fear. Once the munitions have been employed, the crowd will immediately react by either fleeing the area or retaliating against the controlling force. This is a serious factor considering panic can act as an advantage or a disadvantage for the control force. This is largely dependent upon the mind set and the behavioral aspects of the crowd.

APPENDIX:

U - Riot Control Chemical Agents & Riot Control Formations

APPENDIX A

MAP SYMBOLS AND TACTICAL CONTROL MEASURES.

1. **General.** A common language of operational terms and military symbols is necessary so that instructions can be communicated rapidly and with minimum risk of misunderstanding. Overlays are a raped and an easily understood means by which the commander or his staff may express as operational plea, concept, or friendly or enemy situation. Standardization of techniques is essential. This appendix establishes guidelines for the pictorial representation of units, control measures, and tactical situations. For more on map symbols, see FM 101-5-1, Operational Terms and Symbols or NATO Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2019, Military *Symbols For Land-Based Systems.*

2. **Use Of Colors.** Colors may be used on situation and planning maps. Since multicolor reproduction is often impractical, overlays are normally reproduced in one color only, usually ***black.***

a. On one-color overlays, enemy units, and activities are depicted by double lines. When double lines cannot be used, such as with equipment symbols, EN should accompany the symbol.

b. Colors in conjunction with military symbols denote the following:

(1) Blue or Black. Friendly units and activities.

(2) Red. Enemy units and activities.

(3) Yellow. Areas of nuclear, chemical, or biological contamination.

(4) Green. Reinforcing obstacles.

(5) Other. Other colors are used as needed and explained in the legend.

3. **Use of Solid and Broken Lines.** In general, solid lines are used to depict the location of a unit or a control measure which is is effect and will continue or which is made effective by the order in which it appears: Broken lines show alternate and supplementary positions or locations of units or control measures which are proposed or which will become effective at a future time.

4. **Units, Installations and Activities.**

a. Basic Symbol. Geometric figures form the basic symbols which represent units, installations, and activities.

APPENDIX A

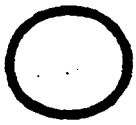
Unit

Headquarters

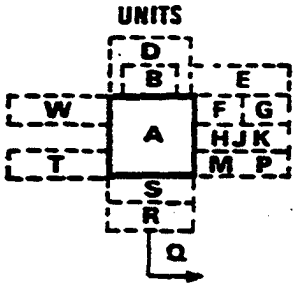
Logistical, medical, or administrative installation

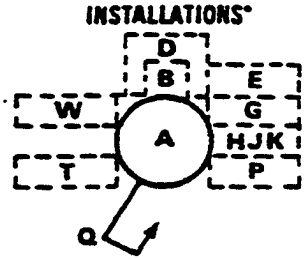
Observation post

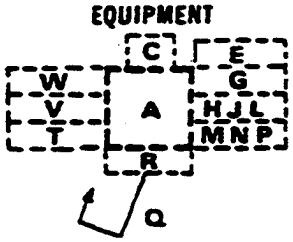
Electronic Installations



b. Location and Content of Fields. Each basic symbol requires minimal additional information to be clearly understood. This information is conveyed *by* its placement around the ***basic symbol is designated*** fields. Certain of the fields are mandatory and certain are optional. Detailed discussion of the most commonly used fields is contained in succeeding *subparagraphs.*







(1) Mandatory fields. These are fields which must contain information.

A – Role indicator.
B – Size indicator.
C – Unique description.

(2) Conditional fields. These are fields which must contain information, when applicable.

D – Special size indicator.
F – Reinforced or detached.
N – Enemy. Not required when identified by color or double line. Indicated by EN.

(3) Optional fields.

C – Quantity of equipment. For equipment only. Indicated by number of items.
E – Unconfirmed. For enemy only. Indicated by ?.
G – Additional information.
H – Free text. Additional information not covered in other fields.
J – Evaluating rating. See STANAG 2022 for ratings.
K – Combat effectiveness.
L – Signature equipment. Indicated by 1, refers to enemy equipment with an electronic signature.
M – Higher information.
Q – Direction of movement arrow. Represents the direction the symbol is moving or will move.
R – Mobility indicator. Pictorial representative of mobility.
S – Headquarters representation. Identifies unit symbols as a headquarters, such as FWD, MAIN, or ALT.
V – Type of equipment.
W – Date-Time Groups. Seven-digit alphanumeric designation.

c. Unit Size. the appropriate siz

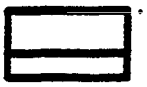
APPENDIX A

Fire Team	Ø	Squad/Crew	•
Section	• •	Platoon/Detachment	• • •
Company/Battery	I	Battalion/Squadron	II
Regiment/Group	III	Brigade	X
Division/Wing	XX	Corps/MEF	XXX

d. Role Indicator. Type or functional symbols are placed inside the basic symbol (Field A). Symbols may be combined with one another to show an exact function or capability. When no functional symbol is provided, as accepted abbreviation may be written inside the basic symbol..

Infantry		Artillery	
Tank		Assault Amphibian	
Light Armor		Reconnaissance	
Mechanized Infantry		Antitank	
Engineer		Motor Transport	

APPENDIX A

Supply 

Air Defense

Medical

Communications

Maintenance

Electronic Warfare

e. Reinforcements and Detachments. If a unit is reinforced or has detached elms, this is indicated to the right of the basic symbol in Field F.

Reinforced (+) or (REIN)

Detached (-)

With reinforcements and detachments (-) (+)

f. Unique Designation and Higher Formation. The identity of the unit is located to the left of the basic symbol in Field T. The unique designation must be consistent with the size indicator. The identity of the higher headquarters is located to the right of the basic symbol in Field M.

g. Special Size Indicator. A cap drawn is Field D over the size indicator designates a temporary grouping or task force.

h. Free Tact. Field H contains additional information not indicated elsewhere. For example:

An infantry battalion reinforced with tanks:

A water source not fit for human consumption:

APPENDIX A

i. Mobility Indicator. The type of mobility is shown bath the basic unit or equipment symbol is Field R.

Amphibians

Over snow

Wheeled

Tracked

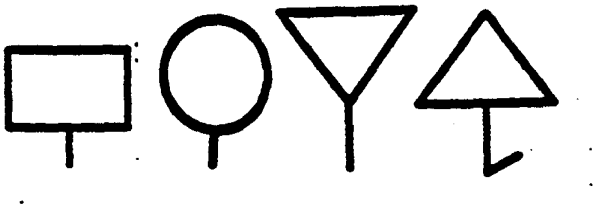
Wheeled cross-country

Trailer or towed vehicle

Wheeled/tracked combination

j. Precise Locations. The following methods indicate precise locations:

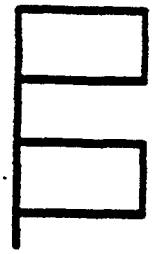
Basic symbols, other than headquarters, may be placed on a staff which is attended or bent as required. The end of the staff indicates the precise location.



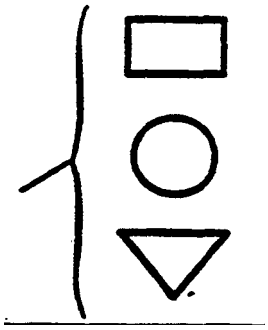
Since the headquarters symbol already includes a staff, this staff is extended or bent as required. The end of the staff indicates the acaa location of the headquarters.

If several headquarters are at one location, more thaw one symbol may be placed on a single staff.

APPENDIX A

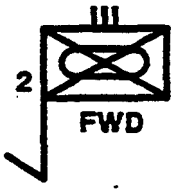


If a group of units or installations other than headquarters is at one location, the grouping of symbols may be enclosed by a bracket and the exact location indicated with a line.



k. Examples

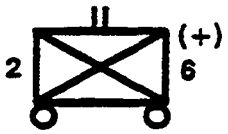
2d Marines forward CP, on AAV's:



OP for A Battery, 12th Marines:

1st Battalion, 7th Marina (minus)(reinforced); mechanized, reinforced with tanks:

APPENDIX A



2d Battalion, 6th Marina (reinforced), mounted on trucks:

1st Platoon, C Company, 1st Battalion, 4th Marines; reinforced with TOW's

Note: In this case, a battalion designator is not necessary because only 1st Battalion contains a C company.

5. **MAGTF Symbols**. In spite of the wide range of organizational possibilities, MAGTFs should always be designated as MIW, MEB, or M1:U. In these instances where only ground combat or aviation combat traits are deployed, MAGTF designations will not be used.

a. General.

(1) The intent of the MAGTF specific symbols is to more clearly identify Marine organizations and units is joint and combined operations as well as to emphasize the amphibious assault characteristics of the MAGTF and its ground combat element.

(2) Those units that conduct amphibious operations across the beach combat, combat support, and landing support units-have a included in their unit symbol. Those traits that support the operation but cannot conduct assaults across the beach-aviation and logistics traits-have SSS added to their units' symbols.

(3) These symbols are for use by MAGTF command elements and subordinate units in correspondence with higher or adjacent organizations in joint or combined operations. They are not required to be used within the MAGTF subordinate dements.

b. Marine Air-Ground Task Forces. MAGTF's formed from FMFPac will be assigned odd-numbered numerical designations, while those formed from FMFLant will be assigned even-numbered numerical designations. The basic symbol for a MAGTF is:

APPENDIX A

(1) MEF. A MFF will be assigned as even-or odd numbered Roman numeral. For example:

---

(2) MEB. A MEB will be designated by a single Arabic numeral corresponding to its originating MEF with the exception that MEB's formed from the 4th Division-Wing Team will be designated 2d or 3d MEB:

---

(3) MEU. A MEU will be designated by two Arabic numerals, the first corresponding to the MEF from ***which*** it originates and the second following the odd-even designation. MEU's formed from the 4th Division-Wing Team will be desired in the 40 series:

---

c. Ground Combat Elements. The ground combat elements of a MAGTF retain their traditional designations. For example:

d. Aviation Combat Elements.

(1) Marine Aircraft Wing. A MAW retains its official numerical designation when assigned as the aviation combat element of a MEF:

---

(2) Marine Aircraft Group. MAG's formed as the aviation combat element of a MAGTF from an Atlantic area command will be designated by an even digit followed by a zero, such as MAG 20. In the same manner, when formed from a Pacific area command, they will be designated by an odd digit followed by a zero, such as MAG 30. This procedure assures consistency with present even-odd FMFLant/ FMFPac designations, while assuring that MAG's formed as

aviation combat elements of MAGTFs will not be confused with commissioned MAG designations, such as MAG 32:

---

(3) Reinforced Helicopter Squadron. A reinforced helicopter squadron assigned as the aviation combat element of a MEU retains the designation of the unit that provides the preponderance of assets. For example:

---

e. Combat Service Support Elements.

(1) Force Service Support Group. The FSSG retains its assigned numerical designation. For example:

---

(2) Brigade Service Support Group. The FSSG assumes the numeral of the MEB for which it provides combat service support:

---

(3) MEU Service Support Group. The MSSG assumes the numeral of the MEU for which it provides combat service support.

---

6. **Ground Equipment**.

a. Weapons. Symbols are used to indicate the type, location, and number of weapons or groups of weapons. When a weapon symbol appears on a

map or overlay, the base of the shaft indicates the location of the weapon.

(1) To indicate the size of the weapon, add horizontal bars to the shaft of the basic weapon symbol: one bar for medium and two for heavy.

(2) If a weapon has a high trajectory, add a o to the base of the shaft. For antitank weapons, add a ^ to the base of the shaft.

	Light	Medium	Heavy
Antitank gun			
Antitank missile		(DRAGON)	(TOW)
Antitank rocket launcher	(LAW)	(SMAW)	
Howitzer			
Machine gun/automatic weapon			
Mortar			
Multiple rocket launcher			

APPENDIX A

Surface-to-surface missile

b. Vehicles

Assault amphibian vehicle

Tank

Light armored vehicle

Armored personnel carrier

Cavalry vehicle

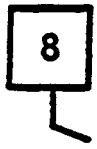
Armored vehicle laying bridge (AVLB)

7. **Maneuver Control Measures**.

Checkpoint. Used to control the movement of units or to establish . points at which units must report to higher HQ. Numbered randomly.

APPENDIX A

Contact Point. Normally used in the offense or while moving. Need not be numbered sequentially.



Coordinating point. Normally used along lateral boundaries in the defense, or while stationary.

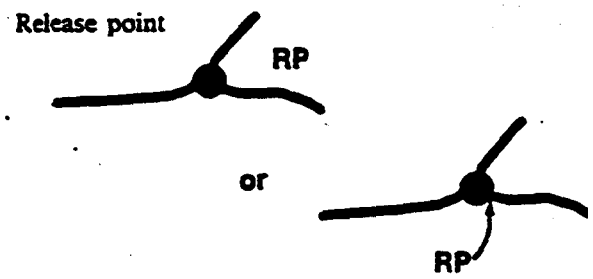
Linkup Point. Occupied by the stationary force in a linkup operation.

Passage point. Actual point for unit to pass through in passage of lines. Should be unoccupied area between elements.

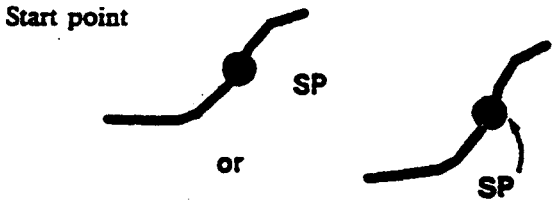
Rally point. Commonly used during patrols at small-unit level. Numbers need not be sequential.

Release point. Letters RP to the right of the dot. For clarity, RP may be placed elsewhere with as arrow to indicate the dot.

APPENDIX A



Start point. Letters SP to the right of the dot. For clarity, SP may be placed elsewhere with as arrow to the dot.

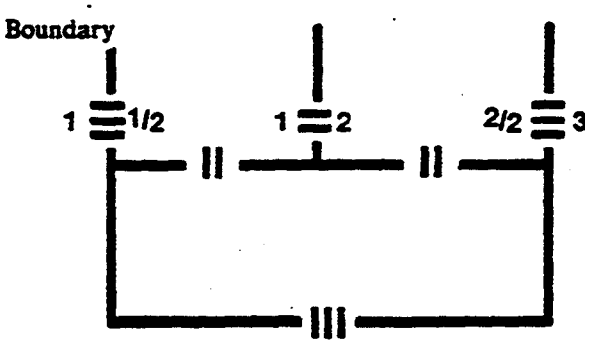


---

b. Lines

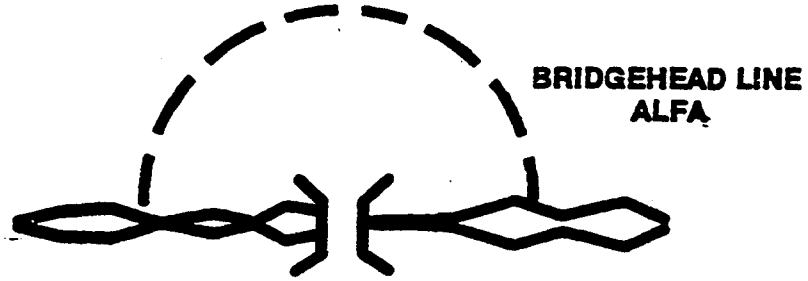
Boundary. Lateral boundaries are lines with a size indicator placed on the boundary to show the size and designation of the highest echelons that have the boundary in common. If the units are of unequal size, the sire indicator of the larger unit is shown and the designation of the smaller unit is given completely. A unit's area of responsibility attends to the forward and rearward limits .of its lateral boundaries.

When used, a rear boundary *shows the size* indicator of the smaller or subordinate unit rather than the larger unit of which it is a part. Rear boundaries normally are established only for battalions and larger:



Bridgehead line. .On the enemy side of the obstacle. Should be at sufficiently extended distance to prevent enemy direct fire and observation of the crossing site:

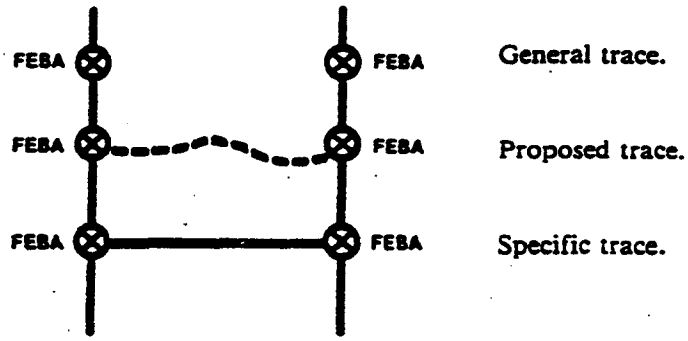
APPENDIX A



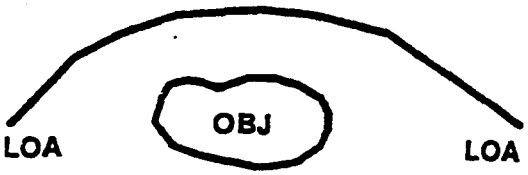
Final coordination line. Normally used at company level and below:

Force beachhead line. Delineates the area that must be seized, occupied controlled by the landing force. Not meant to restrict maneuver:

Forward edge of the battle area. Coordinating points on lateral boundaries:

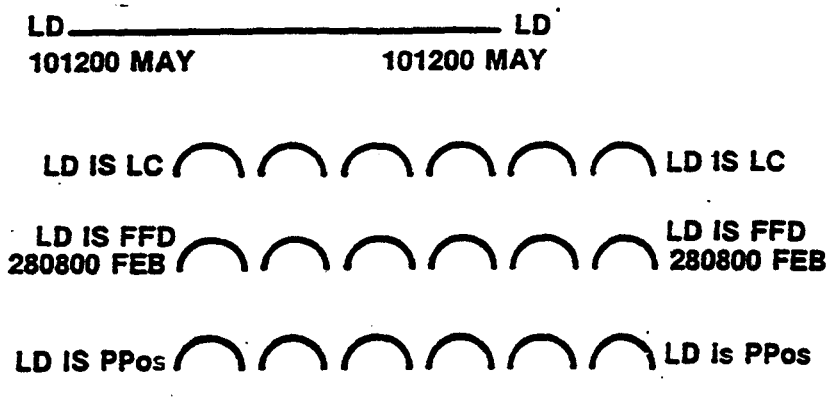


Limit of advance. Commonly used during night attacks or other circumstances when restriction of movement is necessary for safety or control:



APPENDIX A

Line of departure. The LD may be designated as a specified line, the line of contact, the line of forward friendly positions, or as the present friendly positions at the time of attack:

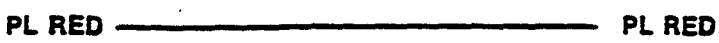


Light line

Line of contact. May show the trace of forward friendly and/or enemy dispositions. Dots represent lightly held or patrolled areas:

Line of contact

Phase line. Identified by code name. Used to coordinate the movement of units. Units report to HHQ We arrival of leading elements at the phase line (PL) but are not required to halt at or occupy the PL unless instructed. Located on identifiable terrain.

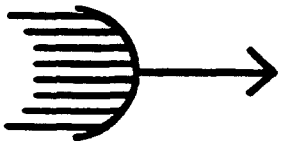


Probable line of deployment

Used in a night attack.

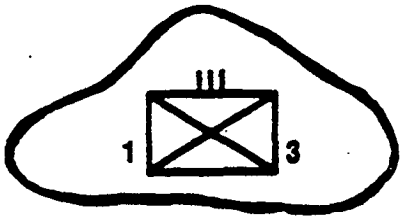
c. Areas

Ambush



Point of arrow at the ambush location. Hash marks indicate the orientation of the ambush.

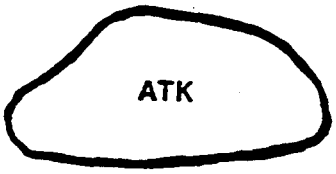
Assembly area



Assault position

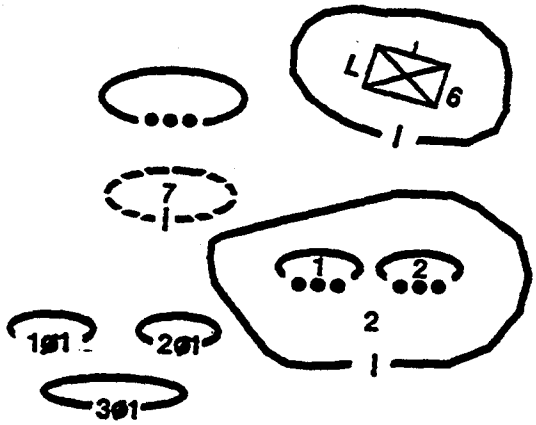
Used for final preparations for the assault. Should offer cover and concealment. The attacking force should spend as little time as possible in the assault position. May include a letter, number, unit, or code name designator.

Attack position



APPENDIX A

Battle position

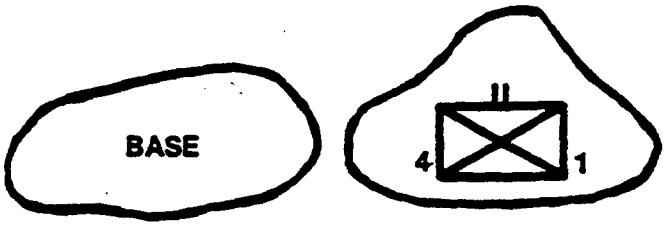


Used in defense or delaying action. Appropriate size indicator located at rear of position. Unit symbol may be included within the position. Battle positions may be identified by number.

Within a battle position (BP), subordinate units may be assigned smaller BP's. For example, within company BP 2 platoons may occupy BP 2-1 and BP 2-2.

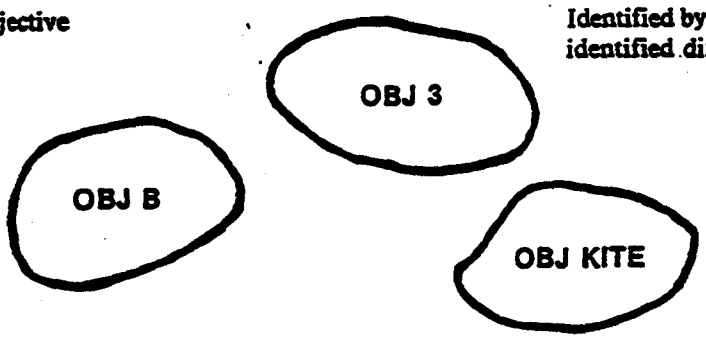
Combat base

A secure location in a forward area from which operations are projected and supported. Normally occupied by units not smaller than battalions.



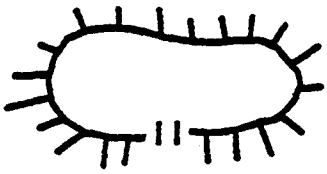
Objective

Identified by number, letter, or name. Objectives are identified differently at successive echelons.



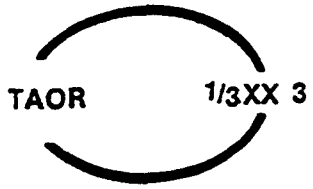
Strongpoint

May have size indicator or unique designation.



APPENDIX A

Tactical area of responsibility



An area assigned, normally to a battalion or larger force, for control of forces and coordination of support.

---

d. Movement, Activity, and Directional Measures

Attack arrowhead

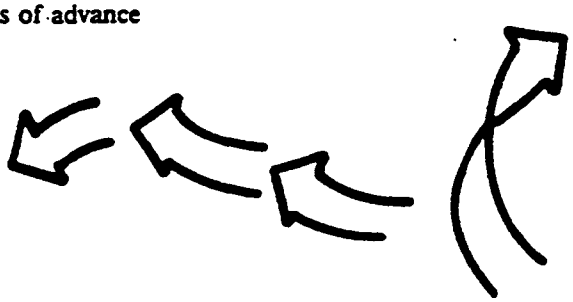
Single arrowhead is the general symbol indicating an attack.

Main attack.

Supporting attack.

Feint.

Axis of advance

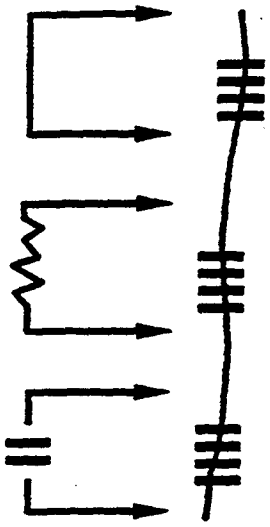


Twisted axis indicates helicopterborne movement. Symbol may be repeated at intervals to show axis of movement.

APPENDIX A

Bypass

Shown as a bracket enclosing a portion of a route that must be bypassed and indicating the trafficability of that portion.

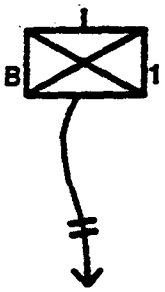


Bypass easy.

Bypass difficult.

Bypass impossible.

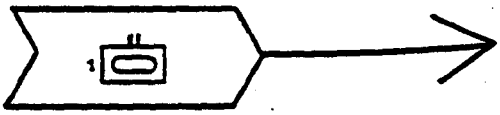
Delaying action



Arrow shows direction of movement. Cross bars do not denote any actual positions but are always placed near the arrowhead.

Direction of attack

Follow and support



Used to indicate a unit that will follow in trace of another unit and will be prepared to support, reinforce, or assume the mission of the advance unit. Unit identification included as necessary.

Infiltration lane

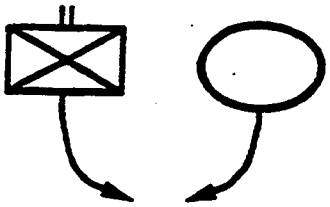
Unit designation should be located within the lane. If appropriate, date-time group may be included.

INFILTRATION 1/7

Reconnaissance or security

When used to delineate an actual route, the symbol should follow the center of the route. Often used as a general mission indicator. The security mission performed may be indicated beneath the unit symbol.

Withdrawal Route



8. Fire Support Coordination Measures.

a. Lines.

Coordinated fire line (CFL)

Does not have to be easily recognizable on the ground, but is especially important for firing unit and FSC maps.

CFL (1st MAR) CFL (1st MAR)

022130Z 022130Z

Fire support coordination line

Must be easily recognizable on the ground, especially from the air.

FSCL (II MAF) FSCL (II MAF)

022130Z 022130Z

APPENDIX A

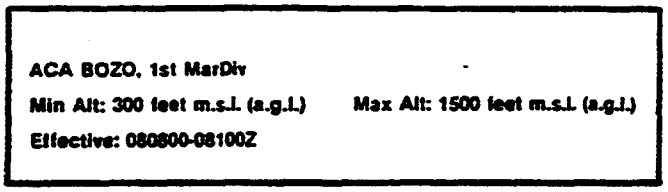
Restrictive fire line (RFL)

In red to ensure maximum visibility to all maneuver and fire support unit commanders. Must be easily recognizable on the ground to all units.

---

b. Areas

Airspace coordination area (ACA)



In red on firing unit and FSC maps. Any geometric shape can be used to describe the lateral boundaries. Minimum and maximum altitudes are expressed either as mean sea level (m.s.l.)-or above ground level (a.g.l.).

Free fire area (FFA)

Always includes the date-time groups of the commencement and termination of FFA status.

No fire area (NFA)

In red. Effective date-time groups important.

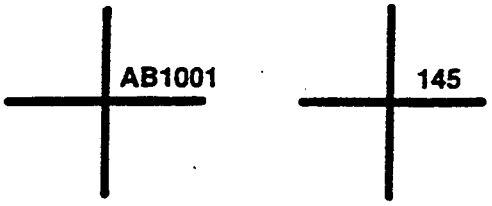
Restrictive fire area (RFA)

In red. Inclusion of establishing authority is important for possible clarification or modification requests.

APPENDIX A

c. Targets

Point target/target reference point



Used for targets that can be covered by the normal sheaf of a firing unit. Center of cross is the center of the target. Numbered sequentially from an assigned block.

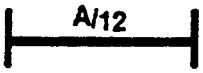
Linear target

Used to fully cover a wide or long target. Long axis of the target is covered by the line, numbered like point targets.

Area targets

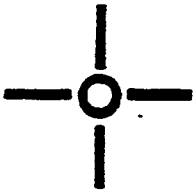
May be rectangular, circular, or irregular, but must be limited in size; otherwise they are more appropriately assigned a group of targets.

Final protective fire (FPF)



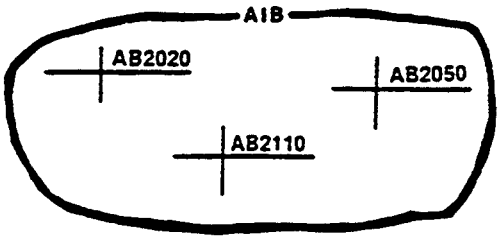
Similar in appearance to linear targets, but identified by firing unit on maneuver unit overlays, by target number on fire support overlays.

Special targets



Nuclear or chemical munitions.

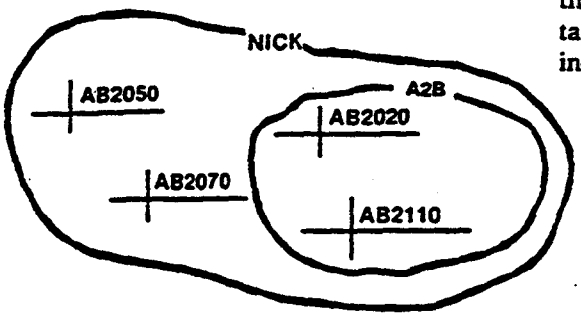
Group of targets



All targets contained in group are fired simultaneously, but not necessarily by the same unit. Can contain any combination of other types of targets (point, linear, group, etc.) except series. Given alphanumeric designator.

APPENDIX A

Series of targets

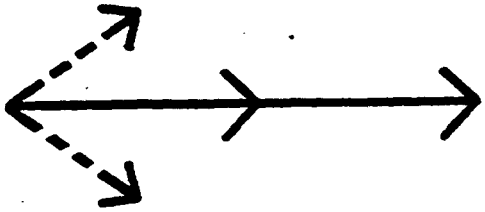


Targets fired in numerical order within the series, timing specified on scheduling worksheet. May contain other series, groups, or any combination of individual targets. Designated by code name.

d. Fire Planning

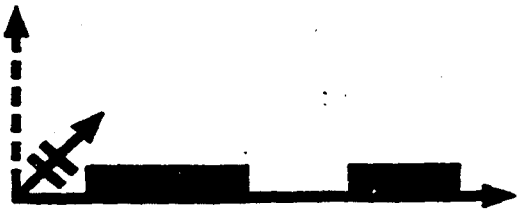
Direction of fire

Always represented by a solid arrow. The weapon symbol is placed midway along the shaft of the arrow in order to avoid confusion with similar weapon symbols. Often combined with sector of fire symbols. A principal direction of fire (PDF) is assigned to crew-served weapons in the defense when no final protective line can be assigned.



PDF with sectors of fire.

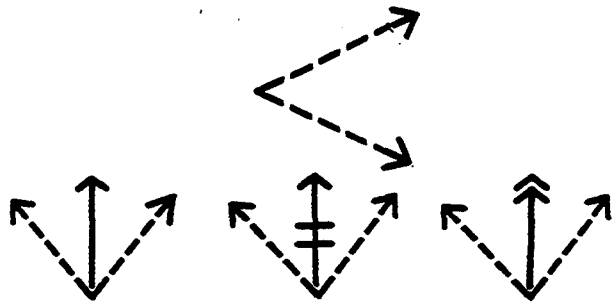
Final protective line (FPL)



A modified direction of fire line that designates grazing fire with heavy shading and dead space with open spaces between shaded areas. The FPL is one of the lateral limits of fire and the other limit is denoted like other sectors of fire. If more than one weapon is assigned the same FPL, the number of weapons is noted within the angle of the sector of fire.

APPENDIX A

Sector of Fire



Graphically represents the left and right lateral limits assigned to crew—served weapons in stationary positions. Use broken lines for both current and planned sectors of fire.

Weapon symbols are normally included with the sector of fire symbol.

---

9. **Aviation Symbols**. A combination of standard symbols and various letter designations is used to depict aviation units. A is used for all units other than helicopter. A is used for units organic to a helicopter group.

a. Function Designation. A letter system identifies aircraft squadrons by function. All other units are identified by an abbreviated title that indicates organization and function. The following is used to identify aircraft squadrons:

(1) First Letter.

V - Fixed-wing.
H - Helicopter.

(2) Second Letter.

M - Marine.

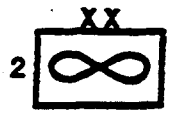
(3) Third and Fourth Letters.

A - Attack.
(AW) - All weather.
F - Fighter.
G - In-flight refueling.
H - Heavy helicopter.
L - Light helicopter.
M - Medium helicopter.
O - Observation.
P - Photo reconnaissance.
Q - Electronic warfare.
R - Transport.

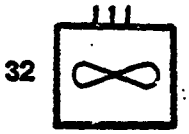
APPENDIX A

b. Units.

2d Marine Air Wing:

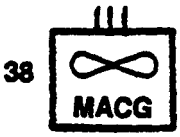


Marine Aircraft Group 32:

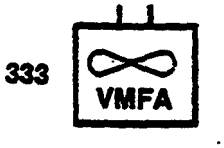


Marine Aircraft Group 16:

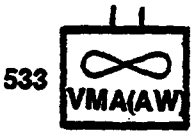
Marine Air Control Group 38:



Marine Fighter/Attack Squadron 333:

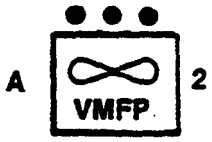


Marine Attack (All Weather) 533:

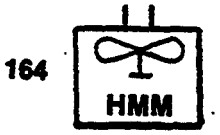


APPENDIX A

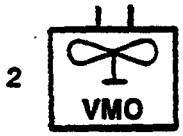
Det., Marine Tactical Reconnaissance Squadron:



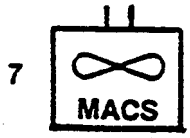
Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 164:



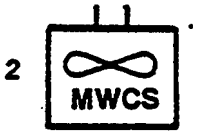
Marine Observation Squadron 2. (Note: Although it flies fined-wing aircraft, VMO belongs to a helicopter group.)



Marine Air Control Squadron 7:



Marine Wing Communications Squadron 2:



APPENDIX A

c. Aircraft:

(1) Fixed-wing.

Fighter:

Attack/bomber:

Observation/reconnaissance:

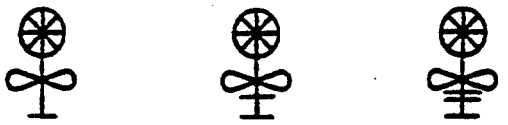
Transport:

---

(2) Helicopter.

Attack:

Transport:



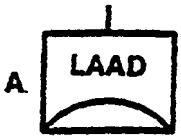
Light Medium Heavy

---

d. Air Defense.

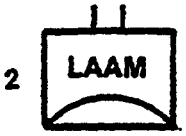
(1) Units.

Low altitude air defense battery:



APPENDIX A

Light antiaircraft missile battalion:



---

(2) Weapons.

Air defense gun:

Surface-to-air missile:

---

10. Combat Service Support Symbols

a. Role Indicators.

General supply (All losses). Used when the specific nature of the installation is not known:

Class I. Subsistence items:

Class II. Clothing, individual equipment, tentage, organization and tool sets:

APPENDIX A

Class III. Petroleum, oil and lubricants:

Class IV. Construction:

Class V. Ammunition:

Class VI. Personal demand:

Class VII. Major end items:

Class VIII. Medical materiel:

Class IX. Repair parts:

APPENDIX A

Class X. Materiel to support nonmilitary programs:

Multiple classes (but not all). List all available classes by number below the general (All Classes) symbol.

---

b. Collecting Points. Size indicator and unique designation can be added as necessary.

Civilian

Graves registration

Graves registration

Salvage

Stragglers

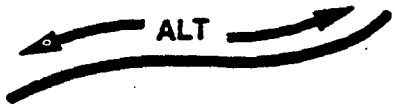
---

c. Miscellaneous Symbols. There may be more than one *MSR* in a unit's zone. MSR's can be identified by code names or numbers when necessary:

Main supply route

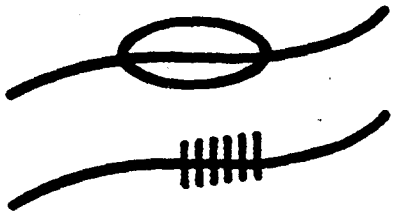
One-way traffic

Two-way traffic



Alternating two-way traffic

APPENDIX A



Turn-around area

Route impassable

Below symbol, indicates personnel, equipment, or both:

Decontamination station

Indicates unit as appropriate. CLR designates facility as a clearing station:

Hospital or aid station

Vehicle park

Traffic control point

Indicates potability or condition as necessary:

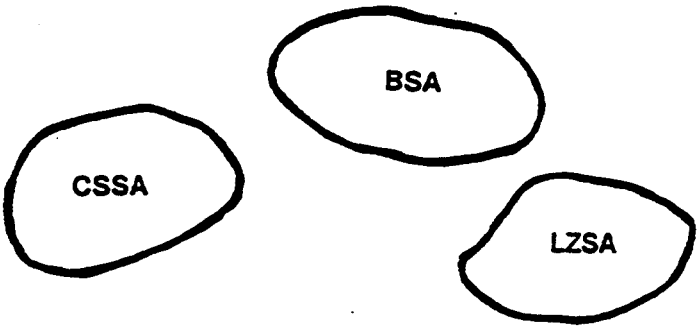
Water

---

d. Areas. Combat service support area. Encompasses entire area and

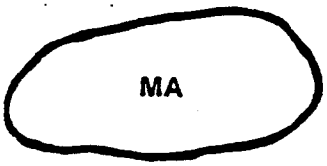
APPENDIX A

CSSA may contain collection and supply point symbols. Accurate depiction is especially important for planning the defense of the area. Unit designation is included as necessary. May be more specifically identified as a beach support area or a landing zone support area.



Large-scale logistical operations, especially dealing with maritime pre-positioned materiel:

Marshalling area



---

11. Obstacles and Miscellaneous.

a. Obstacles. Mine Note: each symbol denotes the location of an individual mine:

Abatis

Antitank ditch

Teeth point toward enemy. Rectangle around symbol used only when not drawn to scale in actual location.

Under construction.

Completed

Boobytrap

Fortified line

APPENDIX A

Mine. Note: Each symbol represents the location of an individual mine.

Antipersonnel (APERS) mine.

Antitank mine.

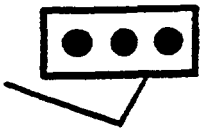
Mine of unspecified or unknown type.

APERS mine with a tripwire attached.

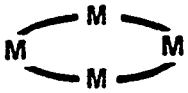
Scatterable antipersonnel minefield with self-destruct date-time group. Scatterable mines are denoted with an S above the appropriate symbol.

APERS minefield. Note: when drawn to scale, the outline of the minefield must be accurate, but the location of specific mines is necessary only for the detailed minefield map.

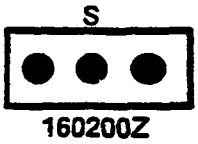
Arrow used to indicate exact location.



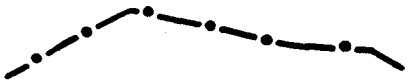
Nuisance minefield.



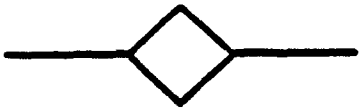
Scatterable antitank minefield with date-time group of self-destruct time.



Protective minefield.

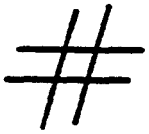


Nonexplosive antitank barrier

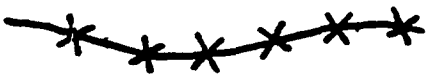


Obstacle line

Road block
(In Place)



Wire



Barbed Wire

Trip Wire

---

b. Miscellaneous.

APPENDIX A

Phony

Always used in conjunction with another symbol.

Bridge or gap

Ferry

Ford

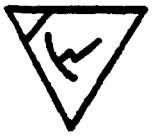
Lane

Radio relay

Sensors

Microphone line

Radar

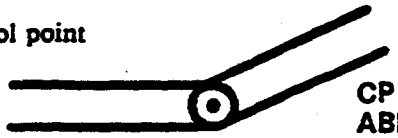


Ground surveillance radar

Counterbattery radar

Air defense radar

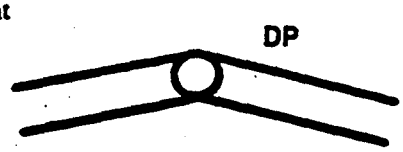
Control point



Identified by a code name.

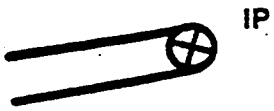
APPENDIX A

Departure point



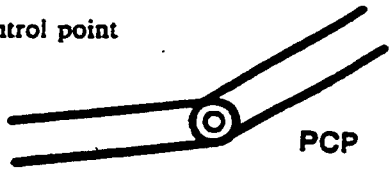
Labelled DP.

Initial point



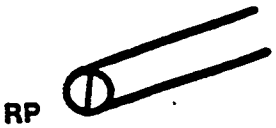
A cross enclosed in a circle labelled IP located at the landward end of a helicopter lane.

Penetration control point



Concentric circles labelled PCP centered over the point where the helicopter lane crosses a coastline.

Rendezvous point



Split circle labelled RP located at the seaward end of a helicopter lane.

Forward arming and refueling point

Forward logistic support area established and run by an aviation commander.

Helicopter lane

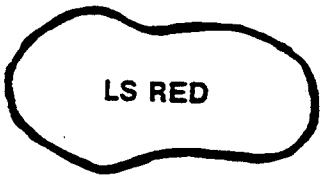
Solid lines depict lateral limits. Assigned code names. Connected by control points.

Landing/pickup zone

General area for helicopter landing or pickup; code named after species of bird.

APPENDIX A

Landing/pickup site



Specific site for helicopter landing within a landing zone, named after colors.

---

13. <u>Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Symbols</u>:

Chemically (G) contaminated area:

(In yellow)

Biologically (BIO) contaminated area:

(In yellow)

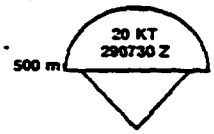
Radioactive area:

Intensity in rad/hr may be shown inside the triangular signs of the iso-intensity curve. BF is time beginning fallout; EF is time end of fallout.

Planned nuclear fire: (Height of burst *is meters)* (Target number)

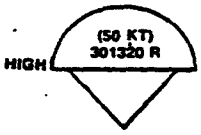
(Firing unit and DTG to be executed) (Weapon type and yield)

Nuclear detonation:

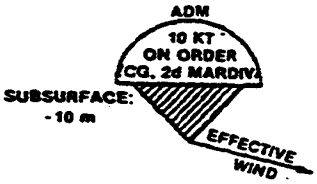


Exact information shown when possible; foot of stem at ground zero.

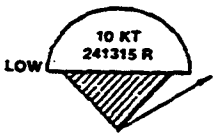
Proposed but not scheduled.



Yield in brackets when not accurately known. Approximate height shown when not accurately known.



(In green) ADM above the symbol is used to denote atomic demolition munition. For a planned, friendly ADM, the release authority is shown in place of the DTG.



Fallout producing (stem shaded) and prevailing wind shown.

APPENDIX A

Toxic chemical minefield: Type of agent shown outside of symbol

---

Mixed AT, AP, and toxic chemical mines:

Tripwire and boobytrap symbols added as needed.

---

14. **Description of Locations, Areas, and Boundaries**.

a. Use of-Maps

(1) In order to avoid confusion in the designation of place names when there are various editions of a map relating to the same area, the following will be shown at the top of the document:

(a) Map series number (and country or geographic area, if required).

(b) Sheet number (and name, if required).

(c) Edition.

(d) Scale (if required).

(2) This information can be shown as indicated in the following examples:

Map Series Number	M 501 Europe
Sheet	NM 32-1 (ESSEN)
Edition	I-DMG
Scale	1:250,000

b. Security. The location of headquarters, units, dumps, and other installations wi1l only be mentioned in a communication or document if this communication or document can be transmitted to the addresses by a method ensuring the appropriate security. Locations of headquarters, units, dumps, and other installations will not be included in addresses unless necessary to ensure correct delivery.

c. Names of Places.

(1) Names of places will be written in block capitals exactly as spelled on the maps in use. The addition of a grid reference will almost always be necessary. In this case, six figure grid references must not be used when four figures are sufficient. In certain areas, for which mapping material does not allow the use of coordinates, latitude or longitude designations will be used instead.

(2) When a grid reference code is used, the names of places which it indicates must not be shown in clear in the same message.

d. Locations and Points on the Ground

(1) Locations and points on the ground may be described either:

(a) By grid coordinates.

(b) By giving the distance and direction from a simple reference point; eg., Crossroads 1,000 yards (or 1,000 meters) southwest of church tower of NAPIERVILLE (square 623.

(2) In written orders and reports, grid coordinates will always be used the first time the designations, of a point or location is given. Thereafter, coordinate will be gives only whey such repetition ensures greater clarity. .

e. Direction. A direction can be indicated either by two points or by angular measurement reading clockwise from a reference direction. In the latter case, directions will be given as from true, magnetic, or grid north and the type used will always be specified. The unit of angular measurement used; ie., mils or degrees, is normally specified, but may be omitted when there is no probability of misunderstanding.

f. Roads. Tracks, and Railways.

(1) Roads, tracks, and railways will be described by the names of places located on them. Care must be taken to name enough places to make sure that the right road can be identified. The word road, track or railway will proceed, not follow, the place names; eg., road LAPRAIRIE-DELSON, not LAPRAIRIE-DELSON road.

(2) When movement is involved, the route will be designated by a sequence of points of the rotor named in the direction of movement. When no movement is involved, the sequence of points named will be from left to right or rear to front, assuming that the person designating the route is facing the enemy. Cardinal points may be added if required.

g. Boundaries. Boundaries will be dated by easily distinguishable terrain feature in the sequence in *which* they occur on the ground. They will be described from rear to front during an advance and from front to rear in defense and withdrawal. If generally parallel to the front; eg., rear boundaries, they will be described from left to right, facing the enemy. Cardinal points may be added if required.

h. Describing Boundaries. When describing boundaries between units and formations, the words inclusive or exclusive will be used. These words should be used before the place to which the refer. The description of a

boundary will state specifically to which unit or formation an area or a point is inclusive or exclusive. For example:

1st and 2nd battalion are advancing together. The inter-battalion boundary will, therefore, be described from rear to front. The most concise way of listing the various references comprising the boundary is to link them with one of the units/formations concerned, thus:

Boundary(ies)	exclusive LAPRAIRlE	6134
1st Battalion	exclusive Crossroads	621352
	inclusive Wood	624366
	exclusive Road LAPRAIRIE-DELSON	5238

i. Areas. An area will normally be described by taking the northernmost polar first and giving the remaining points in clockwise order.

j. Positions. Positions will be described from left to right and front to rear facing the enemy. To avoid confusion, cardinal points may be used to describe flanks, rather than right or left.

15. SAMPLE OVERLAYS

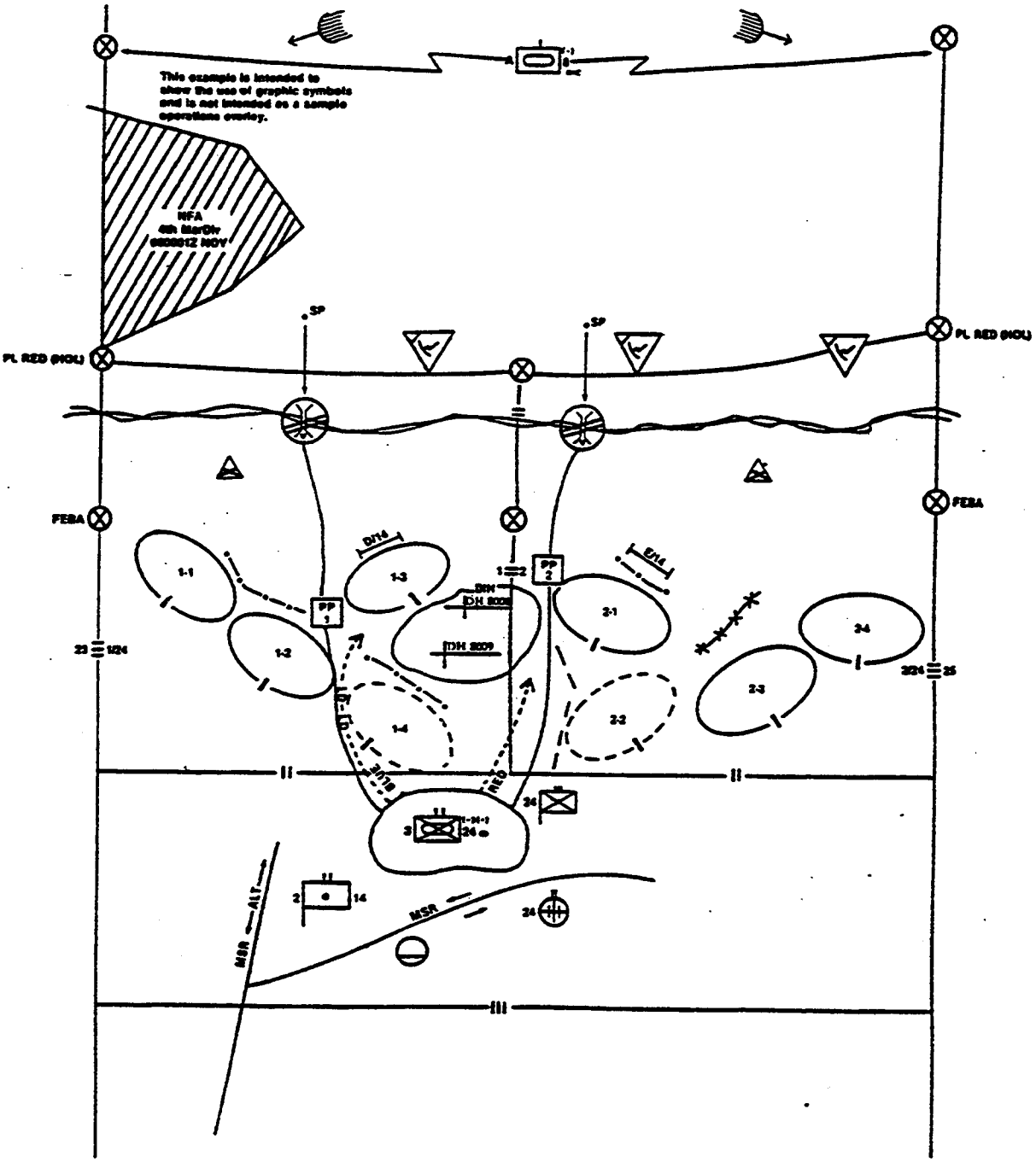
a. Sample Overlay for an Attack.

b. Sample Overlay for a Defense.

c. Sample Overlay for a Withdrawal.

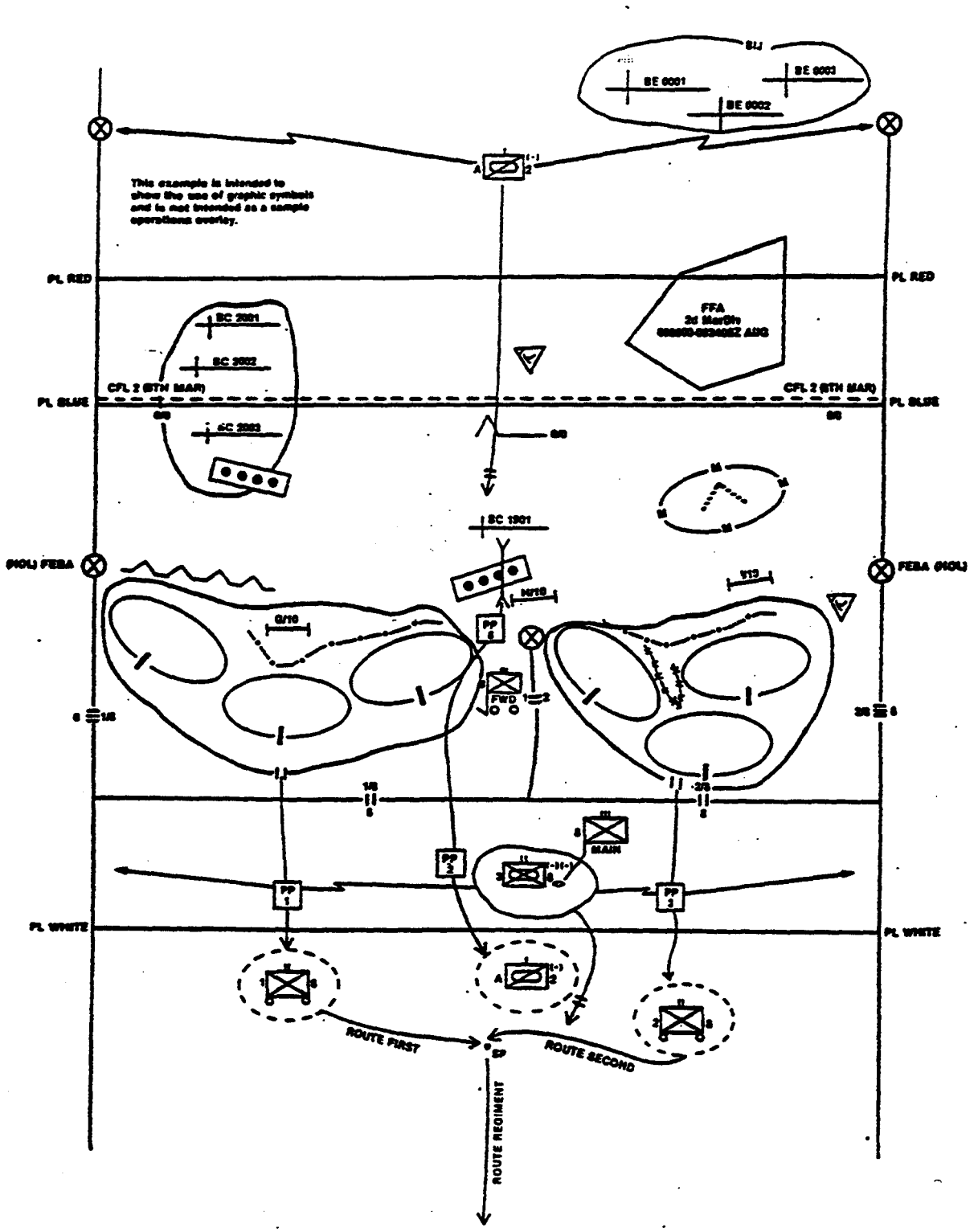
APPENDIX A

Sample Overlay for a Defense



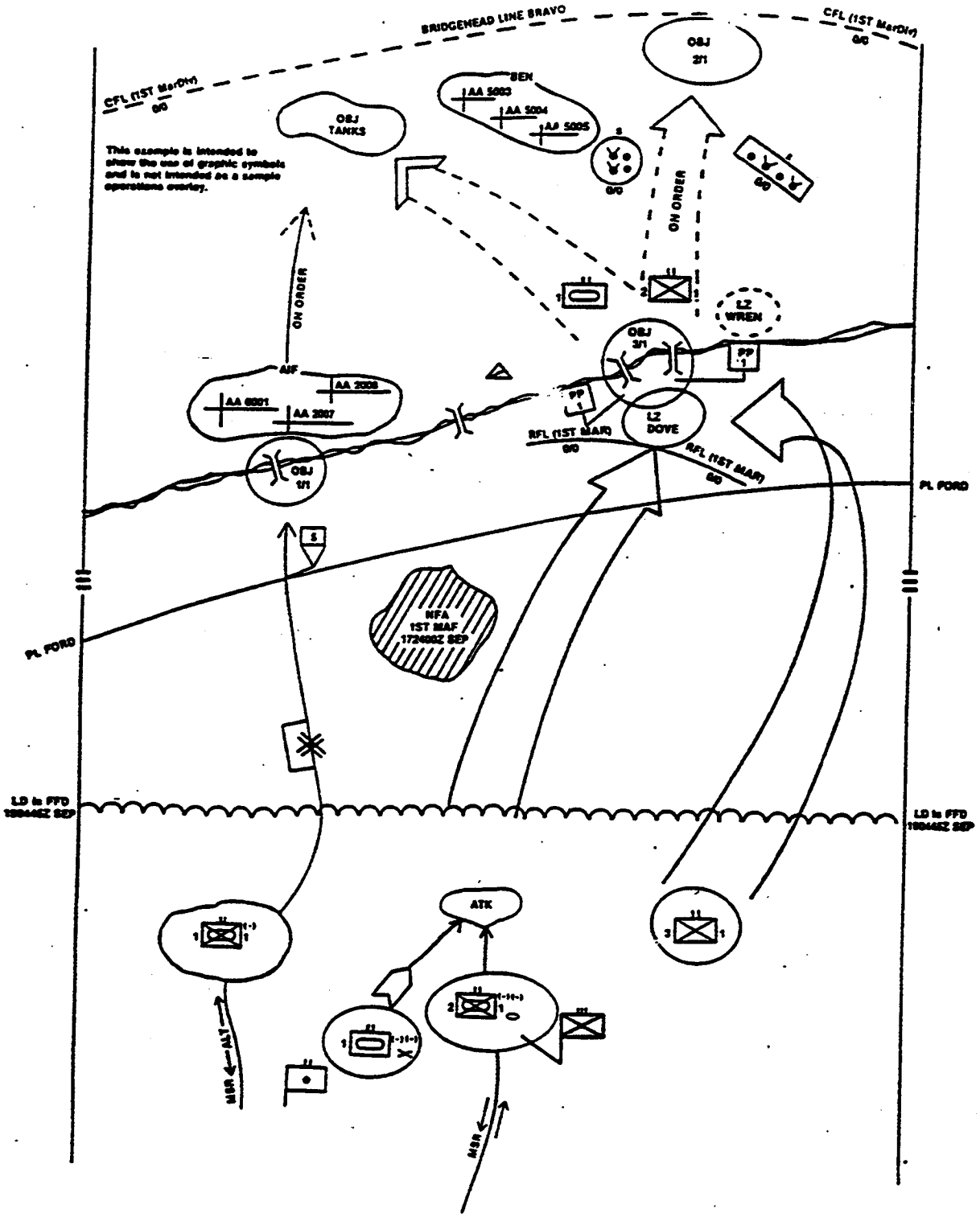
APPENDIX A

Sample Overlay for a Withdrawal



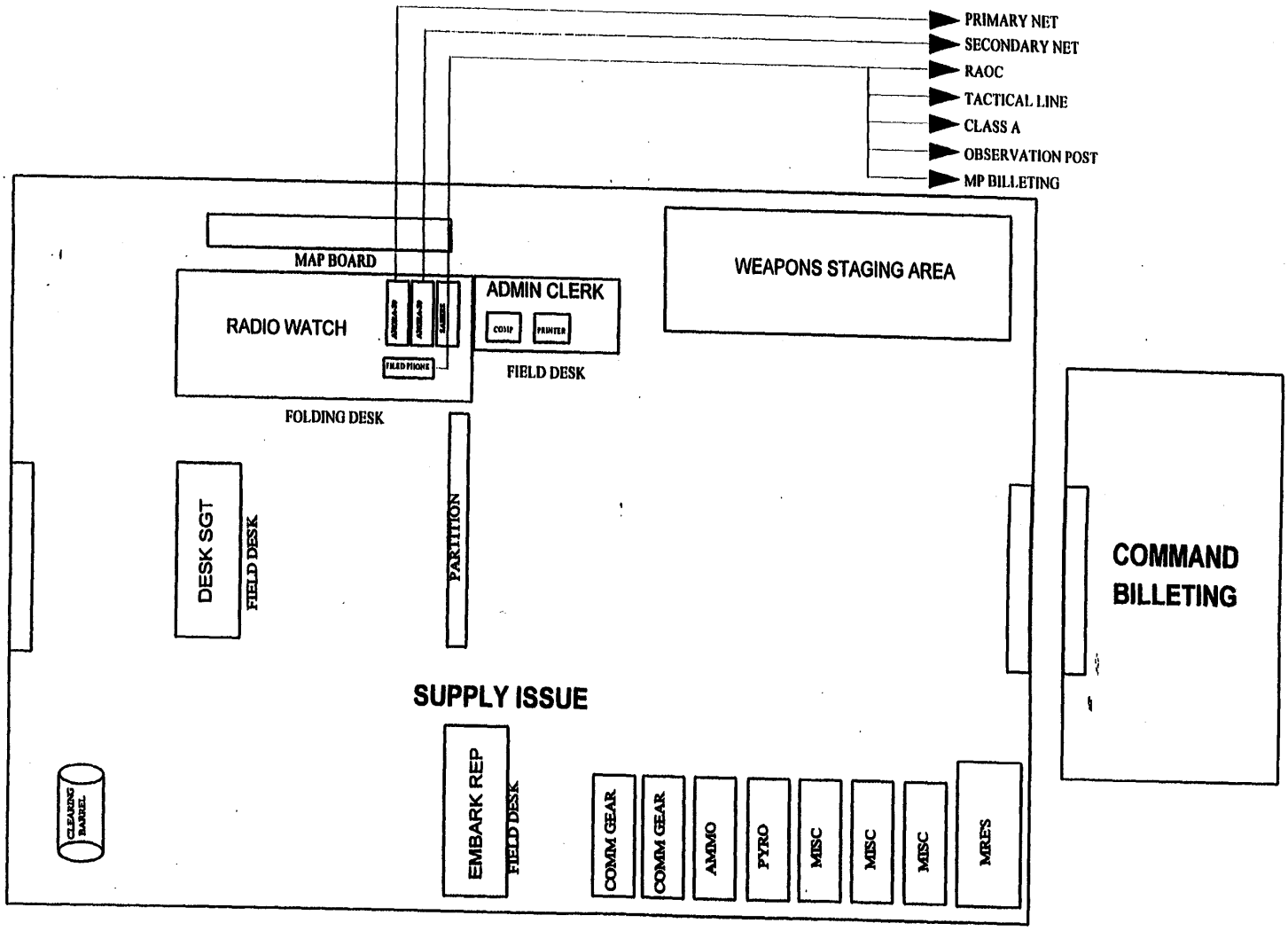
APPENDIX A

Sample Overlay for an Attack



APPENDIX A

APPENDIX B


PRIMARY NET
SECONDARY NET
RAOC
TACTICAL LINE
CLASS A
OBSERVATION POST
MP BILLETING
MAP BOARD
RADIO WATCH
ADMIN CLERK
COMP
PRINTER
FIELD DESK
FOLDING DESK
WEAPONS STAGING AREA
DESK SGT
FIELD DESK
PARTITION
COMMAND BILLETING
SUPPLY ISSUE
EMBARK REP
FIELD DESK
COMM GEAR
COMM GEAR
AMMO
PYRO
MISC
MISC
MISC
MRES

APPENDIX C

INDIVIDUAL'S ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF SPECIFIC INSTRUCTIONS FOR ARMED SECURTITY AND LAW ENFORCEMENT PERSONNEL REGARDING THE USE OF FORCE

_____	_____	_____	_____
Print Name (Last, First, MI)	Rank	SSN	Date

Acknowledge your understanding of each statement by placing your initials in the space provided.

1. **Circumstances for which Deadly Force is Authorized**. I am justified in using the boa with which I am armed to apply deadly force only under conditions of extreme necessity, when all other means have failed or can not be reasonably employed and only as a last resort. If such is the cast, I may use deadly force:

a.____ To protect myself or others if I reasonably believe that I or they arc in imminent danger of death or serious bodily harm.

b.____ To prevent acts which or the escape of those reasonably appear to me to threaten property or information designated by my Commanding Officer as vital to national security.

c.____ To prevent the actual theft or sabotage of property that is, of itself dangerous to others (i.e., explosives, weapons, ammunitions, etc.), when it appears reasonably necessary to do so.

d.____ To prevent or interrupt the commission of a serious offense involving violence which threatens death or serious bodily harm and is a continued threat to the safety of others.

e.____ To effect the apprehension or prevent the escape of an individual when *there* is probable cause to believe that he has either committed a serious offense involving violence or threatened death or serious bodily harm and is a continued threat to the safety of others.

f.____When it appears reasonably necessary to prevent the escape of a prisoner provided I have probable cause to believe that the escaping prisoner poses a threat of serious bodily harm to security/ law enforcement personnel or others.

2. **Additional Specific Instructions**.

a.____ I will obey the orders of competent authority to employ deadly force when:

(1) Provided with sufficient information to determine that the circumstances warrant the application of deadly force.

(2) There is clear identifying information on the

individual against whom deadly force is to be applied.

b.____ I will not fire my weapon if I might injure innocent bystanders, unless fired in protection of nuclear weapons.

c.____ I am prohibited from firing warning shots.

d.____ I will remove my pistol from my holster only when:

(1) The use of deadly force is imminent, or to *effect* the apprehension, of a suspect I believe to be armed or dangerous, or to gain control of a dangerous situation.

(2) Firing at the range or accomplishing other required Training.

(3) Ordered to do so by competent authority.

(4) Returning it to storage.

(5) Cleaning it in an authorized area.

e.____ I will chamber a round is my rifle or shotgun only when:

(1) The use of deadly force is imminent or to effect the apprehension of a suspect I believe to be armed or dangerous, or to gain control of a dangerous situation.

(2) Firing at the range or accomplishing other required training.

(3) Ordered to do so by competent authority.

f.____ I will point any firearm at any person, except:

(1) When confronted with a situation in which deadly force world be authorized.

(2) During on-duty reaction drills, only after I have check the firearm and it has also been ***checked by*** my supervisor to ensure that no rounds are in the weapon.

g.____ If I chamber a round in a rifle or shotgun, or remove my pistol frown the holster, proper notifications will be made and a Statement of Force form will be completed. ***I may chamber a*** round *or* remove my pistol ***from*** its holster and point my weapon at someone:

(1) If directed by or after obtaining permission ***from*** competent authority.

(2) If confronted with a situation in which deadly force would be authorized, and the situation does not allow time to ***obtain.*** permission.

h.____ When clearing a firearm, I *will* follow current policies and procedures pertaining to firearms handling, clearing and safety. I will ensure that:

(1) No weapon is cleared without a supervisor (corporal or above) present and clearing is ***accomplished only*** in the designated area (i.e., clearing barrel)

(2) When drawing a weapon from the armory/arms room, rounds will not be drawn until the weapon is property cleared.

(3) When returning a weapon to the armory/arms room, rounds will always be properly accounted for and turned in prior to clearing the weapon, unless a round has been chambered.

(4) Any violation of these policies or procedures is immediately reported to the proper authority.

i.____ I am prohibited from using a privately owned firearm or ammunition on duty.

j.____ During training exercises and testing, I will check my firearm and have it double checked by a supervisor, to ensure that no live rounds are in the weapon and that there is no magazine inserted in the weapon.

k.____ I will comply with these principles when using less-lethal weapons or techniques such as handcuffs, baton, chemical spray. Military Working Dog, motor vehicle, etc, in such a manner that could cause death or serious bodily harm.

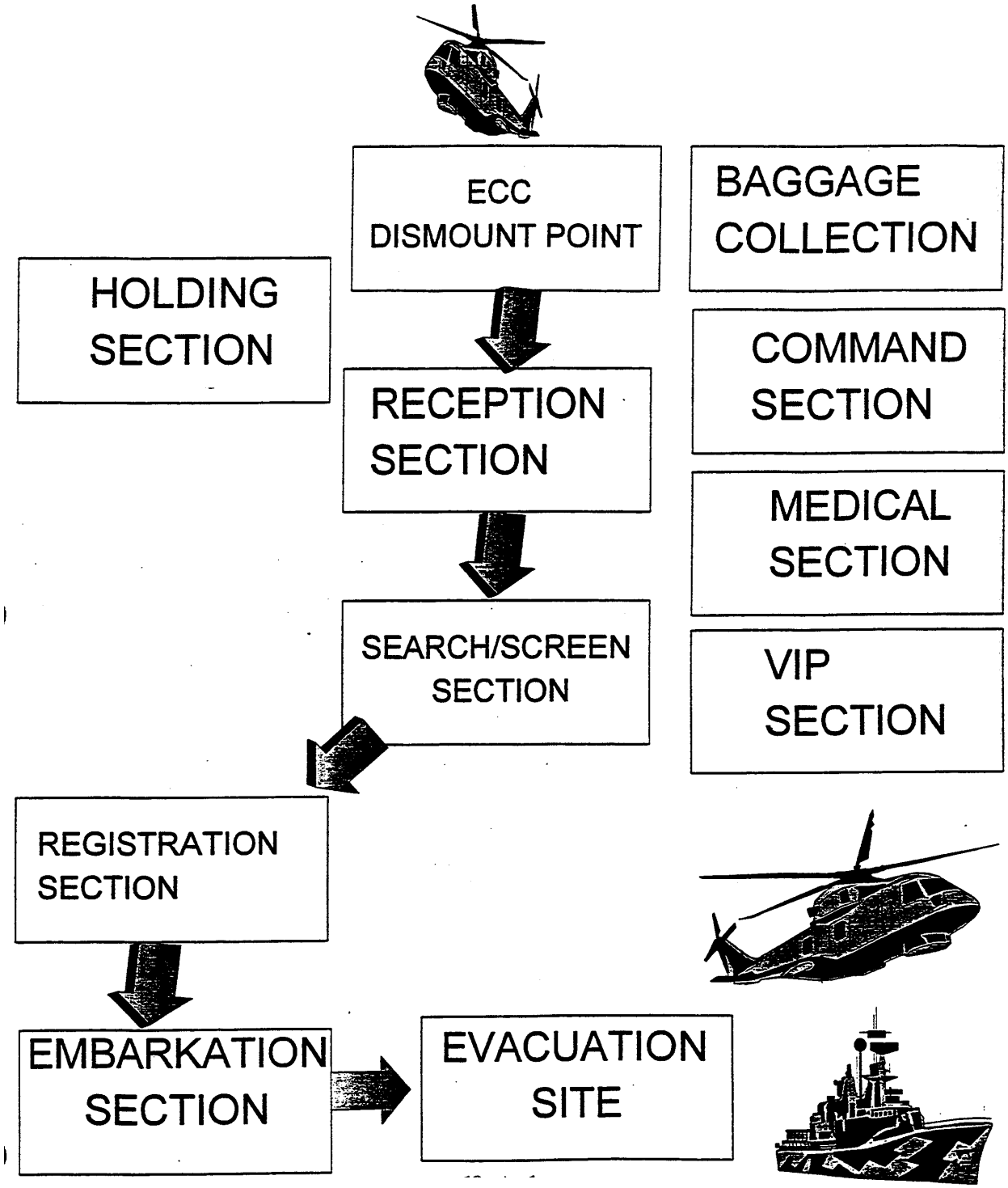
2. **Acknowledgement**. I have been instructed on the use of deadly force per MCO 5500.6E and acknowledge that I understand the basic rules for the use of *force and* weapons safety. I am aware of all areas aboard this installation that have been designated by the commanding officer as vital to national security for which the use of deadly force may be authorized.

_____ _____

Date Signature

APPENDIX D

ECC FLOW CHART.



APPENDIX D

EVACUATION DEBARKATION FORM.

Name (Family may be grouped on one sheet)	Age/Sex and Relationship	Citizenship	Room/Compartment

Occupation:_____

Name of Employer:_____

Home of Record:_____

In the event of accident/disaster, please notify (Next of Kin):
_____

Complete Name:_____

Relationship:_____

Complete Address:_____

Phone Number:_____

Injury/Disease:_____

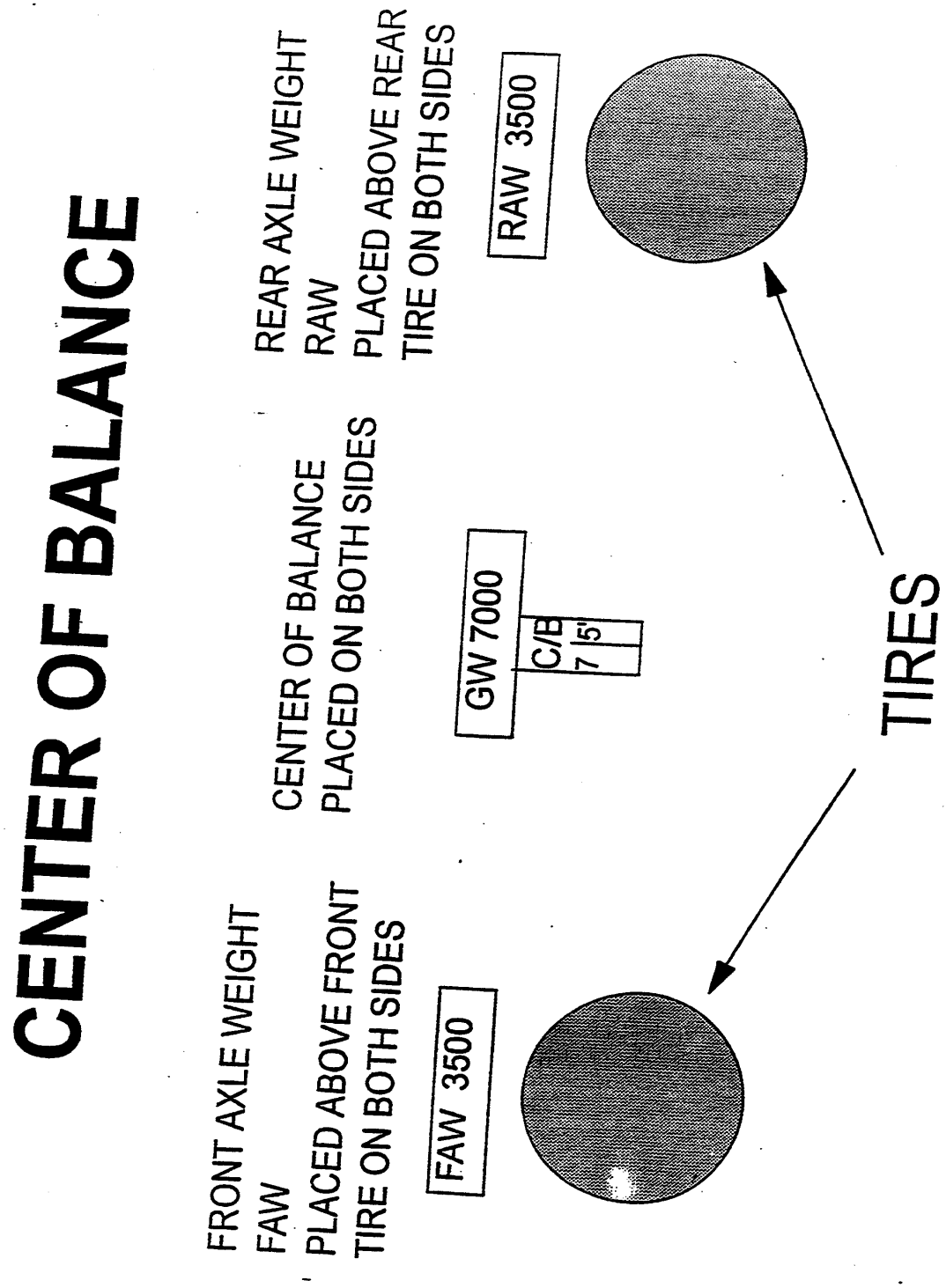
Any entry in this space will be brought to the attention of a member of the Medical Section immediately.

Original and one copy retained by Registration Section. One copy to U.S. Embassy/Consulate Officer; One copy to OIC embarkation section; and One copy to ship concerned.

APPENDIX E

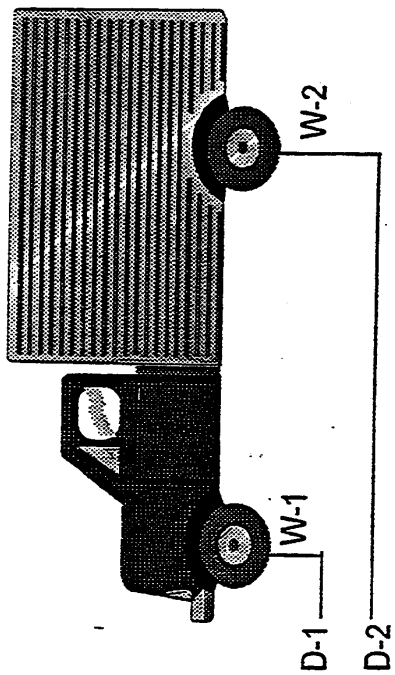
VEHICLE LOADING DIAGRAM

DETERMINING CENTER OF BALANCE.

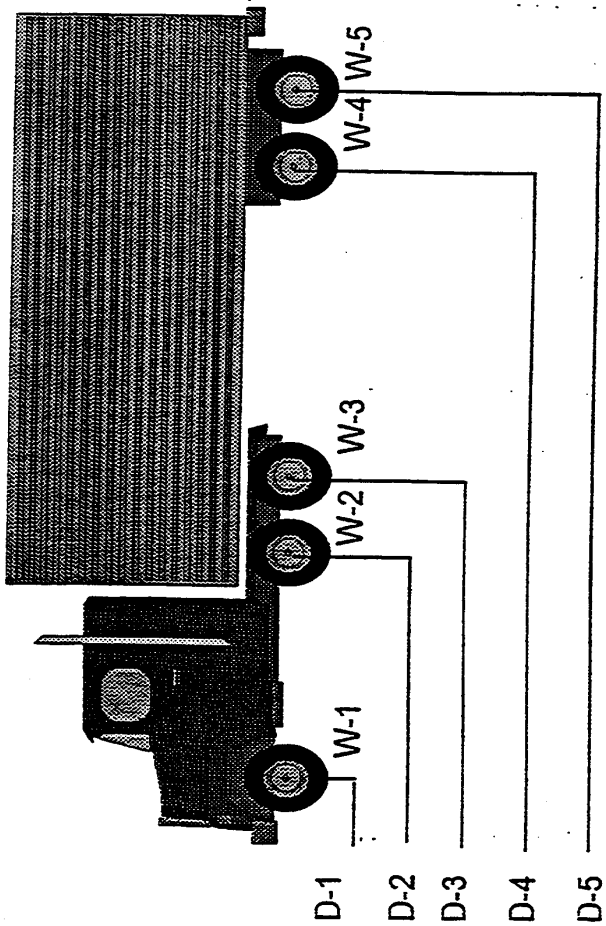


CENTER OF BALANCE

$$\frac{D1XW1 + D2XW2}{\text{GROSS WEIGHT}} = CB$$



$$\frac{D1XW1+D2XW2+D3XW3+D4XW4+D5XW5}{\text{GROSS WEIGHT}} = CB$$



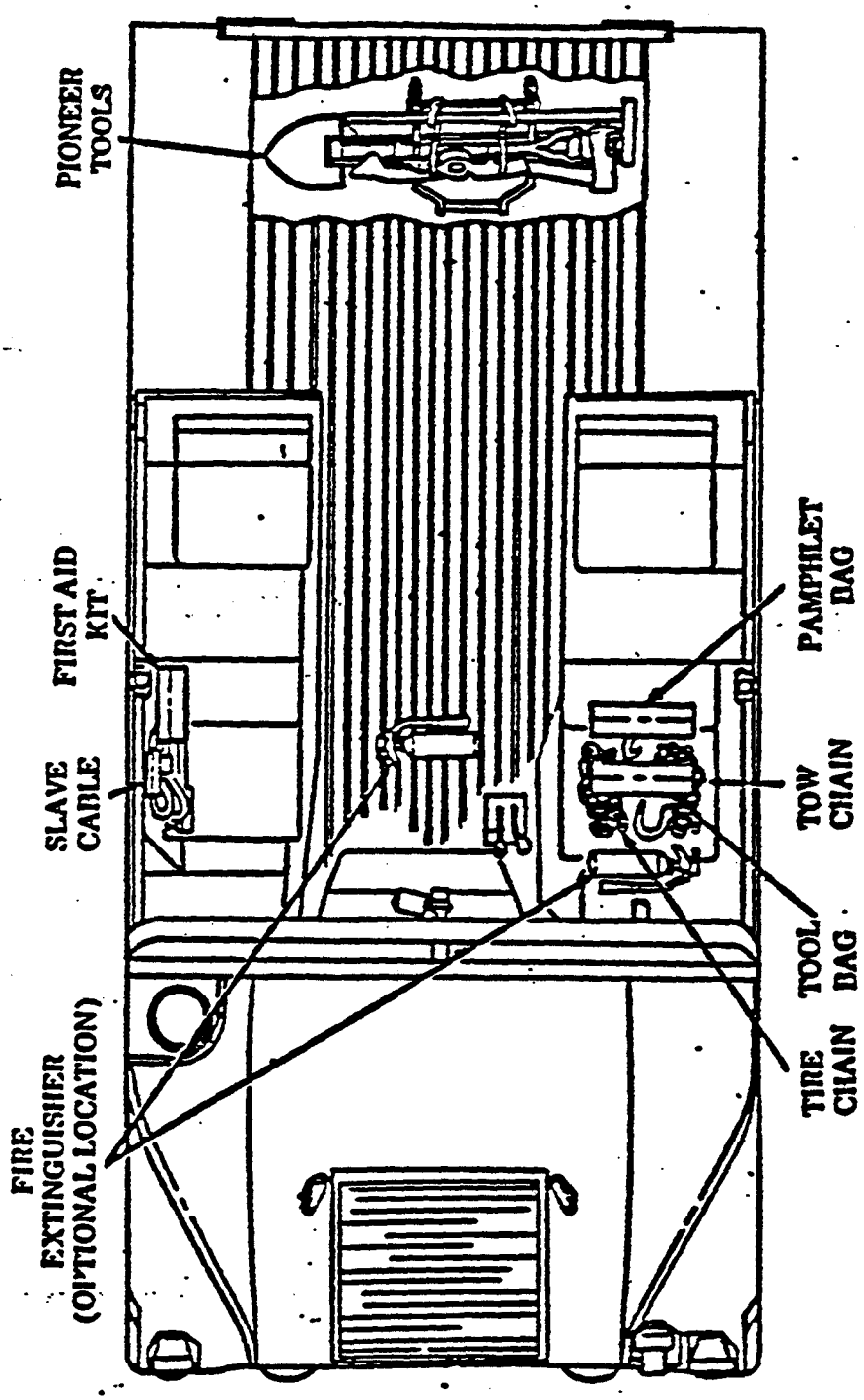
CB = INCHES FROM FRONT BUMPER

D = DISTANCE IN INCHES

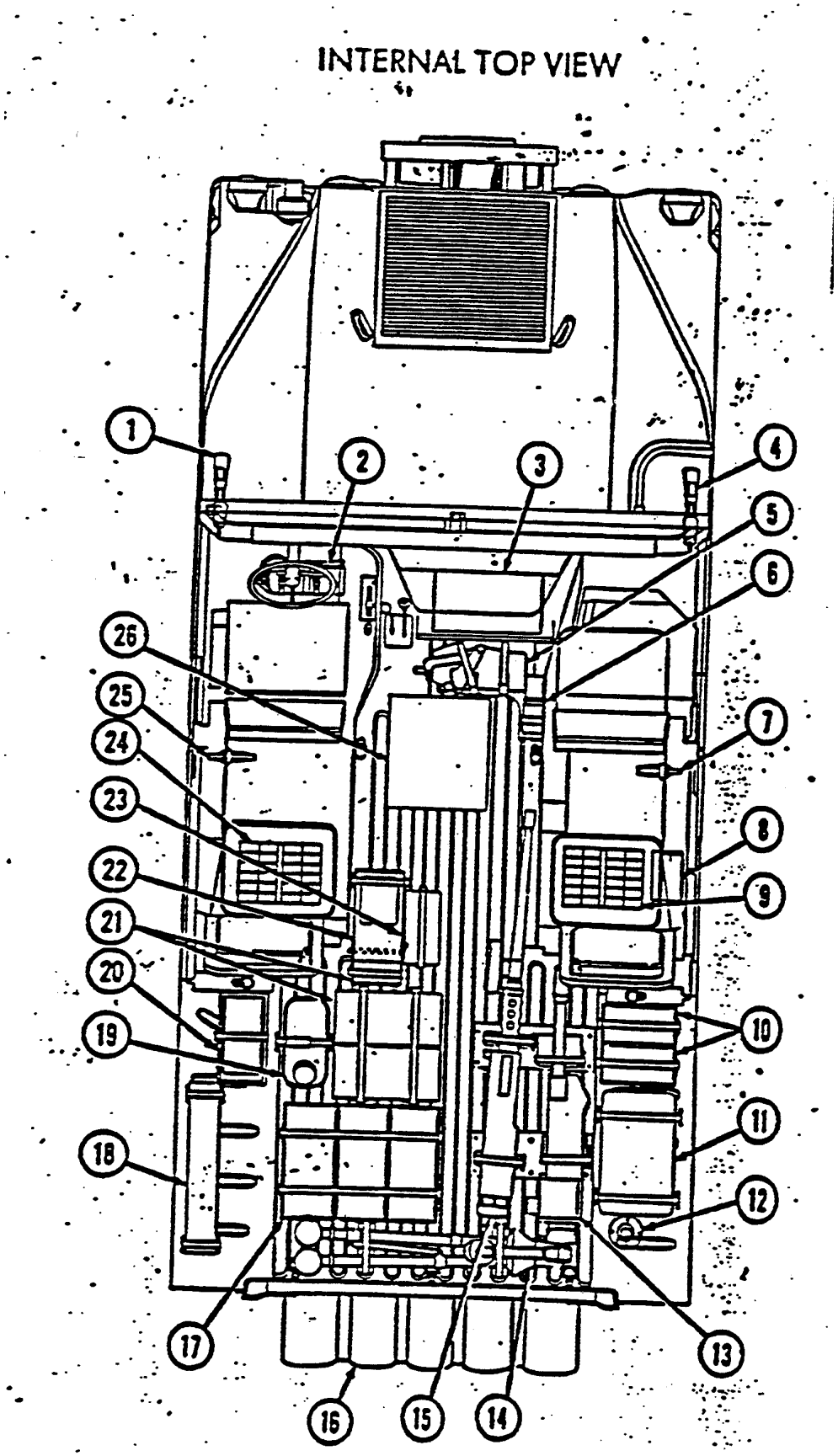
W = WEIGHT IN POUNDS

APPENDIX E

VEHICLE LOADING DIAGRAM.



APPENDIX E


INTERNAL TOP VIEW
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26

APPENDIX F

PERSCRIBED INDIVIDUAL LOAD LIST/PLATOON/VEHICLE EQUIPMENT LIST.

ARMAMENT CARRIER W/SUPPLEMENTAL
ARMOR STOWAGE PLAN

LOAD PLAN

NO. -	1TEM
1	M16A1 Rifle
2	Fire Extinguisher
3	AN/GR-39
4	M16A1 Rifle
5	MK04 M0D 4 Mount
6	Pintle Adapter
7	M16A1 Rifle
8	Tool Box
9	Combat Rations (under seat)
10	Ammunition (caliber .50)
11	Night Vision Sight
12	Radio Antenna on cargo shell
13	biK18 40 mm Grenade Launcher
14	M3 Tripod
15	M2 Caliber 50 Machine Gun
16	Cammo Screen and Support System
17	Ammunition MK19
18	Spare Barrel (M2 caliber .50) and Cleaning Kit
19	Water Can
20	Ammunition (caliber .50)
21	Ammunition (MK 19)
22	Ammo Can Mounting Tray
23	Ammunition (caliber .50)
24	Cor-t5at Rations (under seat)
25	M16Al Rifle
26	Adjustable Gun Platform

APPENDIX F

PRESCRIBED INDIVIDUAL LOAD LIST / STANDARD

1. ALICE PACK (MEDIUM) WITH SHOULDER STRAPS (FRAME OPTIONAL)
2. CARTRIDGE BELT
3. TWO (2) CANTEENS
4. ONE (1) CANTEEN CUP STOVE
5. TWO (2) CANTEEN COVERS
6. H-HARNESS
7. TWO (2) M-16 MAGAZINE POUCHES
8. BUTT PACK
9. FIRST AID KIT
10. SLEEPING BAG
11. PONCHO
12. PONCHO LINER (OPTIONAL).
13. WP BAG
14. M-16 RIFLE SLING
15. WET WEAHTHER TOP (OPTIONAL)
16. WET WEATHER BOTTOM (OPTIONAL)
17. CAMO FACE PAINT
18. BLACK LEATHER GLOVE SHELLS
19. PENCIL AND PAPER
20. ONE (1) SET OF CAMMIES WITH SOFT COVER (TO BE WORN)
21. TWO PAIRS OF EXTRA SOCKS
22. TWO PAIRS OF EXTRA SKIVVIES (TOP AND BOTTOM)
23. FLASHLIGHT WITH RED LENS
24. BUG JUICE'
25. FLAK JACKET
26. KEVLAR HELMET
27. ISO MAT
28. SHAVING GEAR
29. E-TOOL
30. TERRAIN MODEL KIT
31. CLEANING GEAR / M-16
32. SIX (6) M-16 MAGAZINES
33. ONE (1) MP BRASSARD (AS NECESSARY)

APPENDIX F

PLATOON AND VEHICLE EQUIPMENT LIST

a. PLATOON AND HQ
   1. BARBER KIT (ONE /PLATOON)
   2. LANTERN SET (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   3. M-8 CHEMICAL AGENT ALARM (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   4. M-11 CHEMICAL DECON APARATUS (ONE / VEHICLE)
   5. M256 DETECTOR KIT (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   6. CHEMICAL AGENT MONITOR (ONE / PLATOON)
   7. AN/PVS-7A NIGHT VISION GOGGLES (FOUR / PLATOON)
   8. AN/TVS-5A NIGHT VISION SIGHT, CREW SERVED (ONE /WEAPON)
   9. PUBLIC ADDRESS SET (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   10. MACHETE (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   11. MATTOCK (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)
   12. R-292 ANTENNA (ONE / PLATOON AND CO HQ)

b. PER VEHICLE
   1. WATER CAN
   2. RADIO SET, AN/GRC-160
   3. KY-57 SPEECH SECURITY EQUIPMENT
   4. FIRE EXTINGUISHER
   S. SLAVE CABLE
   6. PIONEER TOOLS
   7. TIRE CHAIN
   8. TOW CHAIN
   9. TOOL KIT
   10. ONE CREW-SERVED WEAPON, M2 / MK-19 / M-240G
   11. TRIPOD WITH T&E MECHANISM
   12. CAMOFLAGE SCREEN SET WITH SUPPORTS (ADDITIONAL SET FOR TRAILER)
   13. MK-64 MOD 4 MOUNT AND A-BAG

APPENDIX F

SUPPLEMENTARY LOAD LISTS

a. DESERT OPERATIONS

1. (PRESCRIBED INDIVIDUAL LOAD LIST/STANDARD)
2. DESERT UTILITIES (IN PLACE OF WOODLAND - *)
3. DESERT CAMOFLAGE FLAK JACKET COVER
4. DESERT CAMOFLAGE SOFT COVER/BOONIE COVER
5. DESERT CAMOFLAGE HELMET COVER
6. TWO-QUART CANTEEN W/STRAP
7. ONE ADDITIONAL ONE QUART CANTEEN (ON PACK;
8. SURVIVAL BLANKET
9. DESERT ~CAMOFLAGE FACE PAINT~.
10. SUN BLOCK LOTION
11. DESERT BOOTS (OPTIONAL)

b. COLD WEATHER OPERATIONS

1. (PRESCRIBED INDIVIDUAL LOAD LIST/STANDARD)
2. VAPOR BARRIER BOOTS OR MOUNTAIN BOOTS (WEATHER DEPENDENT)
3. SLEEPING BAG; COLD WEATHER
4. ARTIC GLOVES W/LINERS
5. PARKA, COLD WEATHER
6. COLD WEATHER BOTTOMS
7. THREE (3) ADDITIONAL PAIRS OF SKIVVIES (TOP AND BOTTOM)
8. SQUAD STOVE (ONE PER SQUAD)
9. THREE (3) ADDITIONAL PAIRS OF SOCKS
10. BALACLAVA
11. CAP, COLD WEATHER
12. ALICE PACK, LARGE (IN PLACE OF MEDIUM)
13. PACK COVER, ARTIC
14. POLYPROPYLENE TOP AND BOTTOM
15. WOOLY PULLY SWEATER
16. TWO (2) ADDITIONAL ONE-QUART CANTEENS

APPENDIX G

MILITARY POLICE WEAPONS SYSTEMS AND EMPLOYMENT

Introduction

1. Purpose. To establish standard procedures for military police weapons systems and employment.

2. General. Military police use a wide variety of weapons systems to accomplish the four primary missions. A MP must have working knowledge of all the weapons systems available so that they may be employed in the offense, defense and law enforcement roles. This knowledge is to include nomenclature, operation, laying techniques and general weapons tactics.

3. Definitions.

a. Competent Authority. Superiors in your chain of command and those who are specifically in writing able to give orders to security personal.

b. Crowd. A mass gathered for a common purpose.

c. Mob. A mass of people with a leader, ruled by emotion with no reason.

d. ROE. Rules of engagement.

e. Semi-Automatic. Each time the trigger is manipulated, one round will fire from an ammunition source containing more than one round.

f. Automatic. When the trigger is manipulated, the weapon will fire and continue to fire until the trigger is released or the source of ammunition is depleted.

g. Slide-action. One round is fired when fired when the trigger is manipulated, and the next round must be inserted into the chamber by means of a slide located along a tubular magazine slung under the barrel.

h. Air-cooled. The heat generated from the weapon during operation is dissipated by air circulating over the surface of the barrel.

i. Gas-operated. In an automatic weapon, gasses expended from the cartridge during fire are bled from the barrel and used to re-initiate the cycle of operations.

j. Recoil-operated. Rearward force generated from the firing of the round is used to drive the bolt or slide to the rear. In an automatic weapon, this will re-initiate the cycle of operations.

k. Magazine-fed. The ammunition source for the weapon is a box containing a fixed number of rounds that can be easily replaced.

l. Belt-fed. The ammunition source for the weapon is a belt of linked ammunition. The belts can be linked end-to-end in infinite lengths.

m. Jam. An interruption in the cycle of operations not involving a malfunction of the weapon.

n. Malfunction. An interruption in the cycle of operation due to a mechanical failure.

o. Misfire. The primer of the round is properly struck by the firing pin of the weapon, but the powder fails to ignite/the round fails to fire.

p. Trajectory. Path of the round through the air from the muzzle to the target.

q. Ordinate/Maximum Ordinate. The distance from the ground to the bullet anywhere along it's trajectory/the highest ordinate in a certain trajectory; where the round begins its decent.

r. Cone of Fire. The natural distribution of rounds from the centerline trajectory due to vibration of the weapon and operator movement.

s. Beaten Zone. The area on the ground/target covered by the rounds from the cone of fire.

t. Grazing Fire. Fire in which the cone of fire maintains a height of approximately one meter off the deck, center of a average man.

u. Plunging Fire. Fire in which the effects of the fire are confined to the beaten zone (no effect along the trajectory).

v. Flanking Fire. Fire with respect to the target where the angle of the muzzle coincides with the long axis of the target.

w. Frontal Fire. Fire with respect to the target where the angle of the muzzle is perpendicular with the long axis of the target.

x. Oblique Fire. Fire with respect to the target where the angle of the muzzle is at an oblique angle to the long axis of the target

y. Enfilade Fire. Fire with the respect to the target where the angle of the long axis of the beaten zone coincides with the long axis of the target.

z. Traversing Fire. Fire with respect to the gun where the traversing knob is manipulated while the elevating knob remains stable.

aa. Searching Fire. Fire with respect to the gun where the elevating knob is manipulated while the traversing knob remains stable.

bb. Traverse and Search. Fire with respect to the gun where both the traversing and elevating knobs are manipulated.

cc. Swinging Traverse. Fire with respect to the gun where the traversing slide lock is released, allowing the weapon to move freely from side to side while the elevation knob remains stable.

dd. Free Gun. Fire with respect to the gun where the T&E are detached, allowing complete freedom of movement on the tripod.

ee. Fixed Fire. Fire with respect to the gun where there are no elevation or windage adjustments.

Weapons

1. General. Impact Weapons are meant to be a non-lethal weapon. As always, Deadly force is only authorized as a last resort with these weapons.

2. Batons.

APPENDIX G

a. PR-24. The PR-24 is a side handle baton made of polypropylene. It is 24 inches in length and weighs 24 ounces. Knowledge of this weapon, parts and techniques of use are essential for MP.

Nomenclature.
Grip End
Short Portion
Short Handle
Long End
Long Extended End
Knob

b. PR-24 Expandable. The PR-24 expandable comes to a full length of 24 inches, like that of its predecessor the PR-24. The difference is that it collapses to a length of no more than 8 inches.

Nomenclature.
Grip End
Short Portion
Short Handle
Long End
Long Extended Portion
Knob

c. ASP. Different than that of both the PR-24 and the PR-24 expandable, the ASP has no short handle. This weapon varies in length form 18 inches to 26 inches. It folds up to 8 inches and when employed uses centrifugal force to lock to its full length. The weapon is made of stainless steel.

Nomenclature.
Grip Portion
Grip End
Long Extended Portion
Long Extended End

d. Riot Baton. This weapon is used to physically push back crowds of people or steer them in a certain direction.

Nomenclature.
Grip Portion
Grip End
Long Extended Portion

Long Extended End

3. Chemical Weapons.

a. Oleoresin Capsicum Spray. This weapon renders most individuals helpless. It gives the eyes, face, mouth and any other areas exposed to the agent an overwhelming burning sensation. Once you have sprayed an individual he is your responsibility.

b. CS Gas. This weapon is employed in two ways, the first being that of launching it into a crowd or angry mob to disburse the individuals. The second way is that of launching or throwing it into a building to clear the building of hostile individuals. When employed this chemical agent may induce burning of the skin, tearing of the eyes and vomiting.

4. Weapons Handling Cardinal Rules.

a. Treat every weapon as if it were loaded.

b. Never point a weapon at anything that you do not intend to shoot.

c. Keep your finger straight and off the trigger until you intend to fire.

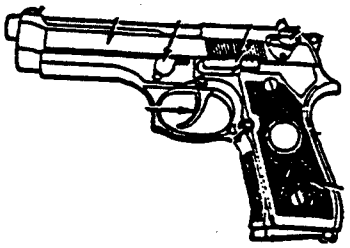
d. Keep your weapon on safe until you intend to fire.

5. Clearing Barrel. In non-combat situations all firearms will be cleared of ammunition in the clearing barrel. A NCO or higher must supervise clearing barrel operations. The clearing barrel must consist of a 55-gallon drum cut at the top, filled 2/3 of the way with sand, angled at a 45 degrees, and reinforced with sandbags. Field expedition clearing barrels can be made for all MP command post operations and will be approved by the senior MP.

6. M-9 Pistol.

a. Characteristics. The M-9 service pistol is a semi-automatic, blowback operated, magazine fed, double action pistol with ambidextrous safety and de-cocking lever.

APPENDIX G



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	9mm
Length-	8.54 inches
Max Effective Range-	50 meters
Max Range-	Variable
Loaded Weight-	2.54 lbs
Muzzle Velocity-	375meters /second
Safety Features-	ambidextrous safety
Magazine-	staggered 15 round capacity
Cyclic Rate of Fire-	1100 rpm

c. Carrying Conditions.

(1) CONDITION FOUR: Chamber empty, no magazine inserted, and safety on.

(2) CONDITION THREE: Chamber empty, full magazine inserted, safety on.

(3) CONDITION TWO: There is no condition two.

(4) CONDITION ONE: Round in chamber, full magazine inserted, safety on.

d. Employment. The M-9 service pistol will be carried with a full magazine, round in the chamber and the safety on. The M-9 service pistol should be worn by all MPs serving in a law enforcement capacity or by Marines operating a crew-served weapons system.

e. Basic Load. The basic load consists of one 15 round magazine in the weapon and one 15 round magazine in the magazine pouch.

f. Loading.

(1) Ensure the weapon is on safe. Point the weapon into the clearing barrel.

(2) Lock the slide to the rear observing for brass in the chamber.

(3) Insert the magazine firmly into the magazine well until an audible click is heard.

(4) Tap the magazine at the base to ensure that it is full seated.

(5) Ensuring that the weapon is on safe, release the slide lock, allowing a round to be stripped and chambered.

(6) Holster the weapon.

g. Unloading.

(1) Remove the magazine from the weapon before removing the weapon form the holster.

(2) Remove the weapon from the holster and point it into the clearing barrel.

(3) Lock the slide to the rear, catching any ejected ammunition.

(4) Visually and physically ensure there is no brass in the chamber, release the slide ensuring that the weapon is on safe.

(5) Holster the weapon

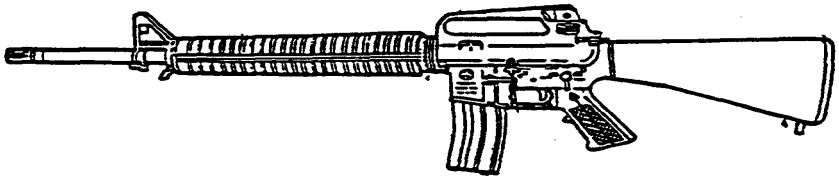
h. Immediate Action. Immediate action for the M-9 to clear a jam or misfire is TAP-RACK-BANG. Tap the base of the magazine; rack the slide to the rear, aim and fire.

i. Remedial Action. Seek cover, visually and physically inspect the weapon, clean or fix the weapon, aim and fire.

7. M-16A2 Rifle

a. Characteristics. The M-16A2 rifle is a light weight, air cooled, magazine-fed, gas operated, shoulder-

fired weapon capable of firing semi automatic or three round burst by use of a selector lever.



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	5.56mm
Length-	39-3/8 inches
Max Effective Range-	550 meter point
	800-meter area
Max Range-	3534 meters
Loaded Weight-	8.73 lbs
Muzzle Velocity-	3100 feet per second
Safety Features-	Three position safety lever
Magazine-	30 rounds
Cyclic Rate of Fire-	800 rounds per minute
Rate of Fire-	12-15 rounds per minute
Semi-Automatic-	45 rounds per minute
3-Round Burst-	90 rounds per minute

c. Carrying Conditions.

(1) CONDITION FOUR: Chamber empty, no magazine inserted, and safety on.

(2) CONDITION THREE: Chamber empty, full magazine inserted, safety on.

(3) CONDITION TWO: There is no condition two, safety on.

(4) CONDITION ONE: Round in chamber, full magazine inserted, safety on.

d. Employment. The M-16A2 should be carried in field situations or when back-up for riot control in needed. The rules of engagement (ROE) and/or senior MP will dictate the load condition of the weapon. In the offense, the M-16A2 is the primary assault weapon of the unit and should be employed by the maneuver element. Defensively, Marines using the M-16A2 should be dug-in, in two-man teams with interlocking fields of fire. The M-16A2 is designed to be

fired in the semi-automatic mode as a marksman's weapon; the three-round burst should only be used as a last resort.

e. Basic Load. The basic load for the M-16A2 is 180 rounds.

f. Loading.

(1) Place the weapon on safe and point the muzzle in a safe direction.

(2) Insert a magazine and tap the base to ensure it is full seated.

(3) Pull the charging handle to the rear and release it, allowing a round to be stripped and chambered.

(4) Tap the forward assist.

g. Unloading.

(1) Place the weapon on safe and point the muzzle in a safe direction.

(2) Release the magazine, pull the charging handle to the rear and visually and physically inspect the chamber for any brass. Release the charging handle if clear.

(3) Release the bolt and close the ejection port cover.

h. Immediate Action. Immediate action for the M-16A2 to clear a jam or misfire is TAP-RACK-BANG. Tap the base of the magazine; Rack the charging handle, aim and fire.

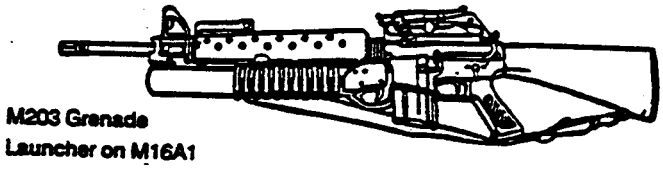
i. Remedial Action. To better understand remedial action, use the acronym SPORTS. Slap the magazine, Pull the charging handle to the rear, Observe for ejecting brass, Release the charging handle, Tap the forward assist, Shoot.

8. Shotgun. Military Police use a variety of different types of shotguns. The basic weapons handling procedures described within this section will be applied to all shotguns employed.

APPENDIX G

9. M-203 Grenade Launcher.

a. Description. The M-203 is a single-shot, breech-loaded, large bore weapon aimed by use of a leaf or quadrant sight.



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	40mm
Max. Effective Range-	350 meters
Max. Range-	400 meters
Safety Features-	Trigger safety

c. Employment. In a combat situation, the M-203 is carried with a round in the breech and the trigger-safety engaged. There are several different types of rounds that can be fired from the M-203, including a CS round that has riot control applications. Beanbag rounds have been developed for riot control use, but are not widely disseminated. In the defense, the M-203 should be used for covering dead space along machinegun FPL's (Final Protective Lines) and PDF's (Principle Direction of Fire). In the offense, the M-203 should be used to take out point targets and supplement the firepower of the M-16A2.

d. Basic Load. The basic load for the M-203 is 4-6 rds.

e. Loading.

(1) Place the weapon on safe and point the weapon in a safe direction.

(2) Open the breech and insert a round into the tube until fully seated.

(3) Slam the breech closed, ensuring it is fully seated.

f. Unloading.

(1) Place the weapon on safe and point the weapon in a safe direction.

(2) If round has fired, open breech and allow casing to fall to the deck.

(3) If the round has not fired, open breech and catch the round as it is ejected.

g. Immediate Action.

(1) Shout, "MISFIRE!" and keep the weapon pointed down range.

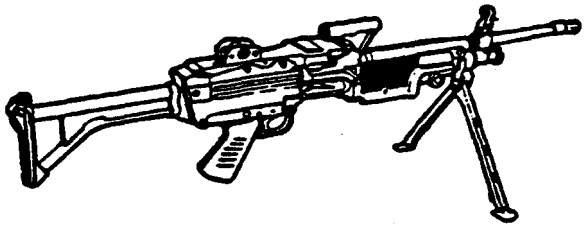
(2) Wait 30 seconds, then slowly open the breech, catching the round in your free hand.

(3) Examine the round. If the primer has not been dented, reload and attempt to fire. If the primer is dented, perform remedial action.

h. Remedial Action. Disassemble the weapon and repair or request armor support as needed.

10. M-249 SAW.

a. Description. The M-249 is a belt-fed, automatic, air-cooled, gas-operated, open bolt weapon.



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	5.56mm
Length-	40.87 inches
Max. Effective Range-	1000 meters
Max Range-	3600 meters
Loaded Weight-	22.08 lbs loaded
Safety Features-	Push-button safety
Magazine-	200 round assault box
	30 round M-16 magazine
Cyclic rate of fire-	725/1000 rds/min

Sustained rate of fire- 85 rds/min
Rapid Rate of Fire- 200 rds/min

c. Employment. The SAW (Squad Automatic Weapon) is both an offensive and defensive weapon. It is the primary source of firepower at the squad level and is a very effective weapon when properly maintained. The SAW is usually given a PDF (Principle Direction of Fire) in the defense and can support or fill a machinegun mission in an emergency. It should be dug in and fired from the bipod and the assistant automatic rifleman should be in the same fighting hole as the automatic rifleman. In the offense, the SAW can be used in the assault fire mode and is ideal for establishing a support by fire position. The use of the SAW in riot situations is not practical and should be strictly controlled and restricted.

d. Basic Load. The basic load of the M-249 SAW is 800 rounds.

e. Loading.

(1) Point the weapon in a safe direction.

(2) Pull the bolt to the rear and place the weapon on safe.

(3) Open the feed tray cover.

(4) Place the belt in the weapon links-up.

(5) Close the feed tray cover firmly.

f. Combat Loading.

(1) Place the weapon in a safe direction.

(2) Pull the bolt to the rear and place the weapon on safe.

(3) Do not open feed tray cover.

(4) Slide belt in feed tray until a click is heard.

g. Unloading.

(1) Place the weapon on safe.

(2) Lift the feed tray cover and then remove the belt.

(3) Clear the weapon of any links or brass and ensure the chamber is empty.

(4) Close the feed tray cover, place the weapon on fire and ride the bolt home.

(5) Pull the charging handle to the rear until an audible click is heard, but not fully to the rear.

(6) Place the weapon on safe and ride the bolt until it is seated home.

h. Immediate Action.

(1) Charge the weapon and push the charging handle forward until a click is heard.

(2) If round is ejected, fire again.

i. Subsequent Action.

(1) Unload and clear the SAW.

(2) Inspect the SAW and ammunition to determine the cause of the stoppage.

(3) Correct the cause of the stoppage if possible; reload and attempt to fire.

11. M-240G.

a. Description. The M-240G is a 7.62 mm, air-cooled, belt-fed, gas operated, automatic weapon.

b. Nomenclature.

Length-	49 in.
Weight-	24.2 lbs
Max Range-	3725m
Max Effective Range-	1800m
Grazing Fire-	600m
Rates of Fire:	

Sustained-	100rpm
Rapid-	200rpm
Cyclic-	650 to 950rpm

c. Types of rounds.

(1) Ball
(2) Tracer
(3) Armor Piercing
(4) Practice
(5) Dummy

d. Basic Load. 300 rounds

e. Loading. Physically and visually inspect the weapon to ensure it is cleared. Send the bolt home. Open the feed tray cover. Place the rounds in the feed tray, brass to the grass. Close the feed tray cover ensuring that the rounds stay in place. Pull the bolt to the rear and place the weapon on safe.

f. Unloading. Place the weapon on safe. Lock the bolt to the rear. Open the feed tray cover. Remove the ammo belt and physically and visually inspect the chamber for rounds. Close the feed tray cover.

g. Immediate Action.

(1) Runaway gun: Keep the weapon in your shoulder, pointed down range on target and allow the remaining rounds to fire out.

(2) Hang fire: Firing pin strikes the primer and nothing happens. Wait 5-8 seconds before opening the feed tray cover to inspect the ammo.

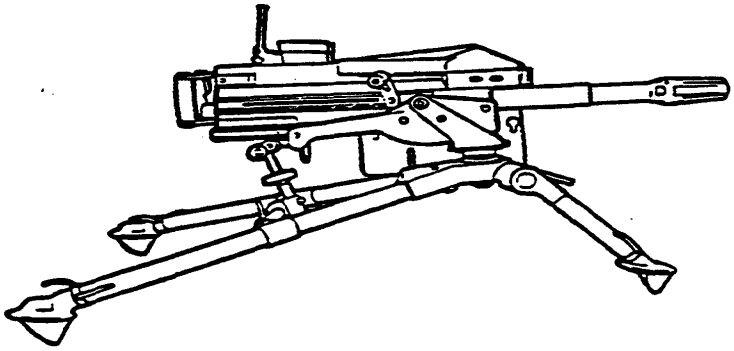
(3) Cook off: Keep the weapon in your shoulder, pointed down range on target and attempt to twist the belt. This will cause the ammo to feed improperly into the weapon. Allow the weapon to cool for 15 minutes before unloading the weapon.

h. Remedial Action. Disassemble the weapon and seek armorer assistance.

12. MK-19 Automatic Grenade Launcher.

APPENDIX G

a. Description. The Mk-19 MOD 3 is an air-cooled, blow back operated, belt feed, fully automatic weapon featuring a barrel that prevents cook off even after long periods of firing.



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	40mm
Max. Effective Range-	1500m
Max. Range-	2212m
Weight-	75 lbs
Muzzle Velocity-	795 ft/sec
Safety Features-	Safety on rear assembly
Magazine-	Belt-fed
Cyclic Rate of Fire-	300 rds min

c. Loading.

(1) Attach the feed throat to the weapon and ensure the bolt is forward.

(2) Insert the rounds until the lead round engages the first feed pawl.

(3) Push the feed slide assembly to the left and close the top cover.

d. Charging.

(1) Place the safety on fire.

(2) Pull the charger handles to the rear, locking the bolt, and return the charger handles forward and upright.

(3) Depress the trigger, allowing the bolt to slam home and engage the first round.

(4) Pull the charging handles to the rear, locking the bolt and return the charging handles to the front and upright.

(5) Put the safety on until prepared to fire.

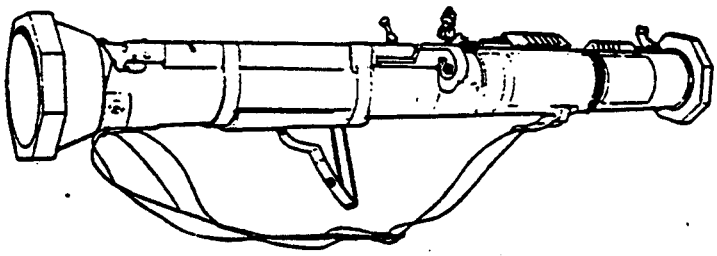
e. Unloading.

(1) Open the top cover, reaching beneath the feeder to release the positioning pawls, simultaneously sliding the rounds out of the weapon.

(2) If a round remains on the face of the bolt, the gunner must lock the bolt to the rear end, if necessary; pry the round from the bolt with a cleaning rod while the assistant gunner catches the round.

13. M-136 (AT-4).

a. Description. The AT-4 is a lightweight, self-contained, disposable, anti-armor weapon.



b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	84mm
Max. Effective Range-	50 meters
Max. Range-	500 meters
Safety Feature-	Shipping safety pin, cocking lever, and safety lever

c. Employment. The AT-4 is primarily used against light armored personnel carriers and may also be used against battle tanks when it is fired at the side or the rear. It can also be used as an assault weapon against

bunkers, field fortifications, and other hard-point positions. There are several methods of engaging targets in the counter mechanized role:

(1) Single fire. One Marine fires one AT-4 with no successive shots. This is the least desirable method of engagement as it allows for no range or windage adjustments and has minimal chance of success against a moving target.

(2) Sequence Firing. One Marine fires two or more AT-4's in secession. This is more effective as it allows for adjustment from the first shot.

(3) Pair Firing. Two Marines fire AT-4s at a single target. This increases the chance of a first shot hit, and the chance of destroying the vehicle.

d. Misfire.

(1) Wait two minutes, and carefully lay the faulty AT-4 on the ground with the muzzle facing towards the target.

(2) Dispose of the faulty AT-4 according to range orders and SOP.

e. Back Blast Area. The AT-4 produces dangerous and potentially lethal back blast in a 90-degree arc for 60 meters to the rear. Prior to firing the weapon, the gunner must check the back blast area and yell out in a loud voice: "Back blast area all clear!".

14. M-2 .50 Caliber Machinegun.

a. Description. The M-2 is a belt feed, air-cooled, recoil-operated, crew-served machinegun capable of firing single shot and automatic fire.

b. Nomenclature.

Caliber-	.50
Length-	65 inches
Max. Effective Range-	1830m
Max. Range-	7400m
Safety Features-	None
Magazine-	Belt-fed
Cyclic Rate of Fire-	450-550 rpm
Sustained Rate of Fire-	40 rpm
Rapid Rate of Fire-	400 rpm

c. Types of Rounds.

Ball
Tracer
Incendiary
Armor Piercing
Armor Piercing Incendiary
Armor Piercing Incendiary Tracer
Blank
Dummy

d. Basic Load. The basic load for the M2 50 cal. is 400 rounds

e. Half Loading. The M-2 can be " half loaded" a position where a round is placed in the feed area but not fully chambered.

(1) Ensure the bolt is forward and the feed cover is closed.

(2) Assistant gunner inserts the open loop of the belt into the feed way until the belt holding claw engages the first round.

(3) Bolt latch release lock disengaged: Gunner pulls the retracting slide handle (palm up) to the rear. Return the retracting slide handle to the forward position and press the bolt latch release allowing the bolt to go forward.

f. Loading.

(1) Half cock the weapon.

(2) Bolt latch release lock engaged. Gunner pulls the retracting slide handle (palm up) to the rear and releases the bolt.

(3) Bolt latch release lock disengaged. Gunner pulls the retracting slide handle (palm up) to the rear. Return the retracting slide handle to the forward position and press the bolt latch release allowing the bolt to go forward.

g. Unloading.

(1) Unlock the bolt release latch (if engaged) and raise the feed cover.

(2) Assistant gunner removes belt and spent links.

(3) Gunner pulls bolt to the rear and examines chamber and T-slot for brass. If in darkness, the gunner must feel the chamber and T-slot.

h. Immediate Action.

(1) Wait five seconds for a hang fire.

(2) Pull the bolt to the rear and release the charging handle. Attempt to fire.

(3) Wait five seconds, raise feed tray cover, remove ammo and perform remedial action.

i. Remedial Action.

(1) Disassemble weapon, repair malfunction or seek armor assistance.

(2) Ruptured Cartridge: Remove base of round from the T-slot. Insert ruptured cartridge extractor and use to remove casing from chamber.

j. Safety Precautions After a Misfire. If the barrel is hot the round must remain in the chamber for at least five minutes to guard against cook-off.

k. Headspace and Timing Space.

APPENDIX G

(1) Headspace. Headspace is the distance between the face of the bolt and the base of a cartridge case that is fully seated in the chamber. Headspace is necessary to ensure the proper battery of the recoiling groups. Headspace is checked prior to firing, when the gun is assembled, when any part is replaced or doubt exists about the headspace.

(a) Raise the cover, retract the recoiling parts and screw the barrel all the way into the barrel extension. Then unscrew the barrel two clicks

(b) Cock the gun, pull retracting slide handle all the way to the rear and return it to the most forward position. Press the bolt latch release and allow the bolt to go forward. Do not depress the trigger, as this will release the firing pin. If the trigger is depressed, the gun must be re-cocked.

(c) Pull the retracting slide handle back until the barrel extension is about 1/16th of an inch from the trunnion block. This will ensure the locking surfaces of the breech lock and the bolt are in proper contact.

(d) Insert the GO end of the headspace gage in the T-slot, between the face of the bolt and the rear end of the barrel using normal hand pressure (do not force). If the GO end of the gage enters freely down to the center ring of the gage, then attempt to insert the NO GO end of the gage.

(e) If the GO end enters and the NO GO end does not enter, the correct headspace is set.

(f) Alternately screw or unscrew the barrel until this condition exists.

(2) Timing. Timing is the adjustment of the weapon so that firing takes place when the recoiling parts are between .020 and .116 inches out of battery to prevent contact between the front end of the barrel extension and the trunnion block.

(a) Ensure that the gun has correct headspace adjustment.

(b) Cock the gun and pull the retracting slide handle all the way to the rear and return it to its most forward position.

(c) Press the bolt latch release and allow the bolt to go forward. Do not depress the trigger.

(d) Raise the extractor and pull the retracting slide handle back until the front end of the barrel extension is about ¼ inch from the trunnion block.

(e) Insert the NO FIRE timing gage between the barrel extension and trunnion block, placing the beveled edge of the gage on the barrel notches.

(f) Let the barrel extension close slowly on the gage.

(g) Depress the trigger firmly, attempting to release the firing pin. If the firing pin should not release, insert the FIRE timing gage and attempt to fire. If the weapon fires, the timing is set

(h) If the FIRE gage is inserted and the firing pin does not release, pull the handle to the rear and allow the bolt to go forward. Insert the first gage, remove the back plate, and screw the timing adjustment nut to the left until it rests on the weapon.

(i) When the firing pin is released, turn the timing adjustment nut two additional notches to the receiver block and barrel extension and attempt to fire the weapon should not fire.

(j) If the weapon does fire, a mechanical defect exists. Seek armor for assistance.

Crew Served Weapons Employment

1. Assumptions. Machine gunnery is an exacting science that requires years of practice to master. General knowledge is assumed, and detailed firing procedures (e.g. overhead fire, indirect fire, etc.) are not widely utilized by FMF military police units.

2. General Employment.

APPENDIX G

a. To be most effective, a machinegun should be employed from a tripod mount on the ground, using a traversing and elevating mechanism.

b. While a machinegun may be employed from a vehicle mount on the move, this lessens the accuracy of fire and generally decreases the survivability of the vehicle and personnel. When the gun must be employed from a vehicle, the leader seeks a firing position that provides the greatest possible degree of cover for the vehicle and crew. Crews should be trained to remove the gun from the vehicle mount and employ it from a tripod even during temporary halts.

c. Employment Considerations in the Defense (Acronym: PIC-M-DEEP)

P-air the guns together to create mission redundancy.

I-nterlocking fields of fire to ensure a solid defense and
effective engagement areas.

C-oordinate Fires for maximum effectiveness.

M-utuallv Supporting positions to protect the guns and create redundancy in the defense.

D-efilade the guns for maximum protection from fire.

E-nfilade fire established against likely enemy approaches.

E-conomy of fire with ammunition and placement of weapons.

P-rotect the guns from the enemy by tucking them in between
other fighting positions and making maximum use of cover and concealment.

d. Initial Fire Commands (Acronym: ADDRAC) Fire commands are used by the small unit leader to direct the fire of his guns.

A-lert - (size of unit to fire)
D-irection - (only when not obvious)

D-escriptoion - (only when not obvious)

R-ange - (range to target/center of target in hundreds of meters)
A-ssignment/Method - (division/manipulation/rate)
C-ontrol - (method of control of the guns firing)

EXAMPLE: "Squad!" / "Direct Front!" / "Squad In Open!" / "Two Hundred Meters!" "Number One Left Half/ Number Two Right Half!" / "Rapid Rate!" / "At My Command!" ("FIRE")

e. Sectors of Fire. In the defense, machineguns are assigned sectors of fire, the inner limits of which are usually, but not always, the bands of grazing fire placed along the Final Protective Line (FPL). The sector of fire should not exceed 800 mils (45 degrees). The machinegun unit is responsible for engaging the enemy within its sector, subjecting him to fire as he approaches, and finally forcing him to pass through coordinated bands of grazing fire before he can make his assault. When the sector of fire does not include an FPL, a Principle Direction of Fire (usually along an avenue of approach) or a zero line is assigned. The zero line is the line that bisects the sector and points towards a distinctive landmark in that area.

f. Laying an FPL.

(1) Heavy Machineguns. The gunner lays the gun in the direction of the FPL and zeroes the traversing dial in the T&E. He then selects an aiming point on the FPL at a range of approximately 700 meters and places his center of aim on that point.

(2) General Purpose Guns on Tripod.

- The gunner centers the traversing hand wheel mechanism and zeroes the traversing micrometer.

- Upon determining along which limit of the sector the FPL is to lie, the gunner sets the traversing slide toward that end of the traversing bar which is opposite the direction of the FPL.

- He then lifts the rear legs of the tripod and aligns the muzzle in the approximate direction of the line. By so doing, he obtains the maximum angle of traverse away from the FPL in the direction of the targets in his sector.

- For elevation, the gunner lays the gun on an aiming point on the FPL at a range of approximately 700 meters.

- He notes the sign and the first number whose graduation is visible above the elevating hand wheel on the elevating screw scale, then obtains the number on the elevating micrometer dial toward which the indicator is pointing.

- A combination of these numbers, when replaced on the gun, allows the gun to be laid for the same elevation.

g. Range Cards. A range card is a rough sketch or drawing which serves two purposes: a record of firing data and a document for defensive fire planning. Each gun makes a range card in duplicate on any material available. One copy remains at the firing position, and one goes to the unit commander for use in creating a fire plan sketch. Revisions and improvements are made and data is updated as necessary.

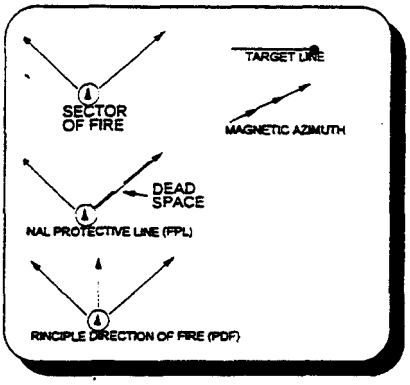
(1) Procedure. (see example) -

- Draw a dot to signify the position of the gun.

- Draw a magnetic north arrow through the gun position.

- Find a prominent terrain feature behind the weapon in relation to the FLOT, draw a magnetic azimuth from the feature to the gun dot and record the azimuth in mils and the distance in meters along the line.

- Record in information box: gun number / unit designation / date. For security reasons, no higher unit designation than company is shown.



- FPLs: Identify and, if possible, walk the FPL to record data. Signify the FPL on the card with a shaded line with an arrow at the end, leaving gaps to denote dead space. Record the distance to, and number, the target at the end of the FPL. Then record the distance at either end of any dead space, the T&E reading of the gun on the FPL, and the magnetic azimuth in mils of the FPL.

- PDF: Identify and, if possible, walk the PDF to record data. Signify the PDF as a solid line with an arrow at the end. Record the range to the near end of the avenue of approach. Record the T&E reading and the magnetic azimuth in mils of the PDF.

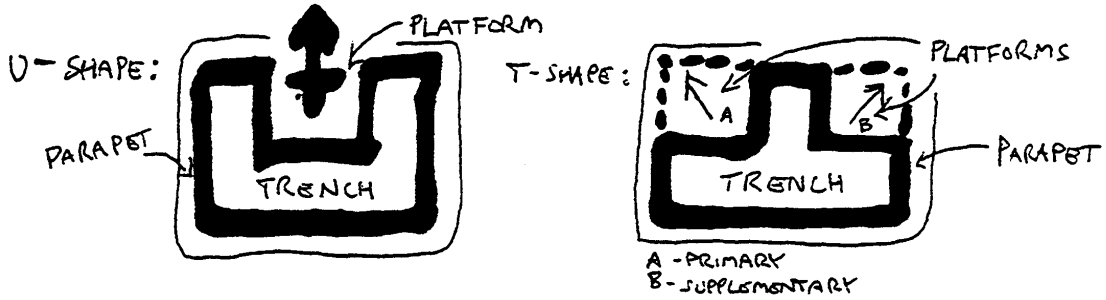
- Designate and record sector limits with a dashed line, naming them left or right. Record the direction reading from the T&E data.

- Designate and record other easily recognizable terrain features or targets within the sector. Number them sequentially, and mark them with a line leading from the gun to a drawing depicting the target as in the example. Record the range to the target and the T&E data.

- Sketch in the general FLOT line to assist your superior in creating a fire plan sketch.

h. Fighting Positions. Machineguns will be employed in the defense from either a "T" shaped or "U" shaped fighting position. See diagram:

WEAPONS



i. Firing From a Vehicle. When firing from a vehicle, if possible fire along the long axis of the vehicle in relation to the enemy. The suspension of the vehicle will absorb the recoil of the gun with minimal rocking motion. When fired perpendicular to the vehicle, the recoil of the gun (especially the heavy machineguns) will tend to rock the vehicle, spoiling the aim of the gunner. Ideally, the vehicle should be defiladed and the weapon fired to the rear of the vehicle to take maximum advantage of the HMMWVs limited armor.

3. M-240G General Employment.

a. Offense. Employ the M-240G in mass from a support-by-fire position from which they can provide a heavy volume of accurate suppressive fires. If an observer can rapidly adjust the guns on target, the base of fire can be positioned in defilade for protection.

b. Defense. When the terrain allows grazing fire, the M-240G should generally be employed on the flanks and assigned interlocking final protective lines (FPLs) across the unit's front. When the situation does not allow this, the M-240G should be assigned principal directions of fire (PDFs) along likely avenues of approach, which they can cover, with a heavy volume of fire.

4. Heave Machinegun General Employment.

a. Effects against armor. The MK-19 with its dual-purpose round, is a superior weapon against light armor. Its maximum effective range is 1,500 meters while its armor penetration is two (2) inches of homogeneous steel out to 2,000 meters. On the other hand, the armor penetration of the M-2 decreases dramatically as range increases. For example, the M2 cannot penetrate the armor

of a BMP past 600 meters even with optimal angle of incidence.

b. Effects Against Personnel. The dual-purpose Mk-19 is also effective against personnel, with an effective casualty radius (ECR) of fifteen meters. However, in general, the M2 is a more effective weapon against personnel because of its higher volume of fire and 1,000 meters of grazing fire. These characteristics make the M-2 well suited for the assignment of an FPL in the defense against infantry attack.

c. Offense. The mix and use of heavy machineguns is highly dependent upon terrain and mission.

d. Complementary Effects. The high angle of fire of the Mk-19 and the flatter trajectory of the M-2 can be employed effectively in tandem in many situation, the characteristics of one complementing the other. For example, the M-2 can be used to pin the enemy down while the MK-l9 is used to drop HE or HEDP on top of the enemy.

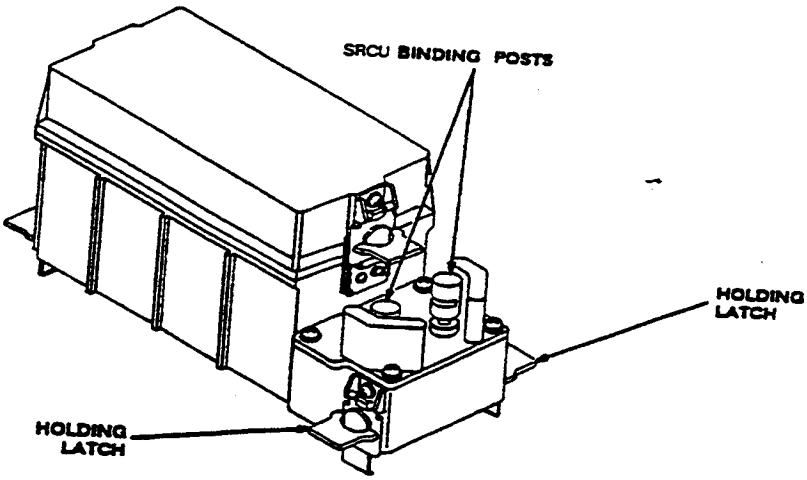
e. Fire Against Enemy Air. The M-2 is an effective anti-aircraft artillery weapon, and can be employed against both slow and fast moving enemy aircraft. The point where the aircraft is nearest to the gun is the midpoint.

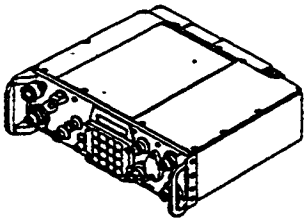
MIDPOINT LEADS (BASED UPON FTA 0.50-H-1)

AIRCRAFT (TYPE)	AVERAGE LENGTH AIRCRAFT (METERS)	SPEED (MPH)	MIDPOINT RANGE (METERS)	MIDPOINT LEAD		
				APPARENT		
				METERS	MILS	TARGET LENGTHS
FIGHTER	7	600	920	378	414	414
FIGHTER	7	600	460	165	360	18
FIGHTER	7	400	920	252	276	27.6
FIGHTER	7	100	460	109	240	12
FIGHTER	7	200	920	126	138	13.8
FIGHTER	7	200	460	54	120	6
TRANSPORT	21	200	920	126	138	6
TRANSPORT	21	200	460	54	120	26
LIAISON	7	100	920	62	69	7.7
LIAISON	7	100	460	27	60	3.3

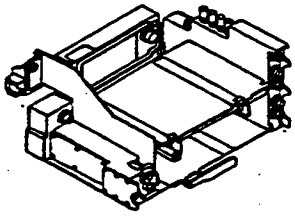
APPENDIX H

COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT.

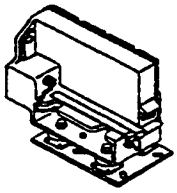




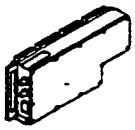
RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER, RADIO RT-1523(C)/U (TWO EACH)



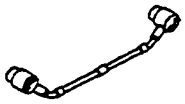
AMPLIFIER-ADAPTER, VEHICULAR AM-7239/VRC



MOUNTING BASE, ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MT-6353/VRC



AMPLIFIER, RADIO FREQUENCY AM-7238/VRC (TWO EACH)



CABLE ASSEMBLY, POWER, ELECTRICAL CX-13303/VRC

CABLE ASSEMBLY, SPECIAL PURPOSE, ELECTRICAL CX-13298/VRC

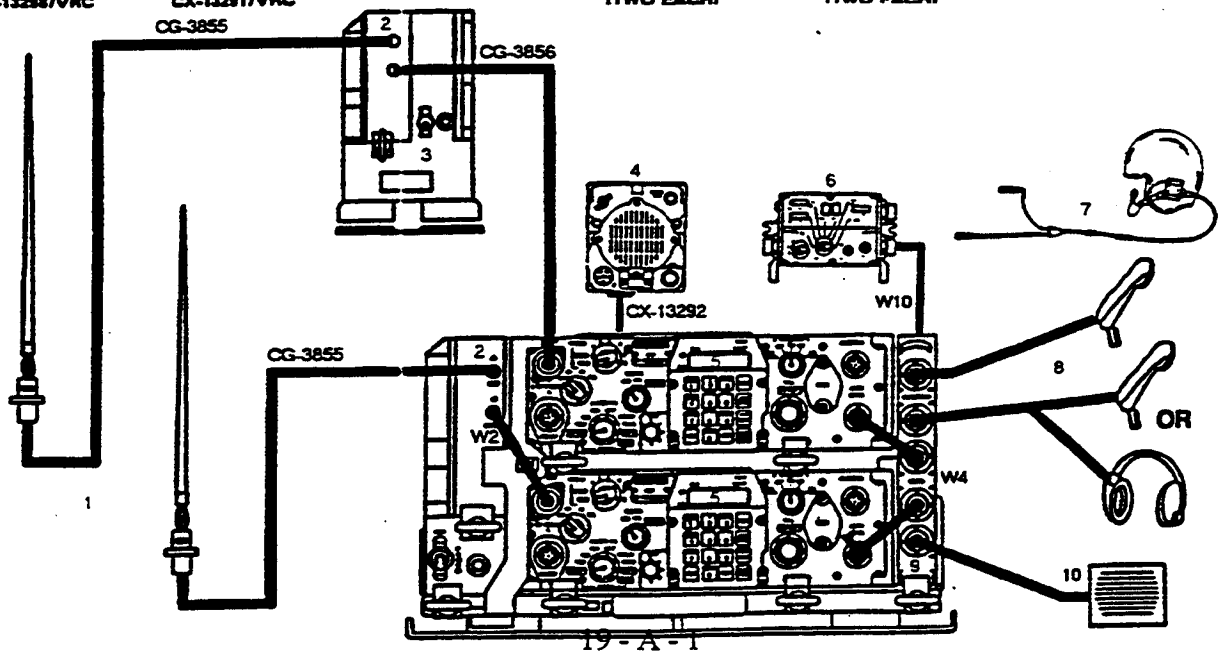
CABLE ASSEMBLY, SPECIAL PURPOSE, ELECTRICAL CX-13291/VRC

CABLE ASSEMBLY, SPECIAL PURPOSE, ELECTRICAL (W2)

CABLE ASSEMBLY, SPECIAL PURPOSE, ELECTRICAL (W4) (TWO EACH)

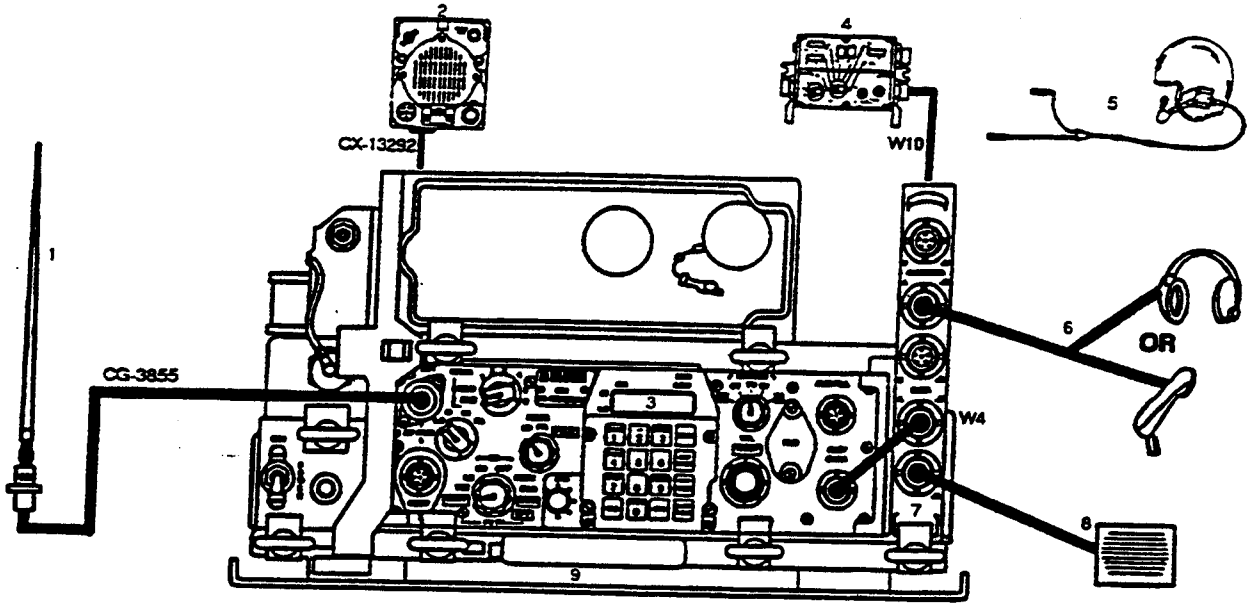
CABLE ASSEMBLY, RADIO FREQUENCY CG-3855/VRC (TWO EACH)

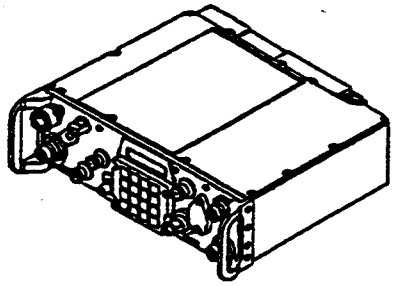
CABLE ASSEMBLY, RADIO FREQUENCY CG-3856/VRC



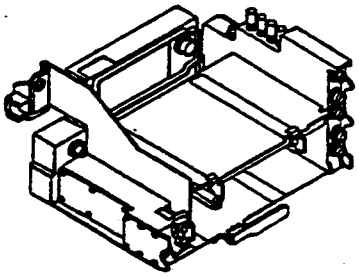
19 - A - 1

APPENDIX H

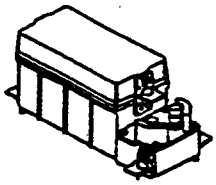




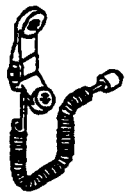
RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER, RADIO
RT-1523(C)/U



AMPLIFIER-ADAPTER, VEHICULAR
AM-7239/VRC

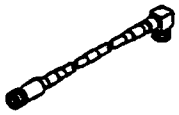


BATTERY BOX
CY-8523A/PRC

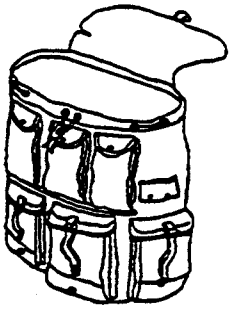


HANDSET
H-250/U

CABLE ASSEMBLY, SPECIAL PURPOSE, ELECTRICAL (W4)



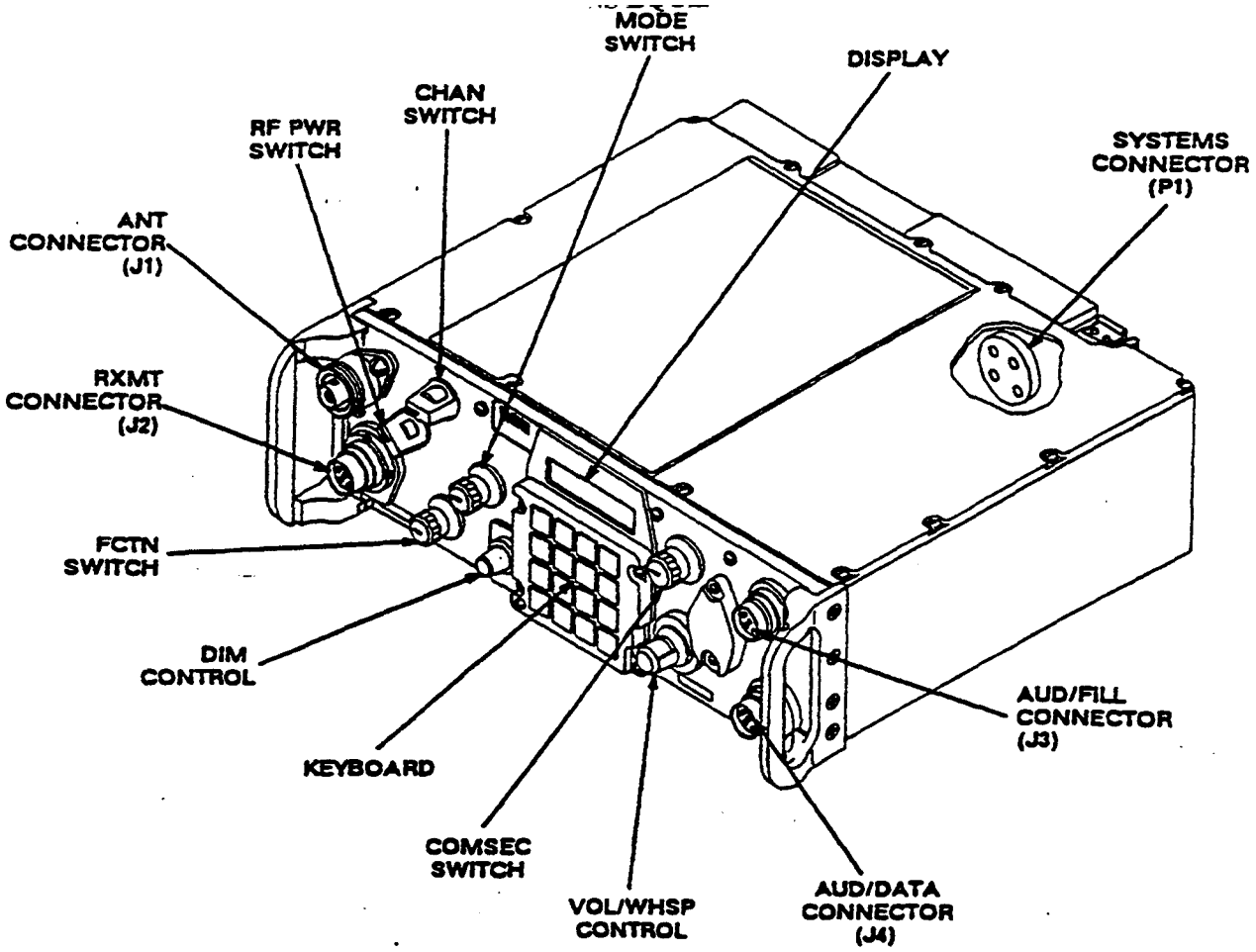
CABLE ASSEMBLY, RADIO FREQUENCY
CG-3855/VRC

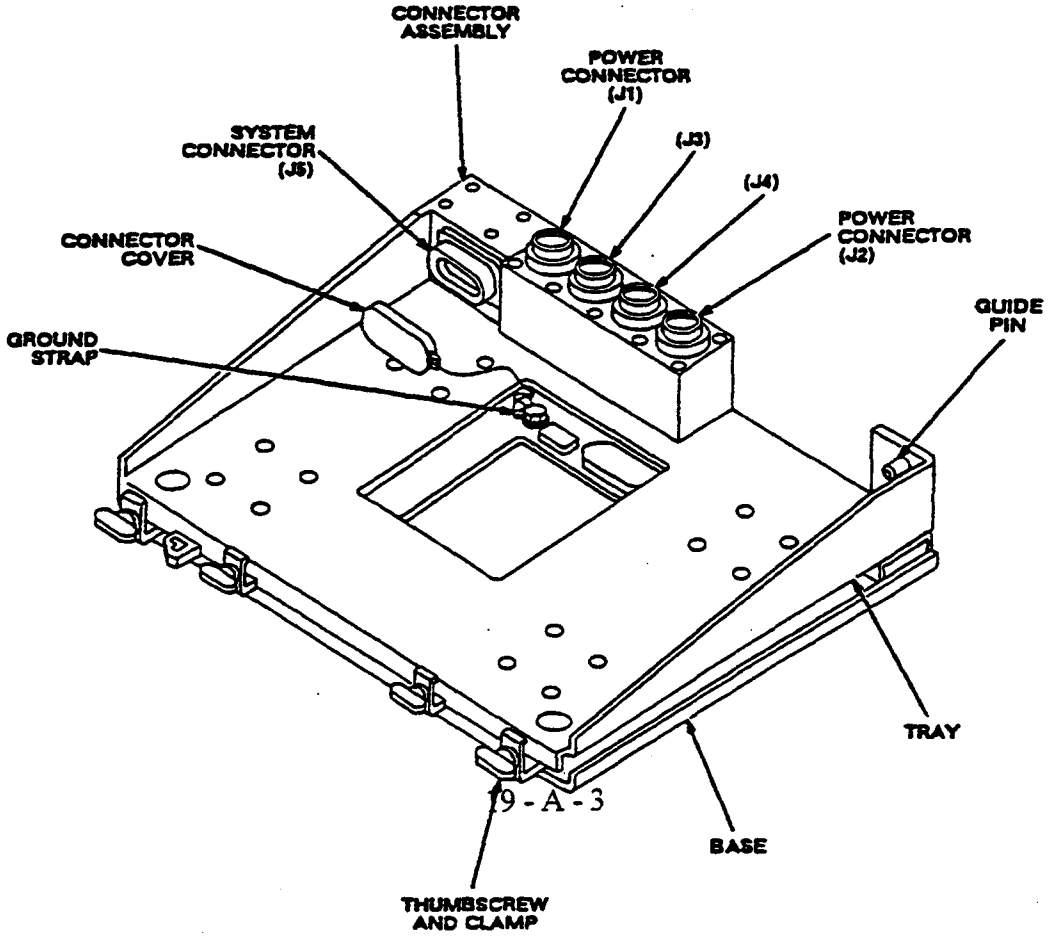


CARRYING CASE, RADIO

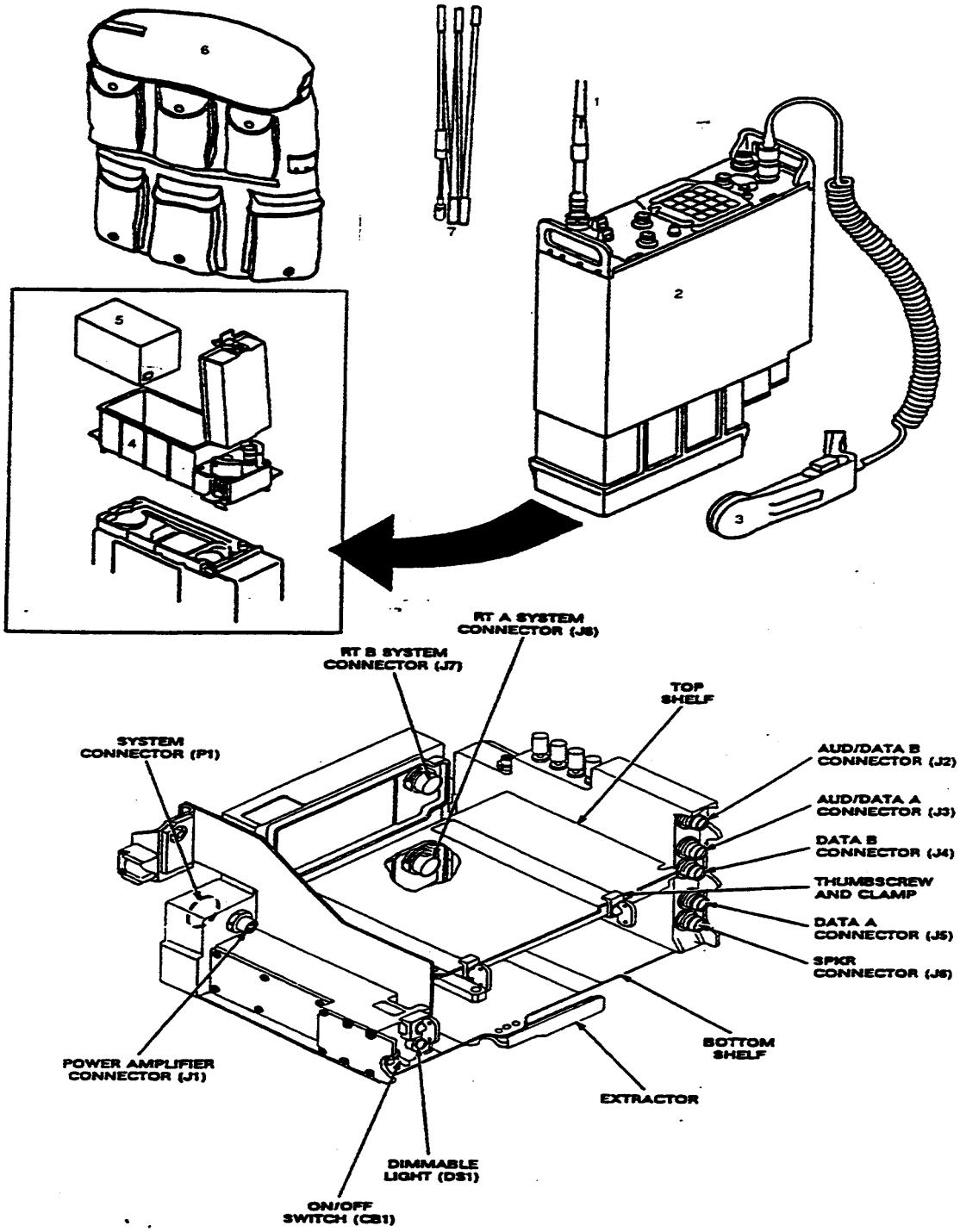
ANTENNA, MANPACK
AS-3683/PRC

APPENDIX H


MODE SWITCH
DISPLAY
CHAN SWITCH
RF PWR SWITCH
SYSTEMS CONNECTOR (P1)
ANT CONNECTOR (J1)
RXMT CONNECTOR (J2)
FCTN SWITCH
DIM CONTROL
KEYBOARD
COMSEC SWITCH
VOL/WHSP CONTROL
AUD/DATA CONNECTOR (J4)
AUD/FILL CONNECTOR (J3)


CONNECTOR ASSEMBLY
POWER CONNECTOR (J1)
(J3)
(J4)
SYSTEM CONNECTOR (J5)
CONNECTOR COVER
POWER CONNECTOR (J2)
GUIDE PIN
GROUND STRAP
TRAY
BASE
THUMBSCREW AND CLAMP

APPENDIX H


6
7
1
2
5
4
3
RT A SYSTEM CONNECTOR (J6)
RT B SYSTEM CONNECTOR (J7)
TOP SHELF
SYSTEM CONNECTOR (P1)
AUD/DATA B CONNECTOR (J2)
AUD/DATA A CONNECTOR (J3)
DATA B CONNECTOR (J4)
THUMBSCREW AND CLAMP
DATA A CONNECTOR (J5)
SPKR CONNECTOR (J8)
BOTTOM SHELF
POWER AMPLIFIER CONNECTOR (J1)
EXTRACTOR
DIMMABLE LIGHT (DS1)
ON/OFF SWITCH (CB1)

APPENDIX I

REPORTS.

BRIDGE SITUATION

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "BRIDGE SITUATION, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM Grid)) _____.

DELTA: (Type of bridge (Use Symbols)) _____.

ECHO: (Single flow classification) _____.

FOXTROT: (Double flow classification) _____.

GOLF: (Physical condition of bridge) _____.

HOTEL: (Minimum width of traveled way) _____.

INDIA: (Overhead clearence) _____.

JULIET: (Bypasses) _____.

KILO: (Other significant information) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

DAM AND SLUICE REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS" Originator:_____. "DAM AND SLUICE REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and the information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM Grid) _____.

DELTA: (Type) _____.

ECHO: (Dimensions) _____.

FOXTROT: (Condition) _____.

GOLF: (Additional Information) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) "OVER"

APPENDIX I

ENEMY DEMOLITION'S REPORT

Addressee:____.'THIS 1S"Originator:_____."ENEMY DEMOLITION'S REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map Sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM grid) _____.

DELTA: (Type of target destroyed) _____.

ECHO: (Size of gap) _____.

FOXTROT: (Possible bypass routes and necessary time and gear to bypass) _____.

GOLF: (Other information useful for crossing) _____.

HOTEL: (Enemy weapons or surveillance bearing on site) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____”OVER".

APPENDIX I

ENEMY MINEFIELD/UNIDENTIFIED MINEFIELD

Addressee:_____."THIS IS" Originator:_____. " ENEMY MINEFIELD/ UNIDENTIFIED MINEFIELD, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map Sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Type of minefield) _____.

DELTA: (Grid reference of extremities) _____.

ECHO: (Depth of minefield) _____.

FOXTROT: (Enemy surveillance bearing on minefield) _____.

GOLF: (Estimated time to clear minefield) _____.

HOTEL: (Estimated material and equipment to clear minefield) _____.

INDIA: (Routes for bypassing minefield, if any) _____.

JULIET-YANKEE: (Grid reference of lanes (Entry & Exit) and width of lane _____.

ZULU: (Other information about minefield) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

EPW REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "EPW REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Number of EPWs captured since last report/cumulative total) .

BRAVO: (Number of civilian internees held since last report/cumulative total) .

CHARLIE: (Number of civilian internees detained since last report/ cumulative total) .

DELTA: (Number of unaccompanied minors(Less than 18 years old) held/ detained since last report/ cumulative total) .

ECHO: (Nationality of EPWs captured since last report/ cumulative total) .

FOXTROT: (Armed service of EPWs captured since last report/ cumulative total) .

GOLF: (Number of EPWs evacuated since last report/ cumulative total) .

HOTEL: (Number of EPWs by nationality awaiting evacuation within last 24 hours) .

INDIA: (Name and place to be evacuate to) .

JULIET: (Number of EPWs in U.S. medical channels) .

KILO: (Number of EPWs in U.S. intel channels) .

LIMA: (Number of EPWs located at specific locations) .

MIKE: (Number of EPW losses since last report/ cumulative total) .

NOVEMBER: (Unit that captured EPW, how obtained if not captured since last report) .

OSCAR: (Coordinator at site where EPWs are held) .

PAPA: (Name/unit requesting EPW evac) .

QUEBEC: (Location/time number of EPW to evac) .

APPENDIX I

ROMEO: (Point of contact(Name, rank, title, phone, etc…) .

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

FERRY SITUATION

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "FERRY SITUATION, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM Grid)) _____.

DELTA: (Military load classification of approaches) _____.

ECHO: (Possibilities of concealment and cover) _____.

FOXTROT: (Width of water obstacle) _____.

GOLF: (Depth of water at the banks to include tidal information) _____.

HOTEL: (Stream velocity) _____.

INDIA: (Slope on bank approaches and bank conditions) _____.

JULIET: (Holding area for road and water transport) _____.

KILO: (Additional information(Max # of rafts, existing equipment, etc)) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

FORD REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "FORD REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM Grid)) _____.

DELTA: (Minimum width) _____.

ECHO: (Maximum depth) _____.

FOXTROT: (Stream velocity) _____.

GOLF: (Type of bottom) _____.

HOTEL: (Maximum percentage of slope on bank entrances and exits) _____.

INDIA: (Military load classification) _____.

JULIET: (Other information) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

MEDEVAC REQUEST

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "MEDEVAC REQUEST, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Urgent- must be moved immediately to save life or limb or to prevent a complication of a serious illness) .

BRAVO: (Priority- requires prompt medical care. Must be picked up within 24 hours) .

CHARLIE: (Routine- minor injury, KIA, Must be picked up within 72 hours) .

DELTA: (Airborne medical assistance required/ not required) .

ECHO: (Pick up coordinates) .

FOXTROT: (LZ frequency and call sign(Encrypt if required) .

GOLF: (LZ secure/ not secure) .

HOTEL: (Description of zone) .

INDIA: (Diameter in feet) .

JULIET: (Obstruction height) .

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

NBC 1 REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "FLASH, FLASH, FLASH NBC1 REPORT, OVER”

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH

TOP SECRET SECRET CONFIDENTIAL UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Precedence/Classification) .

BRAVO: (Location of observer) .

CHARLIE: (Direction of attack from observer .

DELTA: (Date/time beginning of attack) .

ECHO: (Date/time end of attack) .

FOXTROT: (Location of attack) .

GOLF: (Type of agnet/attack/burst(Air, surface, unknown)) .

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

OBSTACLE REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "OBSTACLE REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM Grid)) _____.

DELTA: (Type) _____.

ECHO: (Enemy weapons that have action on the obstacle) _____.

FOXTROT: (Additional information) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

PERSONNEL STATUS REPORT

Addressee:____.'THIS 1S"Originator:_____."PERSONNEL STATUS REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (# of Marines) _____.

BRAVO: (# of Navy) _____.

CHARLIE: (Other) _____.

DELTA: (Hospital) _____.

ECHO: (Medivac) _____.

FOXTROT: (Emergency leave) _____.

GOLF: (TAD) _____.

HOTEL: (Other) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

ROUTE CLOSED REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "ROUTE CLOSED REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of information collected) _____.

CHARLIE: (From grid reference) _____.

DELTA: (To grid reference) _____.

ECHO: (Reason for road closure) _____.

FOXTROT: (Estimated duration) _____.

GOLF: (Detour from grid () to grid()) _____.

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

ROUTE OPEN REPORT

Addressee:____.'THIS 1S"Originator:_____."ROUTE OPEN REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) .

BRAVO: (Date and time route opened) .

CHARLIE: (From grid reference()) .

DELTA: (To grid reference()) .

ECHO: (Military LOAD classification # of route) .

FOXTROT: (Minimum width) .

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

ROUTE RECON REPORT

Addressee:____.'THIS 1S"Originator:_____."PERSONNWL STATUS REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Narrowest width of route expressed in meters or feet) .

BRAVO: (Route type (Type X (All weather route, Hardtop), Type Y (All weather route limited traffic due to weather, GRAVEL), Type Z (Fair weather route, DIRT) .

CHARLIE: (Military route (LOAD) classification, worst section of road or lowest bridge classification will dictate class) .

DELTA: (Lowest overhead clearance expressed in meters or feet) .

ECHO: (Obstructions. Factors which restrict the type, amount or speed of traffic flow) .

FOXTROT: (Special conditions, snow blockage(T): flooding (W)) .

DTG: (Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

SALUTE REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "SALUTE REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Size) _____.

BRAVO: (Activity) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location) _____.

DELTA: (Unit) _____.

ECHO: (Time) _____.

FOXTROT: (Equipment) _____.

GOLF: (Remarks, source, evaluation) _____.

DTG: Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

SPOT REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "SPOT REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Unit/event) _____.

BRAVO: (Date and time of event reported) _____.

CHARLIE: (Location) _____.

DELTA: (Unit movement. Objective secured) _____.

ECHO: (Action taken) _____.

FOXTROT: (Friendly KIA) _____.

GOLF: (Friendly WIA) _____.

HOTEL: (Enemy WIA) _____.

INDIA: (Enemy KIA) _____.

JULIET: (EPW) _____.

KILO: (Detainees) _____.

LIMA: (Weapons captured) _____.

MIKE: (Equip/documents captured) _____.

DTG: Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

SUPPLY REQUEST

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "SUPPLY REQUEST, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Materials to be requested) _____.

BRAVO: (Quantity of materials to be requested) _____.

CHARLIE: (Ordinance to be requested) _____.

DELTA: (Quantity of ordinance to be requested) _____.

ECHO: (Perishables to be requested) _____.

FOXTROT: (Quantity of perishables to be requested) _____.

GOLF: (Location of delivery) _____.

HOTEL: (Time to be delivered) _____.

INDIA: (Miscallenous information) _____.

DTG: Date-Time group of message) _____ ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

TUNNEL REPORT

Addressee:_____. "THIS IS"_____. Originator. "TUNNEL REPORT, OVER"

The addressee answers, and the originator provides the following information:

FLASH	IMMEDIATE	PRIORITY	ROUTINE
TOP SECRET	SECRET	CONFIDENTIAL	UNCLASSIFIED

ALPHA: (Map sheet) .

BRAVO: (Date/time information gathered) .

CHARLIE: (Location (UTM grid)) .

DELTA: (Length) .

ECHO: (Width) .

FOXTROT: (Overhead clearance) .

GOLF: (Gradient) .

HOTEL: (Type of tunnel) .

INDIA: (Condition) .

JULIET: (Bypass) .

KILO: (Other information) .

DTG: Date-Time group of message) ”OVER".

APPENDIX I

MILITARY POLICE ESTIMATE OF SUPPORTABILITY

Ref: (a) MCWP 3-34.1

1. **Mission**. MP mission gleaned from higher mission.

2. **Situation and Considerations**.

a. Characteristics of the Area of Operations. See Intelligence estimate.

b. Friendly Forces. Other US or Host Nation forces which could support your mission.

c. Assumptions. (What you believe the mission to be and assumptions you make until verified.)

(1) That the missions will be:

(a) BCC to include:

(b) AS to include:

(c) Enemy Prisoner of War Operation to include:

(d) Law and Order Operations to include:

(2) List other assumptions as required.

3. **Military Police Analysis**.

a. Considerations Having Equal Effect.

(1) Explain the factors that are considered in developing the course of action.

(a) Security Forces. Factors which determine the size and function of security forces are as follows.

4. **Evaluation**.

a. Course of Action #1. The best option for employing MPs.

(1) Advantages. In respect to ability to completed stated and implied missions.

(2) Disadvantages. The impact or problems with tine course of action

b. Course of Action #2. Next best solution.

(1) Advantages.

(2) Disadvantages.

5. **Conclusion**. Your best course of action and why.

APPENDIX I

ROAD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
For use of this form, see FM 5-36; proponent agency is TRADOC.

DATE: 29 Aug 84

TO: (Headquarters ordering reconnaissance): Cdr, ATTN: S-2, 21st Engr Bn

FROM: (Name, grade and unit of officer or NCO making reconnaissance): D. Mooneyhan, D. MOONEYHAN, SFC, Co A, 21st Engr Bn

1. MAPS	a. COUNTRY	b. SCALE	c. SHEET NUMBER OF MAPS	2. DATE/TIME GROUP (Of signature)
	Ft. Belvoir Special	1:50,000	AMS V733 Sheet 5561 IV	291430 Aug 84

SECTION I - GENERAL ROAD INFORMATION

3. ROAD GRID REFERENCE FROM	TO	4. ROAD MARKING (Civilian or Military number of road)	5. LENGTH OF ROAD (Miles or Kilometers, specify)
UT 122864	UT 097999	Virginia Route 617	16 km

6. WIDTH OF ROADWAY (Feet or meters, specify): 6.7 m to 9.3 m

8. WEATHER DURING RECONNAISSANCE (Include last rainfall, if known): Fair - Temp 79°. Last Rainfall - 15 Aug 84

7. RECONNAISSANCE — DATE: 29 Aug 84 — TIME: 0615

SECTION II - DETAILED ROAD INFORMATION (When circumstances permit more detailed information will be shown in an overlay or on the mileage chart on the reverse side of this form. Standard symbols will be used.)

9. ALINEMENT (Check one ONLY)

- [ ] (1) FLAT GRADIENTS AND EASY CURVES
- [ ] (2) STEEP GRADIENTS (Excess of 7 in 100)
- [ ] (3) SHARP CURVES (Radius less than 100 ft (30m))
- [✓] (4) STEEP GRADIENTS AND SHARP CURVES

10. DRAINAGE (Check one ONLY)

- [ ] (1) ADEQUATE DITCHES, CROWN/CAMBER WITH ADEQUATE CULVERTS IN GOOD CONDITION
- [✓] (2) INADEQUATE DITCHES, CROWN/CAMBER OR CULVERTS. ITS CULVERTS OR DITCHES ARE BLOCKED OR OTHERWISE IN POOR CONDITION

11. FOUNDATION (Check one ONLY)

- [✓] (1) STABILIZED COMPACT MATERIAL OF GOOD QUALITY
- [ ] (2) UNSTABLE, LOOSE OR EASILY DISPLACED MATERIAL

12. SURFACE DESCRIPTION (Complete items 12a and b)

a. THE SURFACE IS (Check one ONLY)

- [✓] (1) FREE OF POTHOLES, BUMPS, OR RUTS LIKELY TO REDUCE CONVOY SPEED
- [ ] (2) BUMPY, RUTTED OR POTHOLED TO AN EXTENT LIKELY TO REDUCE CONVOY SPEED

b. TYPE OF SURFACE (Check one ONLY)

- [ ] (1) CONCRETE
- [✓] (2) BITUMINOUS (Specify type where known): Asphalt
- [ ] (3) BRICK (Pave)
- [ ] (4) STONE (Pave)
- [ ] (5) CRUSHED ROCK OR CORAL
- [ ] (6) WATERBOUND MACADAM
- [ ] (7) GRAVEL
- [ ] (8) LIGHTLY METALLED
- [ ] (9) NATURAL OR STABILIZED SOIL, SAND CLAY, SHELL, CINDERS, DISINTEGRATED GRANITE, OR OTHER SELECTED MATERIAL
- [ ] (10) OTHER (Describe):

SECTION III - OBSTRUCTIONS (List in the columns below particulars of the following obstructions which affect the traffic capacity of a road. If information of any factor cannot be ascertained, insert "NOT KNOWN")
(a) Overhead obstructions, less than 14 feet or 4.25 meters, such as tunnels, bridges, overhead wires and overhanging buildings.
(b) Reductions in road widths which limit the traffic capacity, such as centers, narrow bridges, archways, and buildings.
(c) Excessive gradients (Above 7 in 100)
(d) Curves less than 100 feet (30 meters) in radius)
(e) Fords

SERIAL NUMBER a	PARTICULARS b	GRID REFERENCE c	REMARKS d
	Steep Grade - 8%	UT 119872	200 m Long
	Sharp Curve	UT 112 877	Radius 21 m
	Constriction	UT 112 878	6.7m wide, 300m long
	Constriction	UT 105 896	7m wide, 100m long

DA FORM 1 JUL 66 1248 — PREVIOUS EDITION OF THIS FORM IS OBSOLETE.

APPENDIX I

ROAD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
(FM 5-36)

DATE

TO: *(Headquarters ordering reconnaissance)*

FROM: *(Name, grade and unit of officer or NCO making reconnaissance)*

1. MAPS	a. COUNTRY	b. SCALE	c. SHEET NUMBER OF MAPS	2. DATE/TIME GROUP *(Of signature)*

SECTION I - GENERAL ROAD INFORMATION

3. ROAD GRID REFERENCE		4. ROAD MARKING *(Civilian or Military number of road)*	5. LENGTH OF ROAD *(Miles or kilometers, specify)*
FROM	TO		

6. WIDTH OF ROADWAY *(Feet or meters, specify)*

7. RECONNAISSANCE

DATE	TIME

8. WEATHER DURING RECONNAISSANCE *(Include last rainfall, if known)*

SECTION II - DETAILED ROAD INFORMATION
(When circumstances permit more detailed information will be shown in an overlay or on the mileage chart on the reverse side of this form. Standard symbols will be used.)

9. ALINEMENT *(Check one ONLY)*

- (1) FLAT GRADIENTS AND EASY CURVES
- (2) STEEP GRADIENTS *(Excess of 7 in 100)*
- (3) SHARP CURVES *(Radius less than 100 ft (30m))*
- (4) STEEP GRADIENTS AND SHARP CURVES

10. DRAINAGE *(Check one ONLY)*

- (1) ADEQUATE DITCHES, CROWN/CAMBER WITH ADEQUATE CULVERTS IN GOOD CONDITION
- (2) INADEQUATE DITCHES, CROWN/CAMBER OR CULVERTS, ITS CULVERTS OR DITCHES ARE BLOCKED OR OTHERWISE IN POOR CONDITION

11. FOUNDATION *(Check one ONLY)*

- (1) STABILIZED COMPACT MATERIAL OF GOOD QUALITY
- (2) UNSTABLE, LOOSE OR EASILY DISPLACED MATERIAL

12. SURFACE DESCRIPTION *(Complete items 12a and b)*

a. THE SURFACE IS *(Check one ONLY)*

- (1) FREE OF POTHOLES, BUMPS, OR RUTS LIKELY TO REDUCE CONVOY SPEED
- (2) BUMPY, RUTTED OR POTHOLED TO AN EXTENT LIKELY TO REDUCE CONVOY SPEED

b. TYPE OF SURFACE *(Check one ONLY)*

- (1) CONCRETE
- (2) BITUMINOUS *(Specify type where known)*:
- (3) BRICK *(Pave)*
- (4) STONE *(Pave)*
- (5) CRUSHED ROCK OR CORAL
- (6) WATERBOUND MACADAM
- (7) GRAVEL
- (8) LIGHTLY METALLED
- (9) NATURAL OR STABILIZED SOIL, SAND CLAY, SHELL, CINDERS, DISINTEGRATED GRANITE, OR OTHER SELECTED MATERIAL
- (10) OTHER *(Describe)*:

SECTION III - OBSTRUCTIONS
(List in the columns below particulars of the following obstructions which affect the traffic capacity of a road. If information of any factor cannot be ascertained, insert "NOT KNOWN")

(a) Overhead obstructions, less than 14 feet or 4.25 meters, such as tunnels, bridges, overhead wires and overhanging buildings.
(b) Reductions in road widths which limit the traffic capacity, such as craters, narrow bridges, archways, and buildings.
(c) Excessive gradients (Above 7 in 100)
(d) Curves less than 100 feet (30 meters) in radius
(e) Fords

SERIAL NUMBER *a*	PARTICULARS *b*	GRID REFERENCE *c*	REMARKS *d*

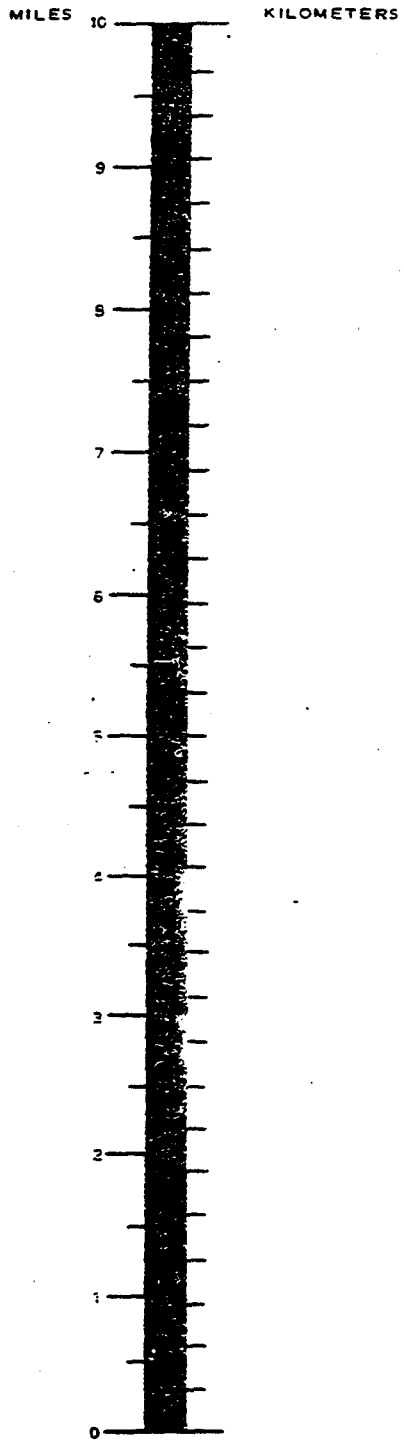
DA FORM 1 JUL 60 1248 PREVIOUS EDITION OF THIS FORM IS OBSOLETE. S/N 0101-618-1000 PLATE NO. 22859 (FRONT)

APPENDIX I

SECTION IV - MILEAGE CHART

ROUTE		SCALE	DATE
FROM	TO		

ROAD INFORMATION	DISTANCE	ROAD INFORMATION



REMARKS

PLATE NO. 22859 (BACK)

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1972—714-283/4936 2-1

D-39213

APPENDIX I

TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
(FM 5-36)

DATE

TO: *(Headquarters ordering reconnaissance)*

FROM: *(Name, grade and unit of reconnaissance officer)*

1. ROUTE OR LINE		2. FROM *(Initial Point)*	3. TO *(Terminal Point)*	4. DATE/TIME *(Of signature)*
HIGHWAY	RAILROAD			

5. MAP SERIES NR	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE		8. TUNNEL NUMBER
		TYPE	COORDINATES	

9. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN			10. TYPE *(Subaqueous, Rock, Soil)*
DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	

11. NAME *(Mountain or Water feature)*	12. LENGTH	13. NUMBER OF TRACKS	14. ROADWAY WIDTH

15. CLEARANCE		16. GRADE *(Percent)*	17. ALINEMENT *(Straight or radius of curve)*
VERTICAL	HORIZONTAL		

18. LINING *(Material)*	19. PORTALS *(Material)*	20. VENTILATION *(Type)*

21. DRAINAGE

22. CHAMBERED FOR DEMOLITION	23. COMPLETED *(Year)*	24. CONDITION *(Check appropriate box)*
☐ YES ☐ NO		☐ EXCELLENT ☐ GOOD ☐ FAIR ☐ POOR

25. BYPASS

26. ALTERNATE CROSSING

27. APPROACHES

28. IN-TUNNEL RESTRICTIONS

29. GEOLOGIC DATA

DA FORM 1 JAN 55 1250

S/N 0101-LF-618-3000

30. PLAN AND PROFILE	PLAN SCALE 1 SQUARE =	PROFILE SCALE 1 SQUARE = ☐ HOR. ☐ VERT.

31. PORTAL VIEW	SCALE 1 SQUARE =	32. CROSS-SECTION OF BORE	SCALE 1 SQUARE =

33. REMARKS *(Attach photograph)*

S/N 0101-LF-618-3000

APPENDIX I

APPENDIX I

TUNNEL RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
For use of this form, see FM 5-36; the proponent agency is TRADOC.

DATE: 29 Aug 84

TO: (Headquarters ordering reconnaissance): Cdr, ATTN: S-2, 21st Engr Bn

FROM: (Name, grade and unit of reconnaissance officer): Charles Clark
CHARLES CLARK 2LT Co A 21st Engr Bn

1. ROUTE OR LINE		2. FROM (Initial Point)	3. TO (Terminal Point)	4. DATE/TIME (Of signature)
HIGHWAY: VA 617	RAILROAD: NA	UT 122864	UT 097899	301700 Aug 84

5. MAP SERIES NR	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE: TYPE	COORDINATES	8. TUNNEL NUMBER
V 734	5561 III	1:50,000	UT 098888	T-1

9. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN: DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	10. TYPE (Subaqueous, Rock, Soil)
10 km	NW	Ft. Belvoir VA	Rock

11. NAME (Mountain or Water feature)	12. LENGTH	13. NUMBER OF TRACKS	14. ROADWAY WIDTH
Accotink Mountains	100 m	NA	7.5 m

15. CLEARANCE: VERTICAL	HORIZONTAL	16. GRADE (Percent)	17. ALINEMENT (Straight or radius of curve)
6 m	8 m	3%	Straight

18. LINING (Material)	19. PORTALS (Material)	20. VENTILATION (Type)
Concrete	Stone	Natural

21. DRAINAGE: Excellent

22. CHAMBERED FOR DEMOLITION: ☐ YES ☒ NO

23. COMPLETED (Year): 1908

24. CONDITION (Check appropriate box): ☐ EXCELLENT ☒ GOOD ☐ FAIR ☐ POOR

25. BYPASSABILITY: Easy on East (Ft Belvoir side)
Difficult on West

26. ALTERNATE CROSSING: Backlick Road to Shirley Highway

27. APPROACHES: Good, 3% Entrance, Exit is level

28. IN-TUNNEL RESTRICTIONS: Not to be used for double-flow, tracked because traveled way width not to standard. No lighting in tunnel.

29. GEOLOGIC DATA: Unknown — Possibility of slides at entrances.

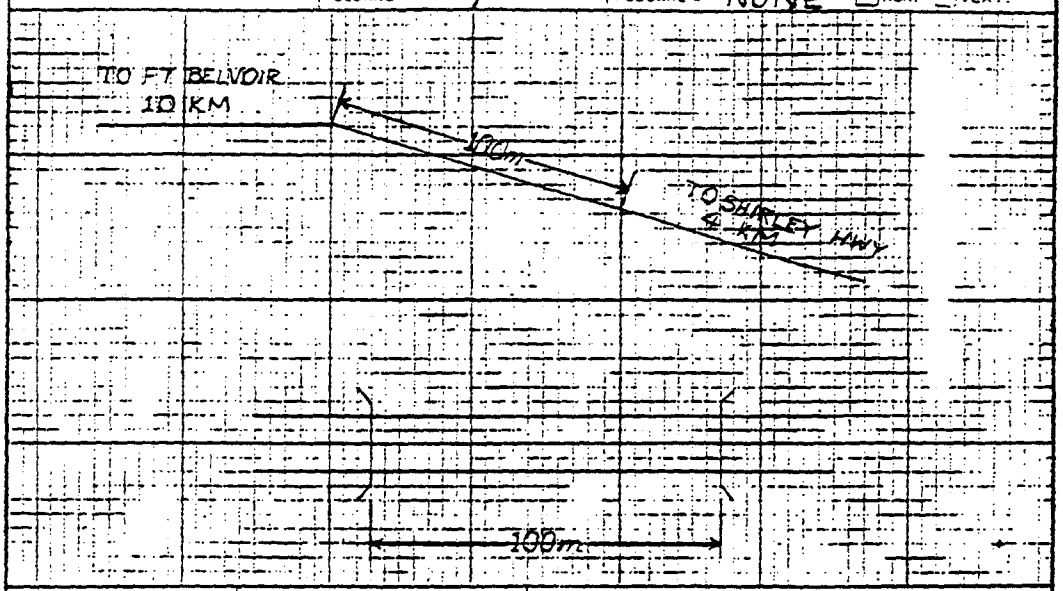
DA FORM 1 JAN 64 1250

APPENDIX I

30. PLAN AND PROFILE

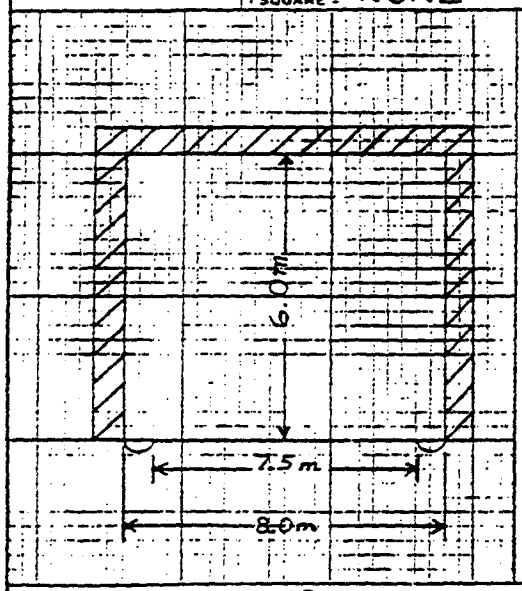
PLAN SCALE 1 SQUARE = N/A

PROFILE SCALE 1 SQUARE = NONE ☐ HOR. ☐ VERT.



31. PORTAL VIEW

SCALE 1 SQUARE = NONE



32. CROSS-SECTION OF BORE

SCALE 1 SQUARE = N/A

SAME AS PORTALS

33. REMARKS (Attach photograph) NONE

APPENDIX I

FORD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
For use of this form, see FM 5-36; the proponent agency is TRADOC.

DATE: 29 Aug 84

TO: (Headquarters ordering reconnaissance): Cdr, ATTN: S-2, 21st Engr Bn

FROM: (Name, grade and unit of reconnaissance officer): Ronald Perrin
RONALD PERRIN, SFC, Co A, 21st Engr Bn

1. ROUTE NUMBER	2. FROM (Initial Point)	3. TO (Terminal Point)	4. DATE/TIME (Of signature)
Virginia 617	UT 122864	UT 097899	291800 Aug 84

5. MAP SERIES NUMBER	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE TYPE	7. GRID REFERENCE COORDINATES	8. FORD NUMBER
V 734	5561 III	1:50,000	UT 100886	1

9. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN: DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	10. CROSSING (Name of stream or other body of water)
14 Km	SE	Ft. Belvoir, VA	Accotink Creek

11. CHARACTERISTICS OF CROSSING

WATER LEVELS	WIDTH	DEPTH	VELOCITY	DATE	SEASON OR MONTH(S)
TODAY	7.3 m	.5 m	1.5 m/sec	29 Aug 84	
LOW	6.1 m	.3 m	1.1 m/sec	14 Jun 80	
MEAN	7.3 m	.5 m	2 m/sec		
HIGH	8.4 m	1.8 m	2.2 m/sec		

12. BOTTOM: ☐ SAND ☑ GRAVEL ☐ STONE ☐ OTHER (Specify):

13. APPROACHES: ☐ FIRM ☐ SOFT ☑ PAVED

14. SLOPE RATIO: 3:1

15. TYPE OF PAVEMENT: Bituminous

16. USABLE WIDTH: 7.3 m

17. HAZARDS (Flash floods, quicksand, etc.): Unknown

18. REMARKS (Description of Approach Roads, Guide Markers, Depth Gages, etc.)

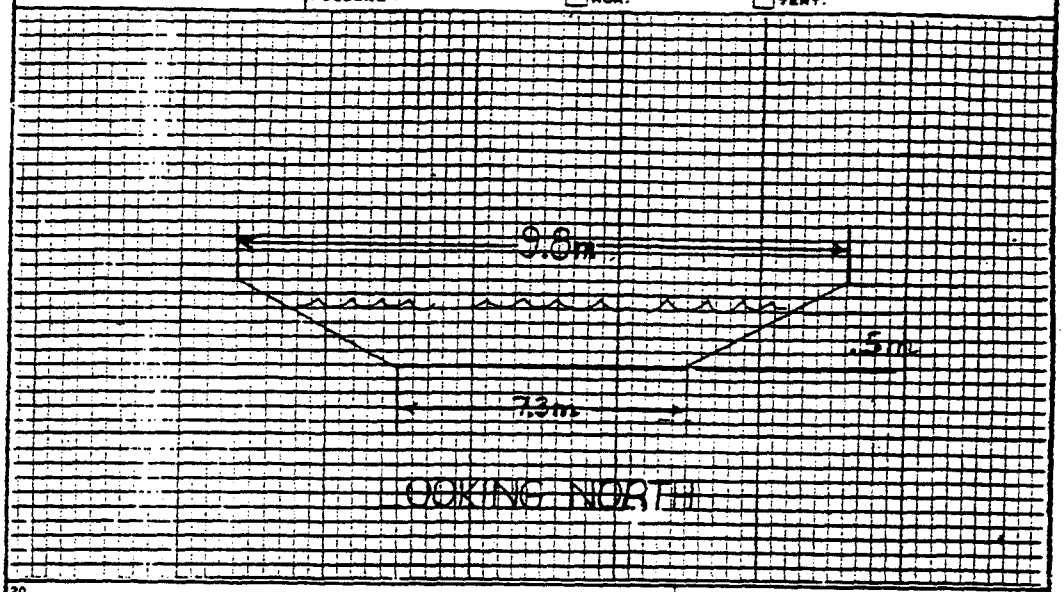
The bottom is loose gravel, 9.8 m long, 7.3 m wide, .5m deep, with a velocity of 1.5 m/sec. There appear to be no seasonal limitations. Approach conditions on both banks are easy. All measurements with a 100-meter tape measure. A yard stick was used to measure depth.

DA FORM 1 JAN 55 1251

APPENDIX I

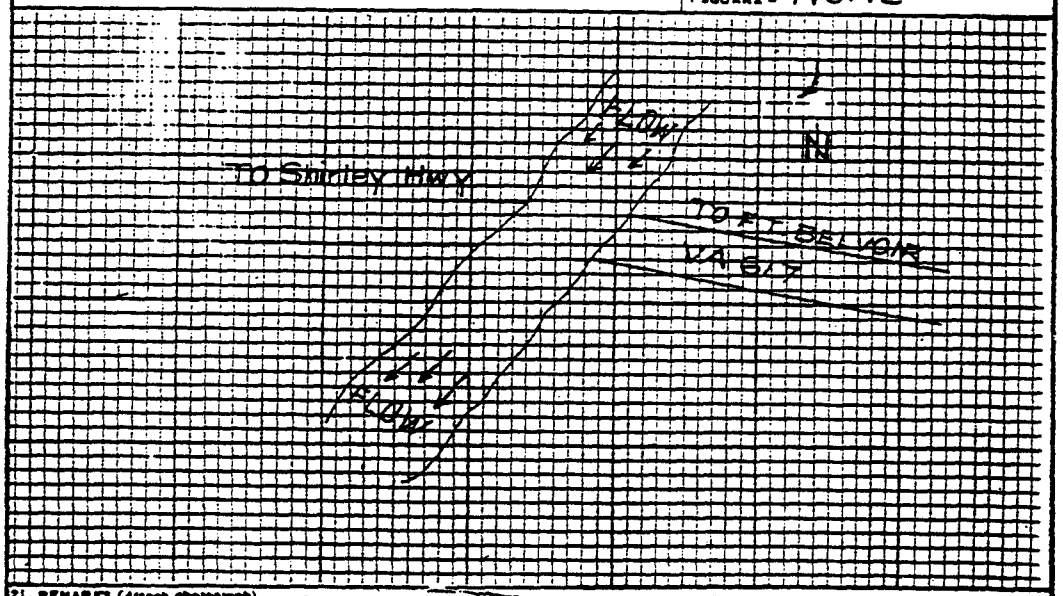
19. PROFILE

SCALE 1 SQUARE = ☐ HOR. ☐ VERT.



20. SITE PLAN (Indicate north arrow and direction of flow)

SCALE 1 SQUARE = NONE



21. REMARKS (Attach photograph)

TO HANDLE - EXCESSIVE LOADS
STREAM BED MUST BE
IMPROVED

APPENDIX I

FORD RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
(FM 5-36)

DATE

TO: *(Headquarters ordering reconnaissance)*

FROM: *(Name, grade and unit of reconnaissance officer)*

1. ROUTE NUMBER	2. FROM *(Initial Point)*	3. TO *(Terminal Point)*	4. DATE/TIME *(Of signature)*

5. MAP SERIES NUMBER	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE		8. FORD NUMBER
		TYPE	COORDINATES	

9. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN			10. CROSSING *(Name of stream or other body of water)*
DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	

11. CHARACTERISTICS OF CROSSING

WATER LEVELS	WIDTH	DEPTH	VELOCITY	DATE	SEASON OR MONTH(S)
TODAY					
LOW					
MEAN					
HIGH					

12. BOTTOM	13. APPROACHES	14. SLOPE RATIO
☐ SAND ☐ GRAVEL ☐ STONE ☐ OTHER *(Specify)*:	☐ FIRM ☐ SOFT ☐ PAVED	

15. TYPE OF PAVEMENT	16. USABLE WIDTH	17. HAZARDS *(Flash floods, quicksand, etc.)*

18. REMARKS *(Description of Approach Roads, Guide Markers, Depth Gages, etc.)*

DA FORM 1251 S/N 0101-618-4000

19. PROFILE

SCALE
1 SQUARE = ☐ HOR. ☐ VERT.

20. SITE PLAN (Indicate north arrow and direction of flow)

SCALE
1 SQUARE =

21. REMARKS (Attach photographs)

S/N 0101-018-4000

APPENDIX I

APPENDIX I

FERRY RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
(FM 5-36)

DATE

TO: (Headquarters ordering reconnaissance)

FROM: (Name, grade and unit of reconnaissance officer)

1. ROUTE OR LINE		2. FROM (Initial Point)	3. TO (Terminal Point)	4. DATE/TIME (Of Signature)
HIGHWAY	RAILROAD			

5. MAP SERIES NR	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE		8. FERRY NR	9. CLASS
		TYPE	COORDINATES		

10. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN			11. CROSSING (Name of stream or body of water)
DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	

12. LIMITING FEATURE (Conditions of vessels, terminals, floods, low water, freezing, tides etc.) (Seasons and Dates)

13. WATER LEVELS (Depths)			14. CROSSING TIME	15. LENGTH
LOW	MEAN	HIGH		

16. VESSEL FEATURES (Attach photographs)

UNITS	CONSTRUCTION TYPE	PROPULSION METHOD			LENGTH	BEAM	DRAFT	TONNAGE		CAPACITY		
		TYPE	UNITS	HP				GROSS	NET	PASS	VEHICLE	R.R. CARS

17. TERMINAL FEATURES

DIRECTION OF BANK	NAME	SLIP			DOCKING FACILITIES	APPROACHES				
						HIGHWAY			RAILROAD	
		WIDTH	DEPTH	CAPACITY		SURF	LANES	CLASS	TRACKS	SIDING
N E S W N										
N E S W N										

18. REMARKS (Amplify above details. Note obstructions, navigational and other pertinent data)

DA FORM 1 JAN 55 1252 0101 619 5000

APPENDIX I

FERRY RECONNAISSANCE REPORT
For use of this form, see FM 5-36; the proponent agency is TRADOC.

DATE: 18 Aug 84

TO: (Headquarters ordering reconnaissance): Cdr, ATTN: S-2, 21st Engr Bn

FROM: (Name, grade, and unit of reconnaissance officer): H. L. Dugan
H L DUGAN, SFC, CoA, 21st Engr Bn

1. ROUTE OR LINE		2. FROM (Initial Point)	3. TO (Terminal Point)	4. DATE/TIME (Of Signature)
HIGHWAY: VA 617	RAILROAD: NA	Lorton, VA	Hoby, MD	181900 Aug 84

5. MAP SERIES NR	6. SHEET NUMBER	7. GRID REFERENCE TYPE	7. GRID REFERENCE COORDINATES	8. FERRY NR	9. CLASS
V 734	5661 III	1:50,000	UT 134830	1	45

10. LOCATION FROM NEAREST TOWN: DISTANCE	DIRECTION	NAME OF NEAREST TOWN	11. CROSSING (Name of stream or body of water)
8 Km	East	Lorton, VA	Potomac River

12. LIMITING FEATURE (Condition of vessels, terminals, floods, low water, icing, tides etc.) (Seasons and Dates): River freezes in winter months

13. WATER LEVELS (Depths) LOW	MEAN	HIGH	14. CROSSING TIME	15. LENGTH
3.2 m	4.7 m	7.6 m	20 minutes	1 Km

16. VESSEL FEATURES (Attach photographs)

UNITS	CONSTRUCTION TYPE	PROPULSION METHOD TYPE	PROPULSION METHOD UNITS	PROPULSION METHOD HP	LENGTH	BEAM	DRAFT	TONNAGE GROSS	TONNAGE NET	CAPACITY PASS	CAPACITY VEHICLE	CAPACITY R.R. CARS
2	Open	Diesel	2	610	22.5m	1.6m	1.6m	85	85	200	8 Maximum	NA

17. TERMINAL FEATURES

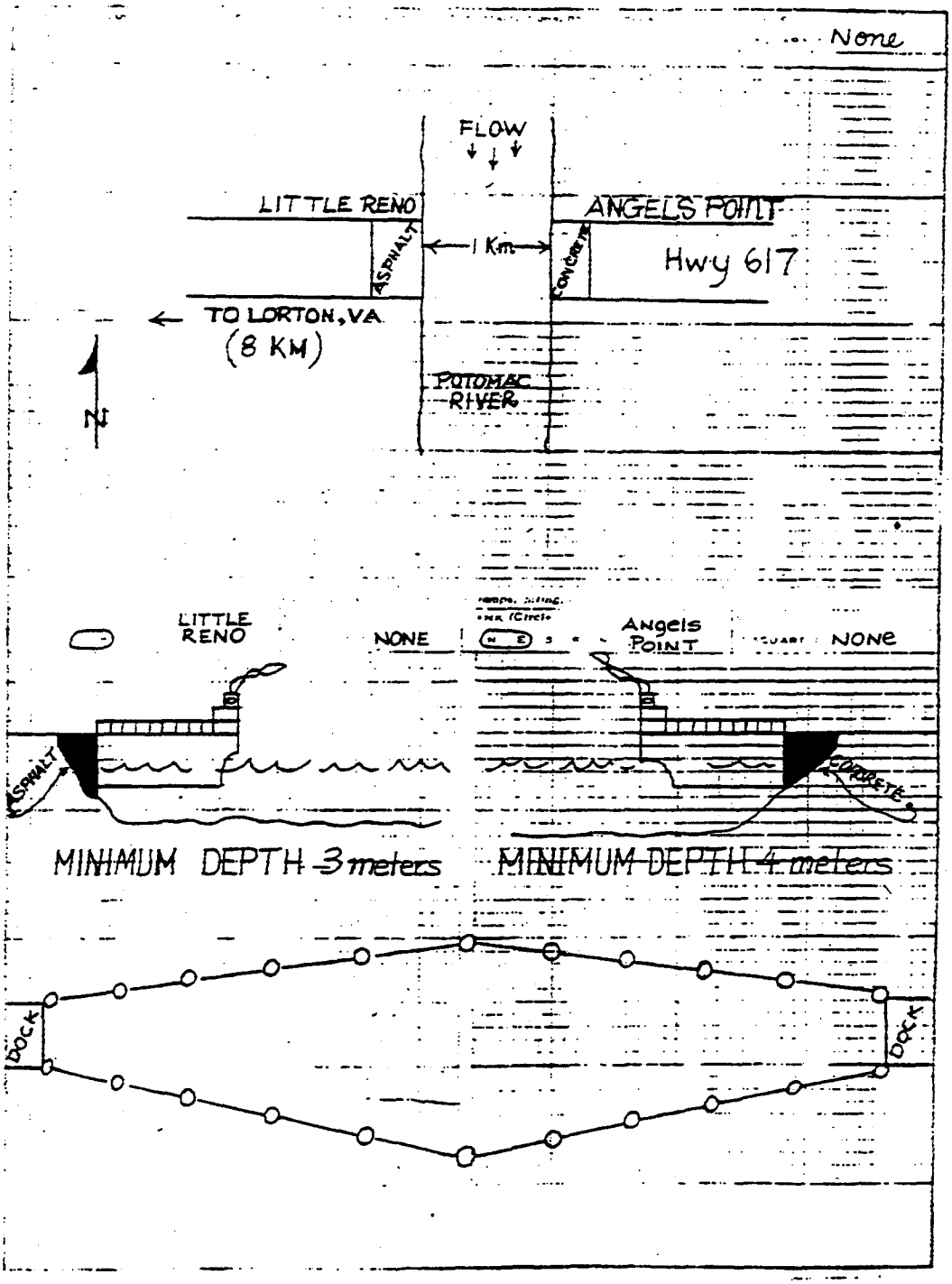
DIRECTION OF BANK	NAME	SLIP WIDTH	SLIP DEPTH	SLIP CAPACITY	DOCKING FACILITIES	APPROACHES HIGHWAY SURF	HIGHWAY LANES	HIGHWAY CLASS	RAILROAD TRACKS	RAILROAD SIDING
N E (S) W N	Little Reno	13.2m	3m	1	Good	As-phalt	2	45	NA	NA
(N) E S W N	Angels Point	14m	4m	1	Good	Con-crete	2	55	NA	NA

18. REMARKS (Amplify above details. Note obstructions, navigational and other pertinent data)

Anchorage shown on back uses 30.5 cm piles, spaced approximately 10 meters, center to center

DA FORM 1 JAN 69 1252

APPENDIX I


None
FLOW
LITTLE RENO
ANGELS POINT
ASPHALT
1 Km
CONCRETE
Hwy 617
TO LORTON, VA
(8 KM)
POTOMAC RIVER
N
LITTLE RENO
NONE
Angels POINT
NONE
ASPHALT
CONCRETE
MINIMUM DEPTH 3 meters
MINIMUM DEPTH 4 meters
DOCK
DOCK

APPENDIX J

FIRE SUPPORT

Call For Fire

* FDC WILL REPEAT EACH LINE TO FO FOR CONFIRMATION

1. **LINE #1**:

a. Observer Identification.

(1) FDC and Observer Identification ("You this is me...").

(a) Warning Order.

(2) Type of Mission.

(a) Adjust Fire (See method of target location.).

(b) Fire for Effect ("...FIRE FOR EFFECT, OVER.").

(c) Suppress ("...Suppress, OVER).

(d) Immediate Suppression ("...Immediate Suppression, over.").

(3) Method of target location

(a) Grid ("...Adjust fire grid, Over").

(b) Polar ("...Adjust fire polar, Over").

(c) Shift from A Known Point ("...ADJUST FIRE SHIFT AB1001, OVER").

2. **LINE #2**:

a. Target Location

(1) Grid. Six place coordinates ("123 456, Over").

(2) Polar. Direction and distance in meters from the FO to the target ("Direction one. Two hundred, distance one thousand, Over").

(3) Shift. Direction to the target/ lateral shift L/R +/- ("One - two hundred, left one hundred, add two hundred, over").

APPENDIX J

3. **LINE #3**:
   a. Target description.

   (1) Description of the target including cover and movement ("Five tanks moving in the open, Over.").

4. **LINE #4 & #5**:

   (a) Method of Engagement/ Method of fire.

   (1) Standard or derived by FDC.

APPENDIX J

TARGET LOCATION METHODS

TARGET LOCATION METHODS

1. **Grid**.

a. Determine a six place coordinate to the designated target

b. Determine the grid direction to the target and insure that the Observer Target (OT) direction is sent to the FDC after the call for fire is completed but prior to the first correction.

2. **POLAR**.

a. Determine the OT direction to the target from the OP's position.

b. Determine the distance from the OP's position to the target.

W=R x M (mil relation)
W= lateral shift in meters

R = distance to the known point divided by 1000 (when shifting from a known point the R is rounded to the nearest 10th.

M = measured angle in mils between the known point and the target.

MESSAGE TO OBSERVER

1. Unit to fire for effect.

2. Any changes to your request in the call for fire.

3. Method of fire (# of rounds to be fired).

DEVIATION CORRECTIONS

1. Distance in meters left or right to adjust determined by:

OT Factor x Deviation in Mils

a. OT Factor it computed by:

Estimated range to target / 1000

(1) If OT distance > 1000 meters round to nearest 1000 meters.

(2) If OT distance < 1000 meters round to nearest 100 meters.

END OF MISSION STATEMENT

1. R - Refinement
2. R – Record as Target
3. E - End of...
4. M - Mission
5. S - Surveillance

APPENDIX J

REQUESTING CAS

REQUESTING CAS

1. **Nine Line Brief**. The close air support (CAS) target briefing form provides a standard format for passing to the aircrew all essential information for the execution of CAS (both fixed wing and rotary) mission against a threat. Note that Line 1 and Line 3 are different for fixed and rotary wing requests. "Are you ready for the 9-line?" (Pause for reply)

a. Line #1. IP (Initial Point). For helicopters this entry is the attack position (AP). Fixed Wing. INITIAL POINT (IP): "Code, Name, Grid, or Lat/Lon

b. Line #2. Heading. Heading is the degrees magnetic. For attack helicopters, this is the heading from the center of the attack position to the target. Do not give unless offset is necessary. HEADING: "IP to Target" (MAGNETIC) "Offset Left or Right"

c. Line #3. Distance. For attack helicopters, this is the distance from the center of the attack position to the target expressed in meters. Fixed Wing. Distance: "IP to Target" In Nautical miles (KM x.54).

d. Line #4. Target Elevation. This is expressed in feet above mean sea level. Target Elevation: "_____" In feet MSL (Meters x3.3)

e. Line # 5. Target Description. This is specific, yet concise. It aids the pilots in anticipating visual cues for target acquisition. Target description: "What it is; relative position; movement"

f. Line # 6. Target Location. This is the position of the target. Target location: "Grids, Lat/Long, Visual"

g. Line # 7. Mark Type. This is the type of mark (how the pilot will be aided in target acquisition) to be employed (i.e. smoke, laser, illumination). TYPE MARK: "WP Beacon, Laser" CODE "Beacon, Laser". For laser TGT marking include laser to TGT line in degrees.

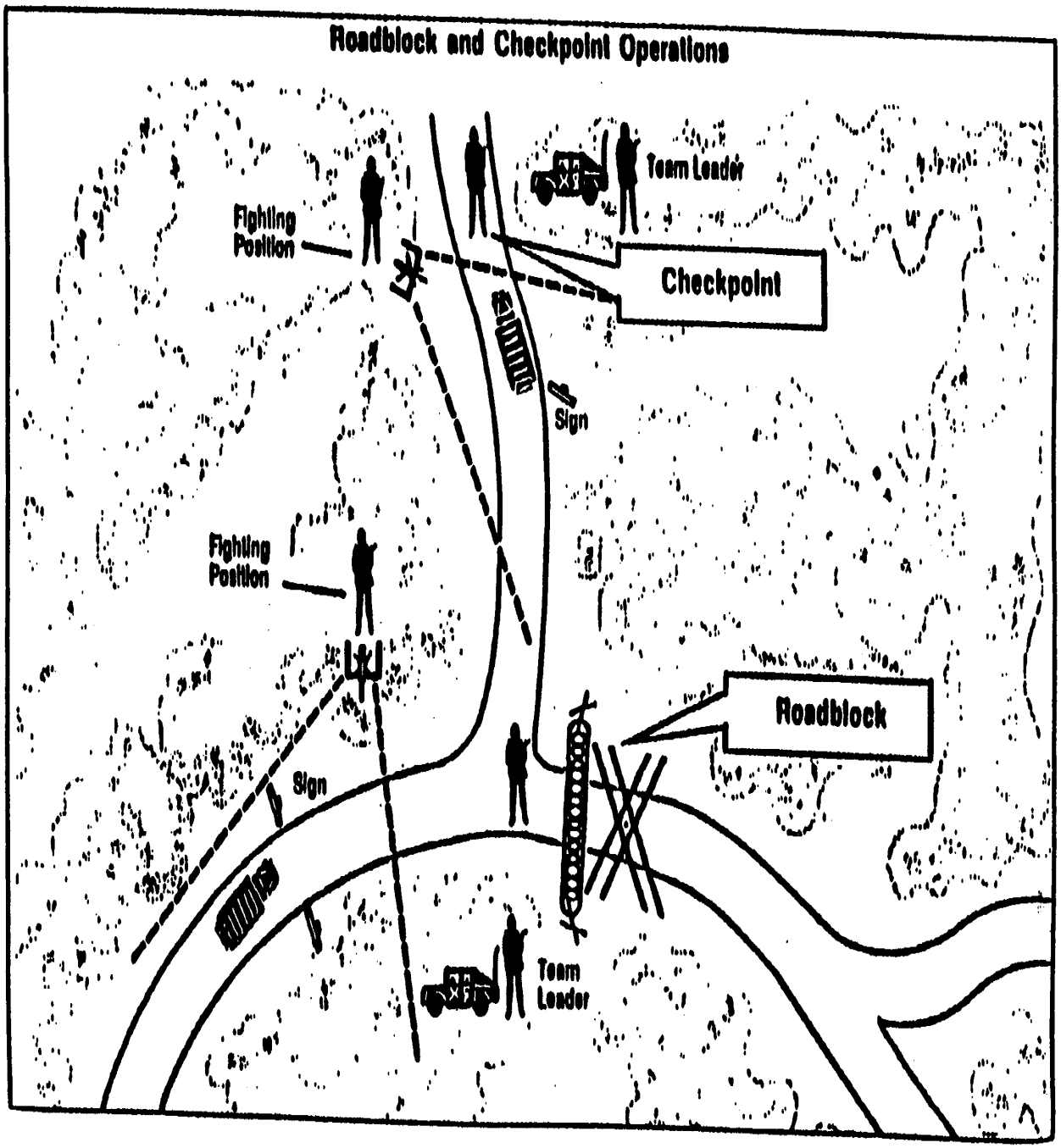
h. Line # 8. Friendlies. This is usually given in cardinal heading from the target (North, South, East, West) to the friendly position. The distance to friend lies from the

target is given in meters (for example, "South 600"). Location of friendlies: distance & direction from target, no grids"

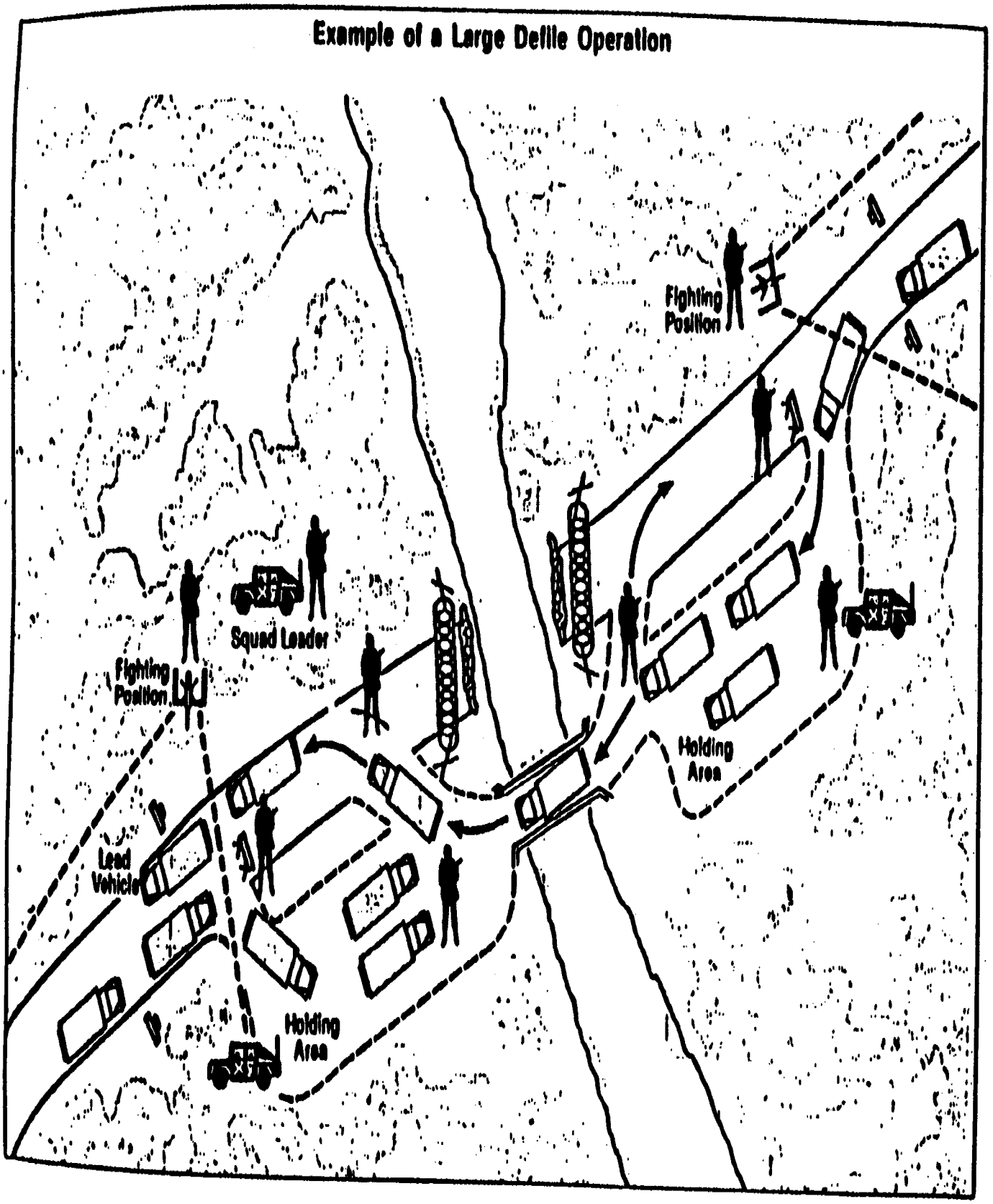
i. Line # 9. Egress. This is the cardinal direction to be used when departing the target and control points to use when exiting the terminal control area. The word egress is transmitted prior to giving instructions. "EGRESS: cardinal direction or to IP". Remarks: "attack clearance, threats, restrictions, hazards, abort codes".

APPENDIX K

EXAMPLES OF TCP's.



APPENDIX K


Example of a Large Defile Operation
Fighting Position
Squad Leader
Fighting Position
Lead Vehicle
Holding Area
Holding Area

APPENDIX K

VEHICLE SEARCH TECHNIQUES.

1. **General.** MPs will conduct vehicle searches under two broad categories. First, a vehicle has evidentiary value subsequent to lawful apprehension or impoundment. Second, the MP is conducting a vehicle inspection during the operation of a checkpoint or prior to allowing entry into a specific area.

2. **Evidence.** A vehicle search to obtain evidence will be a detailed search supervised and/or conducted by a criminal investigator. Time is normally not a factor.

3. **Time.** A vehicle inspection is more time sensitive, but should be conducted in a thorough, systematic manner. Here the MP is looking for illegal/contraband items or explosive devices. The following principals should be followed:

a. If directed by the senior MP, the driver and passengers will be searched.

b. Examine luggage and parcels within the vehicle.

c. Inspection mirrors will be used to examine the under-carriage.

d. The search will begin and end in the same location.

e. If more than one MP is conducting the search, each will have a specific area to search. For example, one MP checks the exterior while the other checks the interior.

f. The MP will NEVER flip levers or switches, or open compartments. The driver will be directed to do this.

g. Look for items that do not appear to have a mechanical purpose.

h. Look for wiring or items that look new or unsoiled.

h. A security overwatch will be provided for the MP conducting the search.

i. The senior MP will coordinate the use of narcotic/ explosive detection dogs.

4. **Conducting the Search.** The vehicle can be divided into four broad groups; exterior, interior, trunk, and engine compartment.

a. Trunk.

(1) Under and around spare tire.

(2) Tool box.

(3) Luggage.

(4) Partition between trunk and rear seat.

(5) Under floor matting.

(6) Spare tire housing under vehicle.

b. Engine Compartment.

(1) Items taped to hood or bulkhead.

(2) All containers.

(3) Oil and air filters.

(4) Behind sound-proofing.

(5) Front grill.

(6) Heater.

(7) Suspicious wiring or pieces of equipment.

c. Interior.

(1) Behind dash.

(2) Fittings such as radio/ cassette.

(3) Glove compartment/ ash tray.

(4) Behind panels.

(5) Under floor mats.

(6) In, under, and between seats and cushions.

(7) Luggage and/or parcels.

(8) Roll down windows.

(9) Toys or decorative animals.

(10) False ceiling.

d. Exterior.

(1) Wheel wells.

(2) Behind bumper.

(3) Headlights.

(4) Hub caps.

(5) Undersides.

e. Other Areas.

(1) Space between body and cab.

(2) External stowage area/bins..

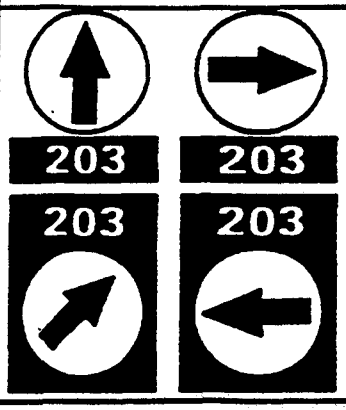
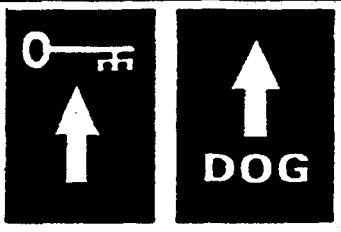
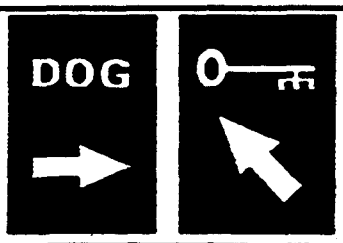
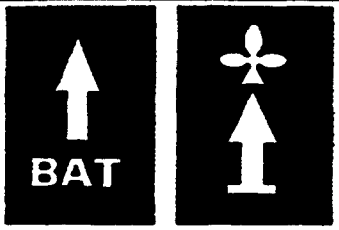
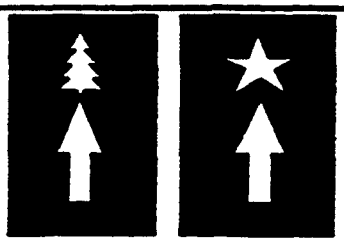
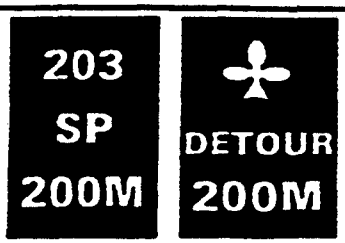
(3) Wooden bodies, false floors and sides.

(4) Space between rear double wheels.

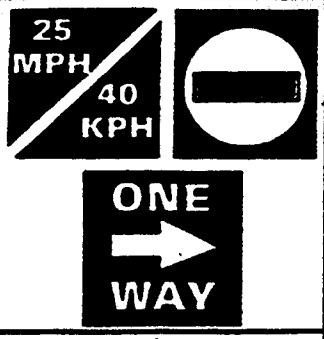
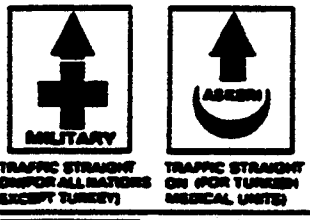
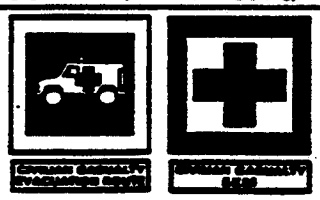
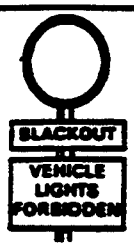
(5) Wheel chocks or other items that could be hollowed out.

APPENDIX L

EXAMPLES OF ROUTE SIGNS.

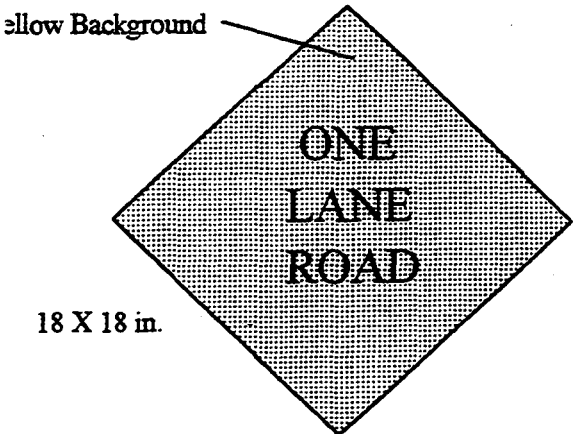
Type	Examples	Description	Purpose	Placement
DIRECTION INDICATOR		White, 30-centimeter diameter disk with black directional arrow; ID number or name is mounted below disk. OR White disk on black rectangular board.	Indicates direction; identifies route or name.	At intersections where roads merge and where routes separate.
GUIDE SIGNS Signs used together at important road junctions.		Rectangular; symbols in white on black background; includes directional arrow and route number, name, and/or symbol.	Indicates locations, distances, directions, routes.	Where needed.
WARNING SIGNS Signs used together at important road junctions.		Same as above.	Shows correct direction to take at route junctions.	A sufficient distance (50-100 meters) before a junction to allow drivers to make the turn safely. On roads where speed is restricted, signs may be placed 25 meters before junction.
CONFIDENCE SIGNS		Same as above.	Reassures drivers that they are still on the correct route. Used in urban areas to assure drivers that they are following the correct route. Also used on long stretches of road where it is unnecessary to use warning and confirmation signs for a considerable distance.	Where needed.
CONFIRMATION SIGNS *		Same as above.	Lets drivers know they are on correct route after changing direction.	Just after turns, but visible while making turn (if possible).
COUNTDOWN SIGNS		Same as above.	Warns of significant locations: start points, release points, beginnings and ends of routes, link routes, MSR junctions, and blackout areas. Anything requiring a major change to movement.	Series of 3 signs at 100-meter intervals before the designated location.

APPENDIX L

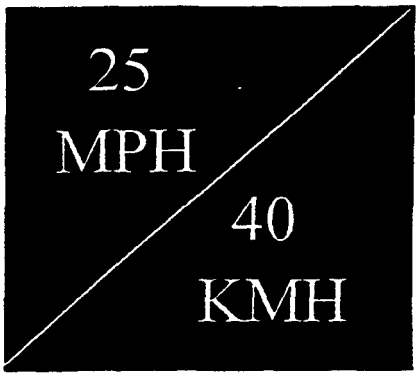
Type	Examples	Description	Purpose	Placement
REGULATORY SIGNS		Military equivalent of civilian signs like STOP and YIELD.	Regulates and controls traffic on a route.	Where needed. Posted by Engineers and considered permanent.
HAZARD SIGNS		Yellow, diamond-shaped background with info printed in black.	Indicates traffic hazards:dangerous corners, steep hills, crossroads. Rarely used in COMMZ as civilian signs usually suffice; military signs will be used in combat zone.	Where needed. Posted by Engineers and considered permanent.
MILITARY CASUALTY EVACUATION ROUTE SIGNS		Rectangular white background with red directional arrow, cross, or crescent; word MILITARY; unit or subunit designation; and other information like national markings. OR	Indicates evacuation route for military casualties. Directional disk with 4 segments cut out to form a cross, or directional disk with a crescent cut out. Include same information.	Where needed.
CIVILIAN CASUALTY EVACUATION ROUTE SIGNS		Blue Geneva conventions info sign. Includes ambulance in white with red cross or crescent. Includes words CIVILIAN CASUALTY EVACUATION ROUTE beneath sign in host nation language.	Indicates civilian casualty evacuation routes.	Along routes for civilian traffic. Designated by host nation.
BLACKOUT WARNING SIGNS		Based on Geneva conventions hazard warning sign. Legend and distance on rectangular plaque beneath warning sign.	Indicates beginning of blackout area.	Same as warning signs.
BLACKOUT ENFORCEMENT SIGNS		Geneva conventions prohibitory sign; plaque beneath says VEHICLE LIGHTS FORBIDDEN.	Indicates a blackout is in effect.	Every 100 meters along the blackout route.
BLACKOUT RELAXATION SIGNS		Same as blackout warning sign.	Indicates end of blackout area.	At the end of the blackout route.

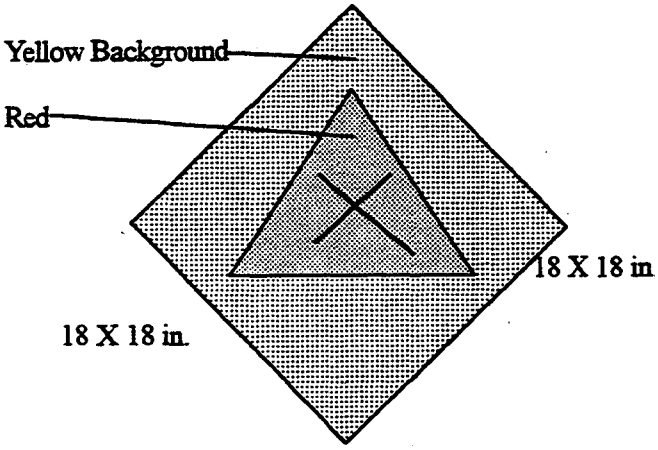
APPENDIX L

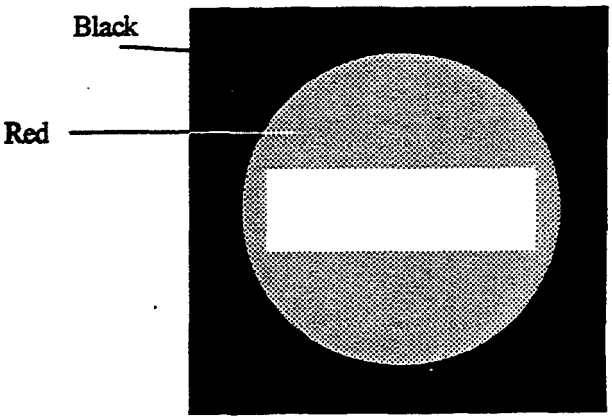
Hazard Signs



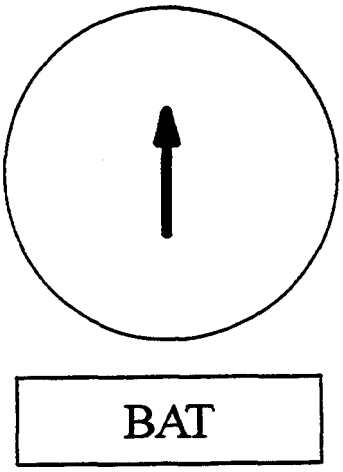
Regulatory Signs





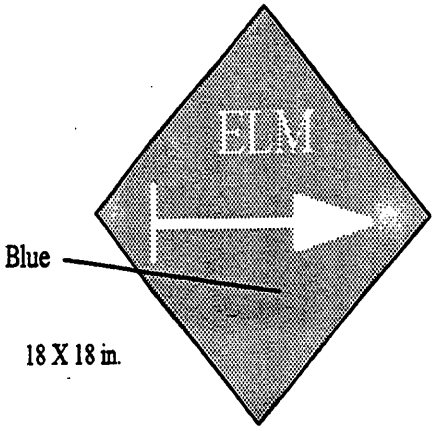


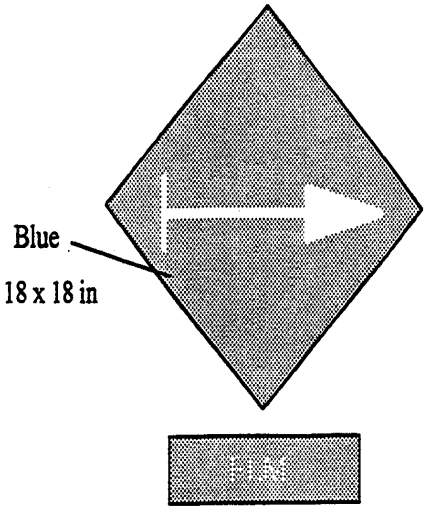
Military Route Guide Signs



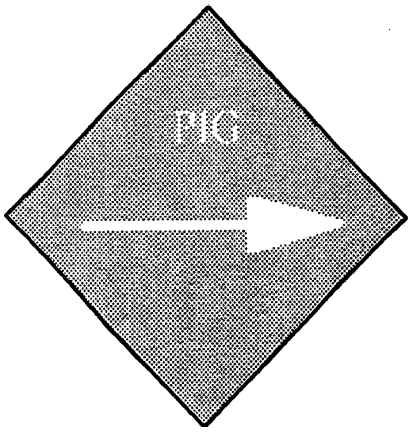
APPENDIX L

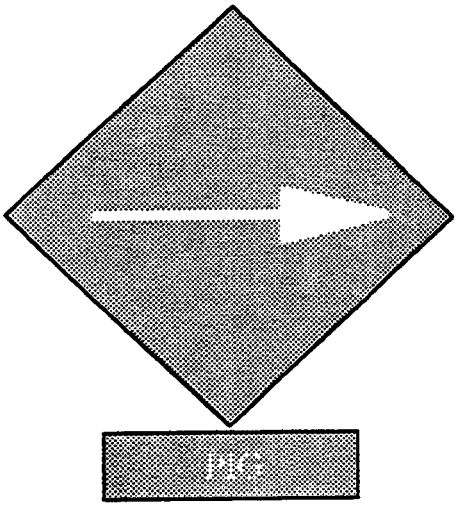
Detour Signs





OR
Detour of Axial Route Rearward
Traffic Turn Right

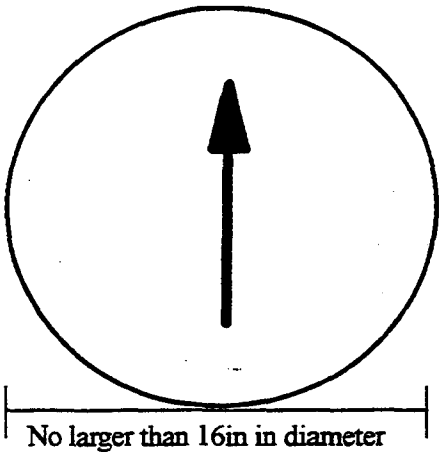


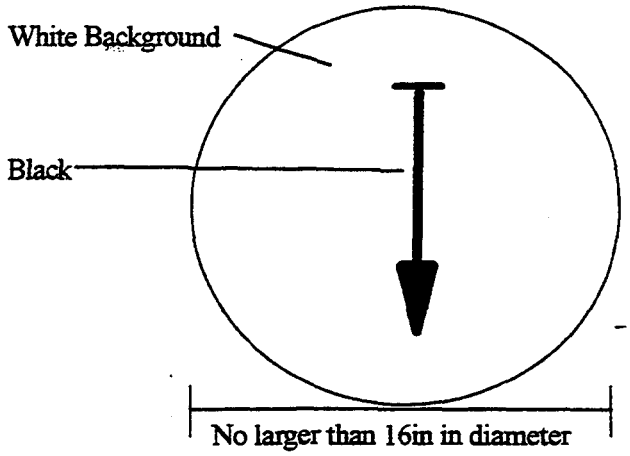


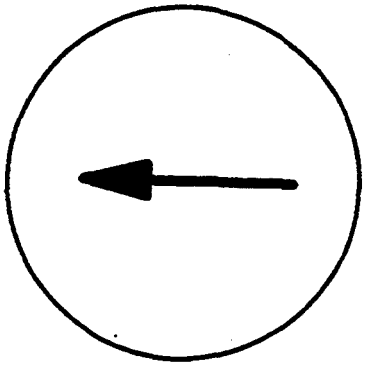
OR
Detour of Lateral Route
Turn Right

APPENDIX L

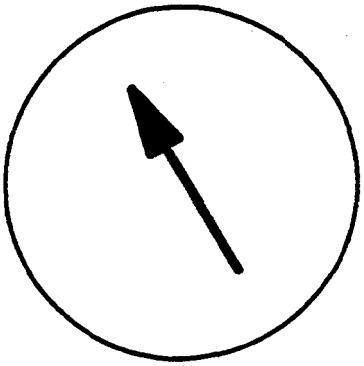
Directional Disks



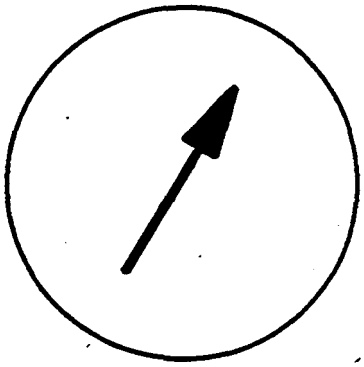




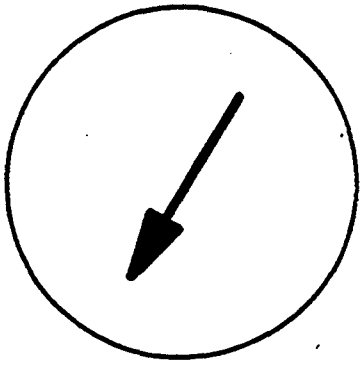
Left Turn



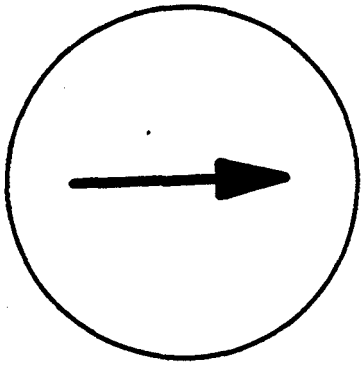
Fork Left



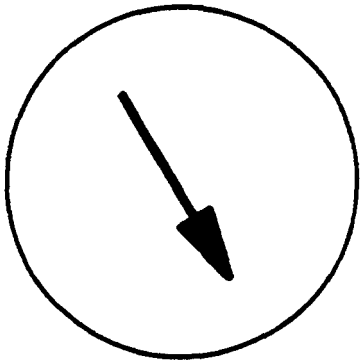
Fork Right



Sharp Turn Left



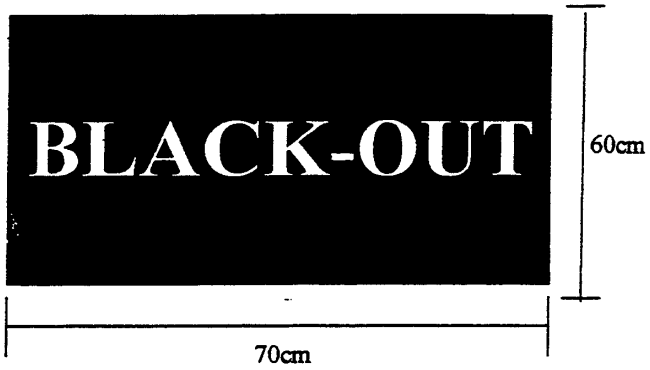
Right Turn

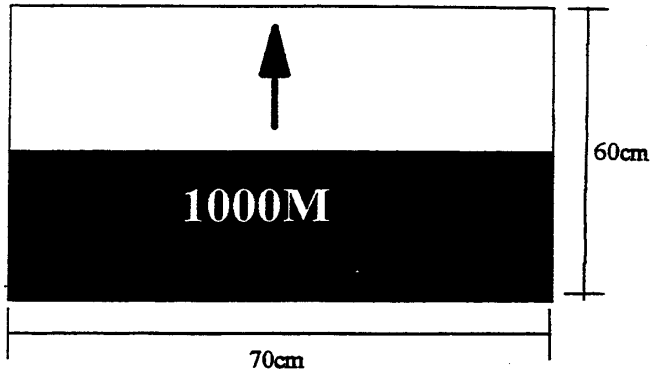


Sharp Turn Right

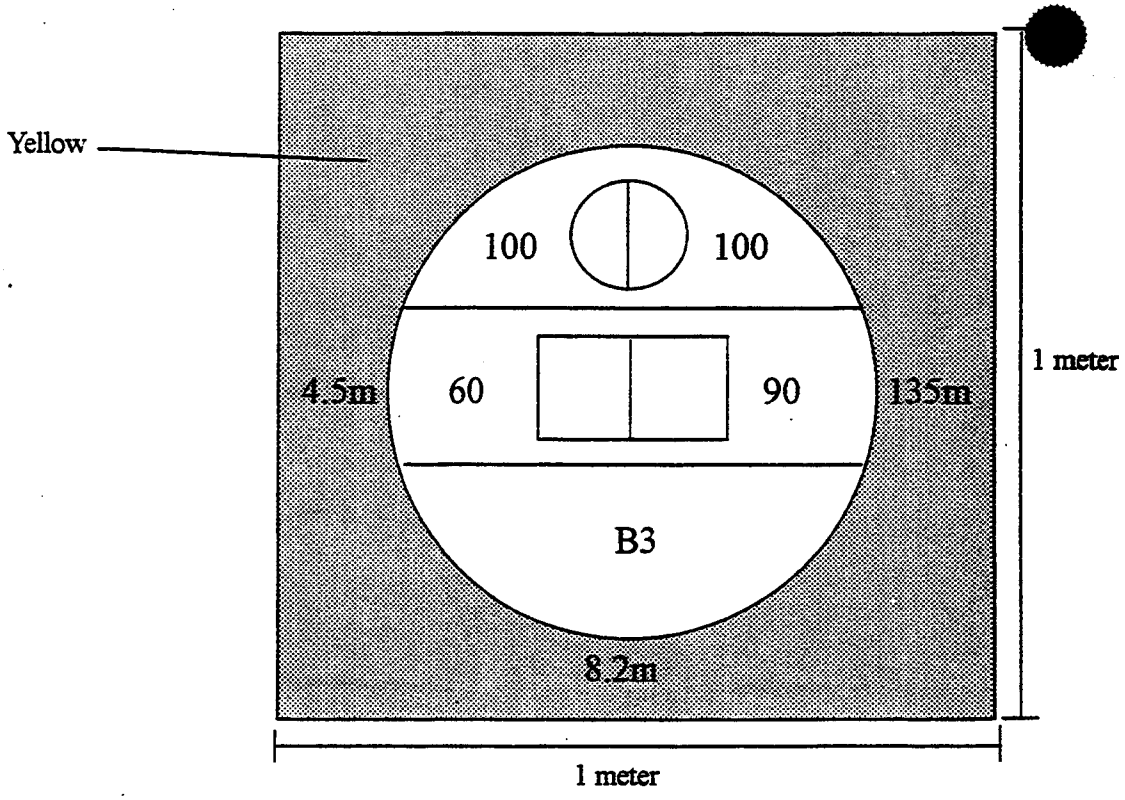
APPENDIX L

Warning and Enforcement Signs





Full NATO Bridge Sign



APPENDIX L

EXAMPLES OF MSR NAMES.

1. Listed below are examples of AXIAL ROUTES:

ELM	DATE	BAY	FIG	FIR	PALM
PINE	OAK	ASH	CORK	PEAR	

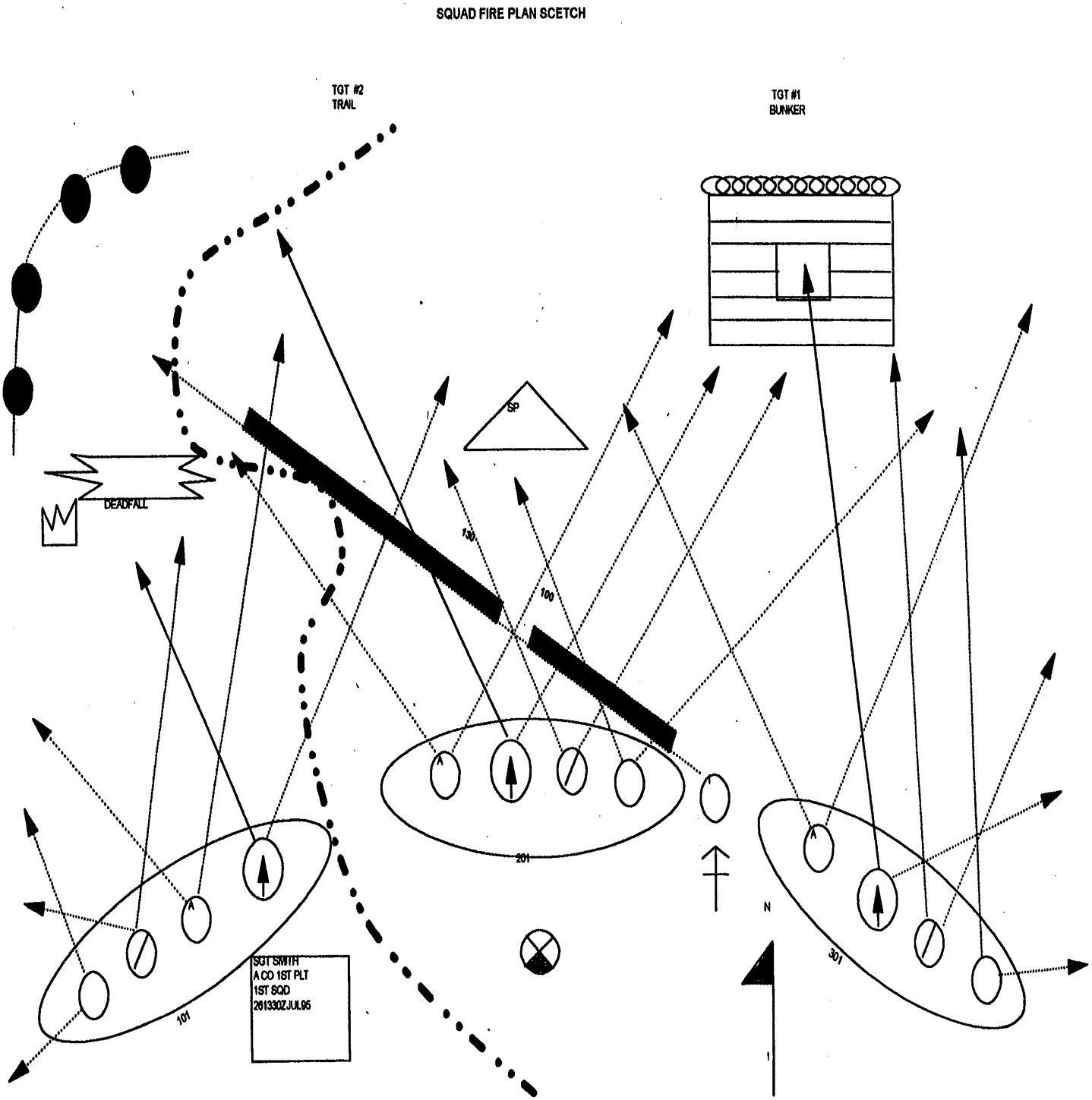
CLUB(PIC)	STAR(PIC)	TREE(PIC)	SPADE(PIC)
HEART(PIC)	DIAMOND(PIC)	BIRD(PIC)	SHARK(PIC)
MOON(PIC)			

2. Listed below are examples of LATERAL ROUTES:

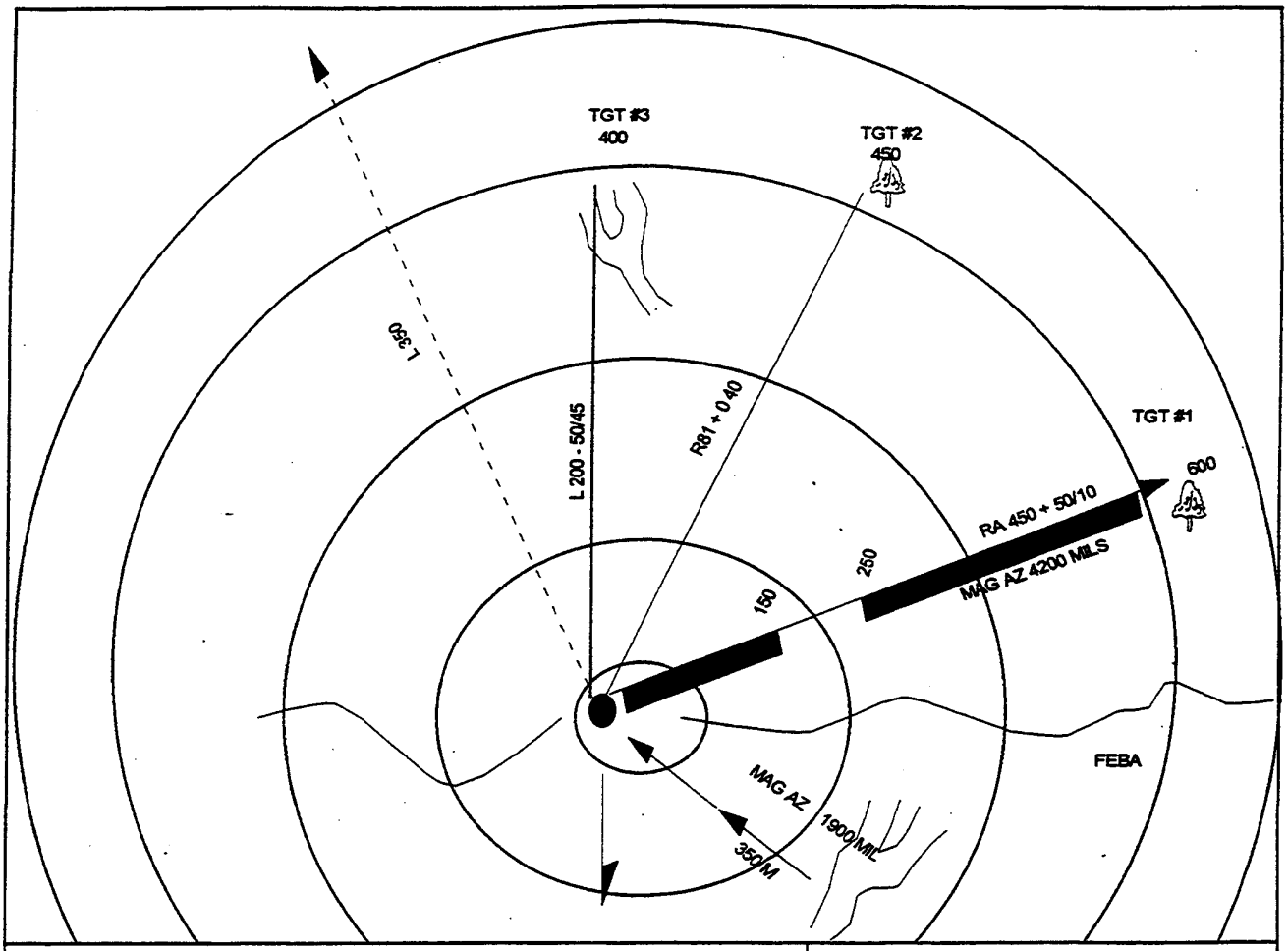
RAT	ANT	DOG	PIG	CRAB	HAWK
COW	BULL	GOAT	BAT	CAT	KIWI

APPENDIX M

EXAMPLE FIRE SKETCH PLAN & RANGE CARD.



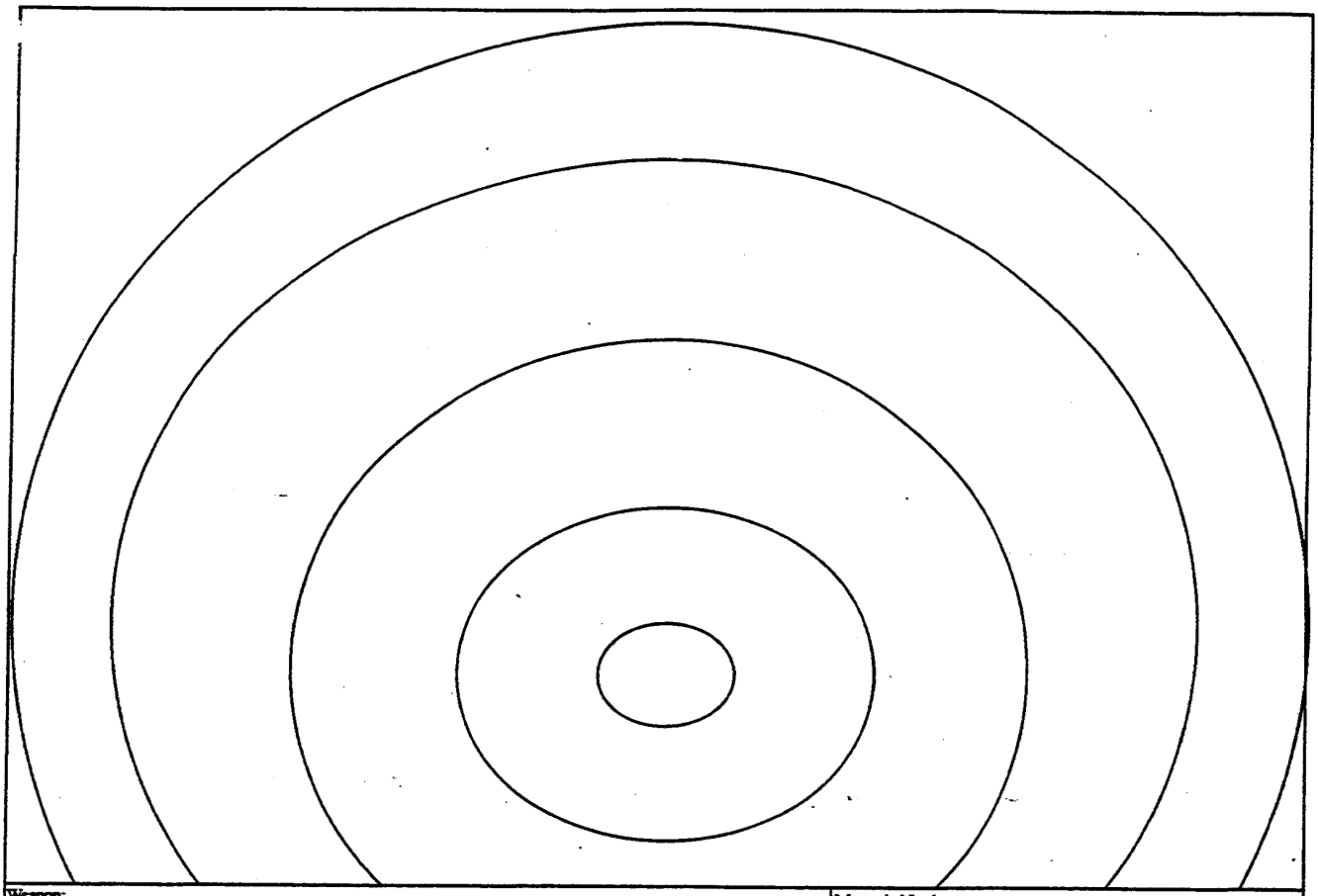
APPENDIX M



Weapon: 240G MACHINEGUN	Magnetic North:
Unit: 1ST SQD, 1ST PLT, MP COMPANY	
Date: 12 SEP 96	Each Circle: 100 METERS

No:	Direction:	Elevation:	Range:	Description:	Remarks:
1	4200mils	+50/10	600m	TREE	FPL
2	810mils	+0/40	450m	TREE	N/A
3	200mils	-50/45	400m	DIRT PATH	N/A

APPENDIX M



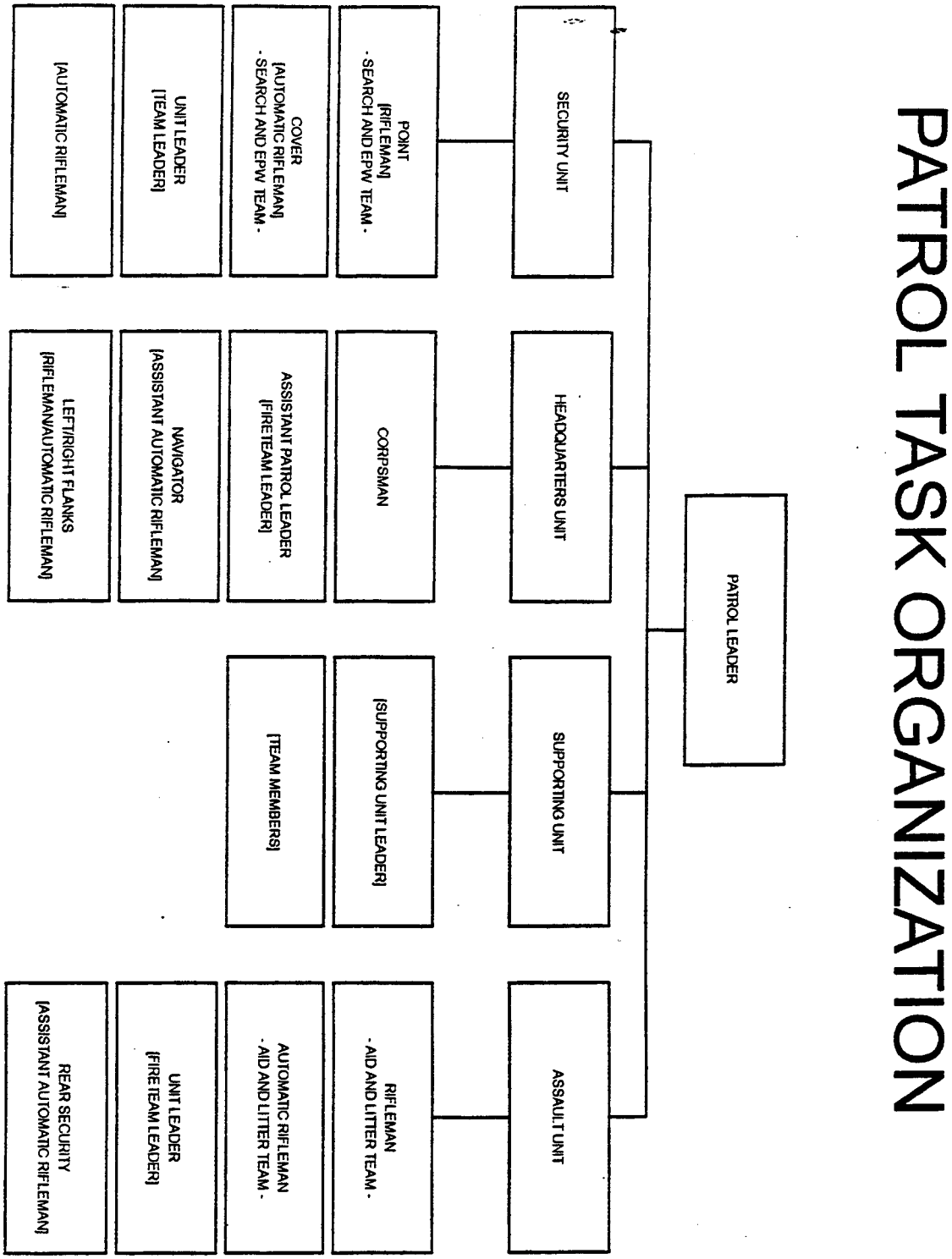
Weapon:	Magnetic North:
Unit:	
Date:	Each Circle:

No:	Direction:	Elevation:	Range:	Description:	Remarks:

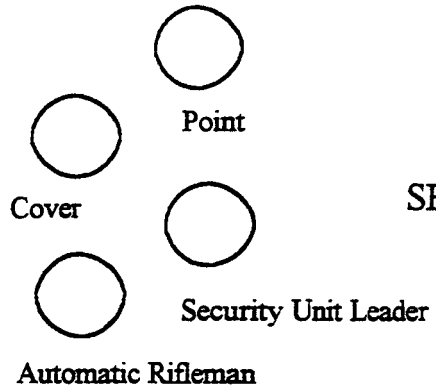
APPENDIX N

PATROLLING AND TIPS

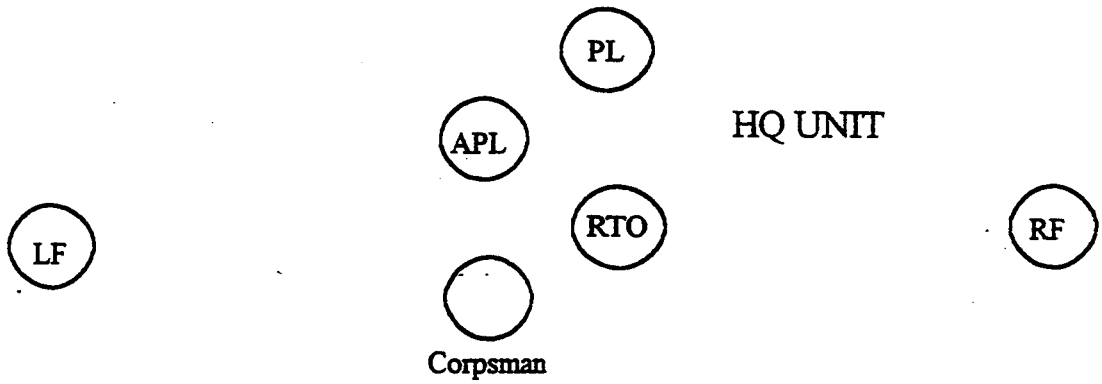
TASK ORGANIZATION.



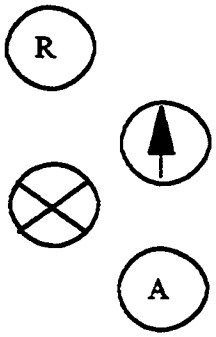
APPENDIX N



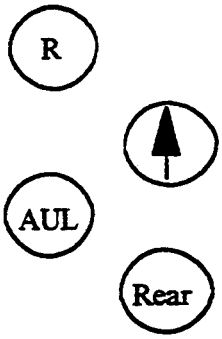
SECURITY UNIT



HQ UNIT

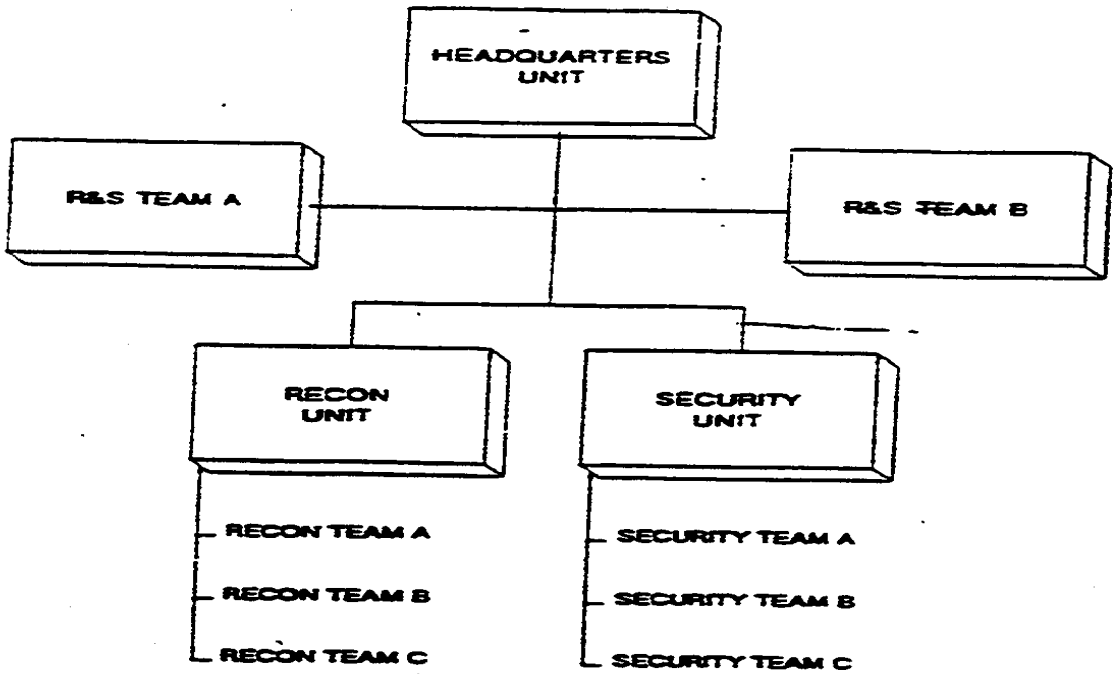


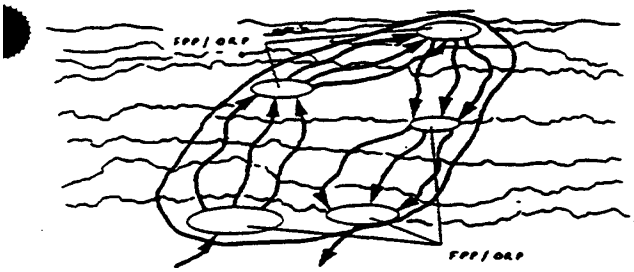
SUPPORT UNIT

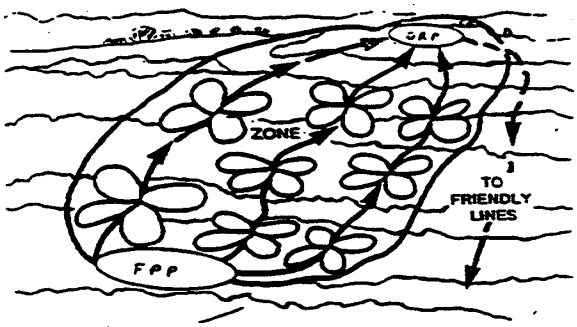


ASSAULT UNIT

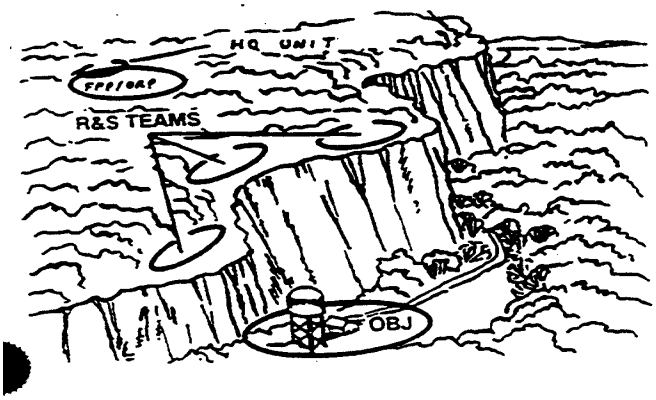
APPENDIX N



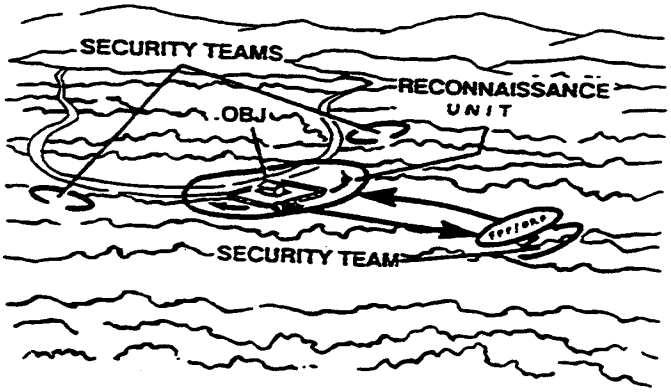




Zone Recon: Converging routes method



Area Recon: Combined recon and security teams

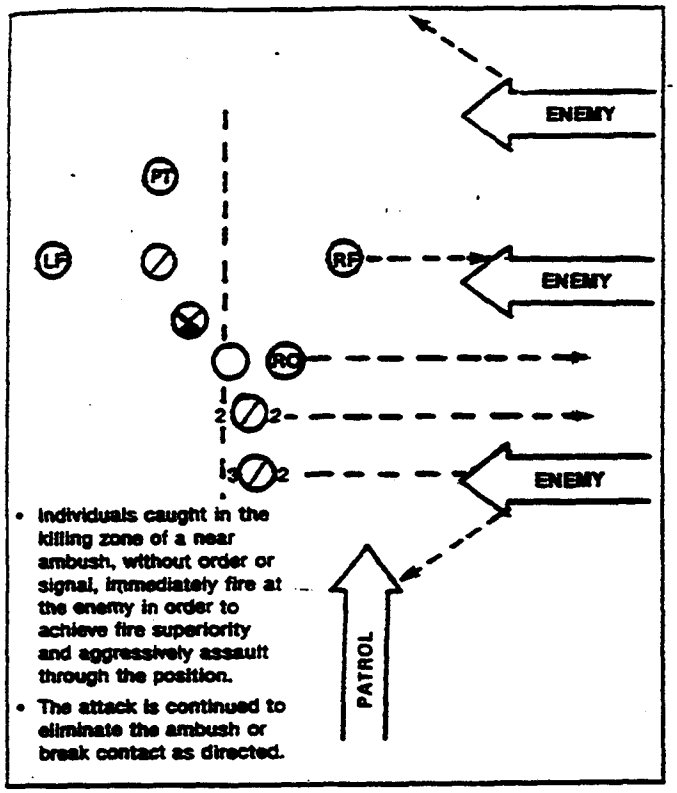


Area Recon: Separate security and reconnaissance uni

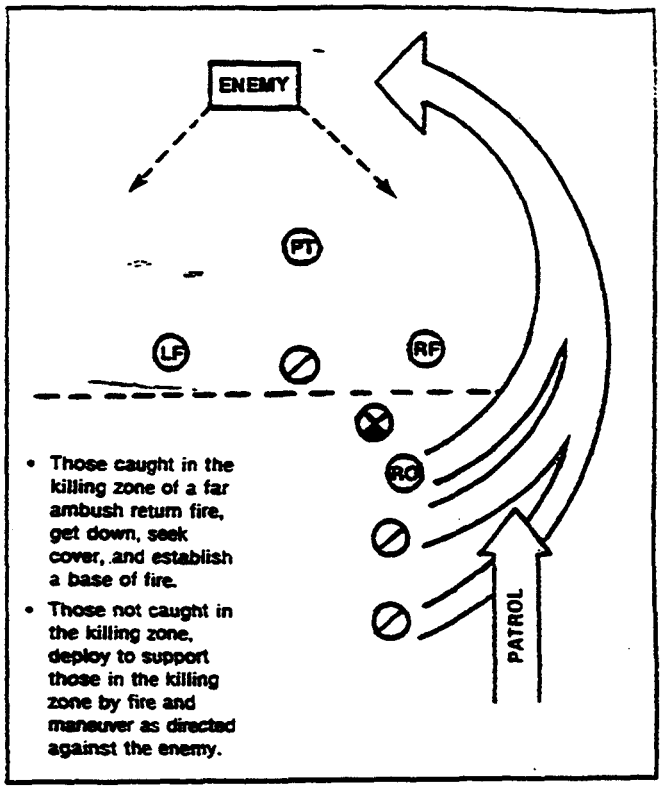
APPENDIX N

IMMEDIATE ACTIONS.

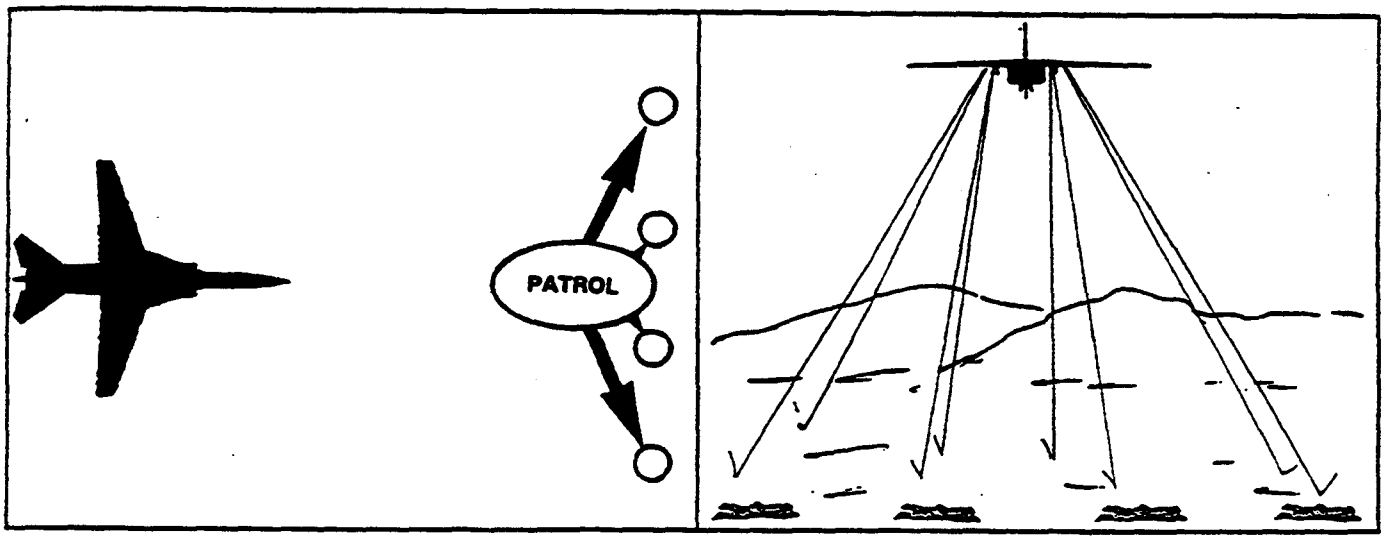
Immediate Action Drill Near Ambush.



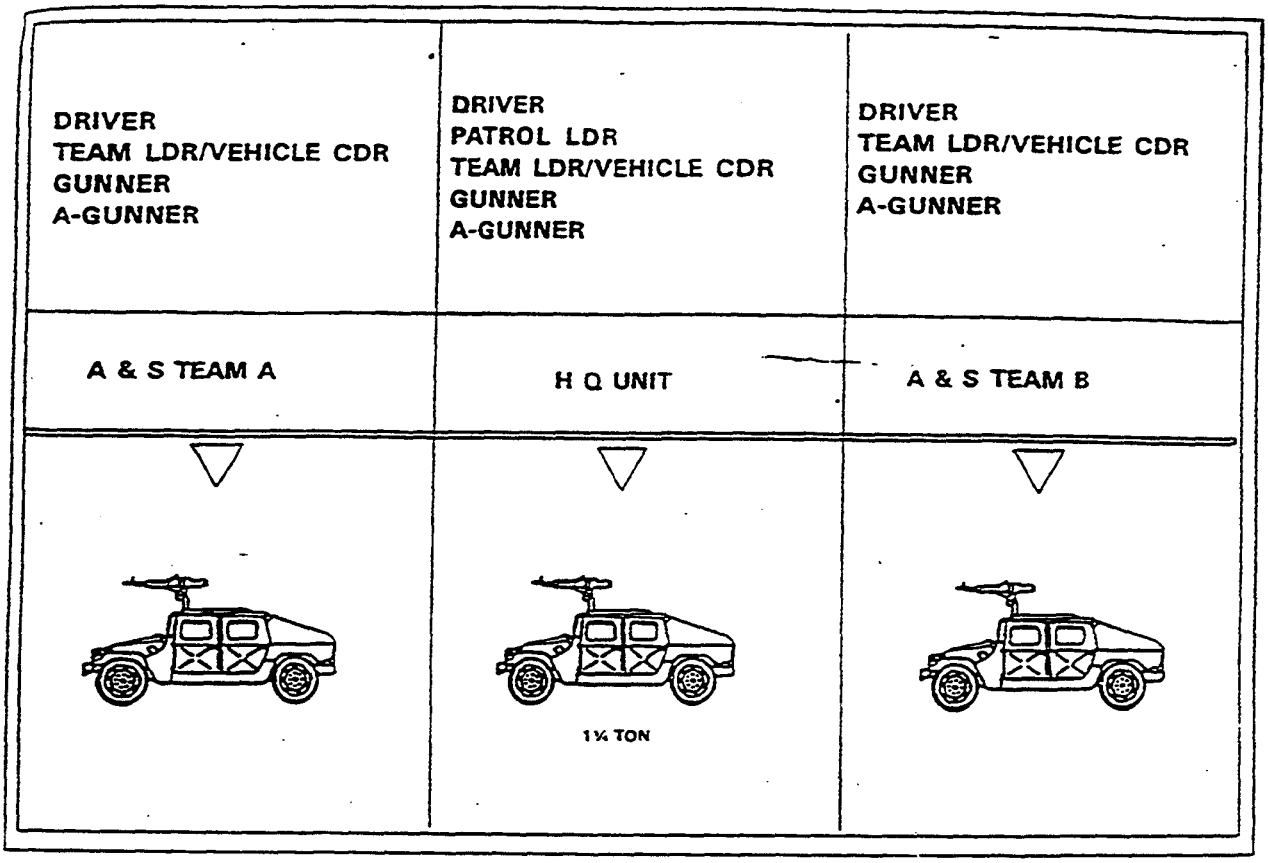
Immediate Action Drill Far Ambush.



Immediate Action Drill Air Attack.

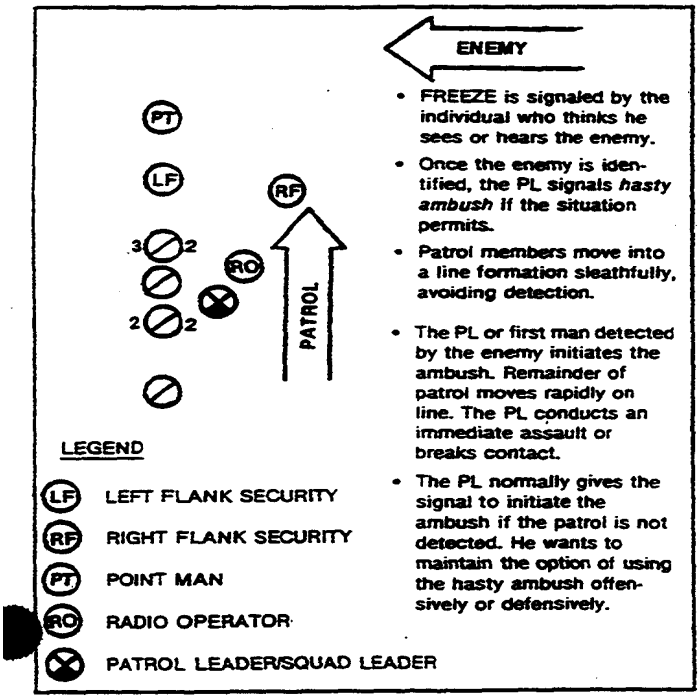


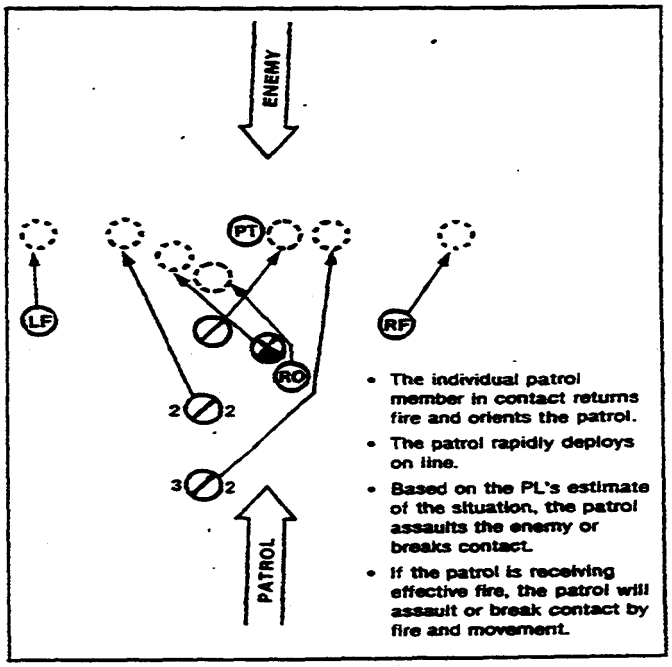
APPENDIX N



Immediate Action Drill
Hasty Ambush.

Immediate Action Drill
Immediate Assault.





APPENDIX N

TYPES OF AMBUSHES.

Interlock with fire from the long side. This formation is very flexible. It can be established on a straight stretch of a trail or road (see Figure 1 and 2) or at a sharp bend in a trail or road (see figure 3).

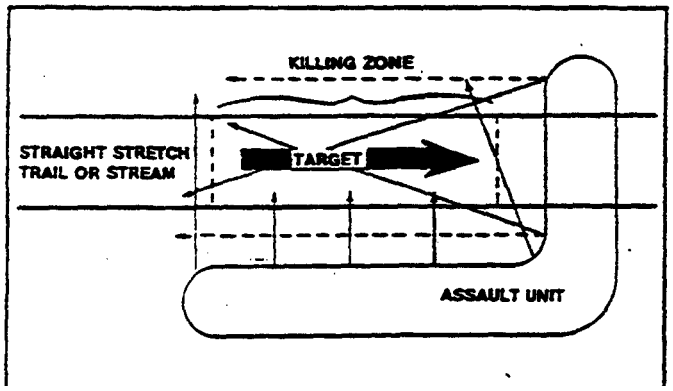


Figure 1. "L" Formation-Destruction Ambush.

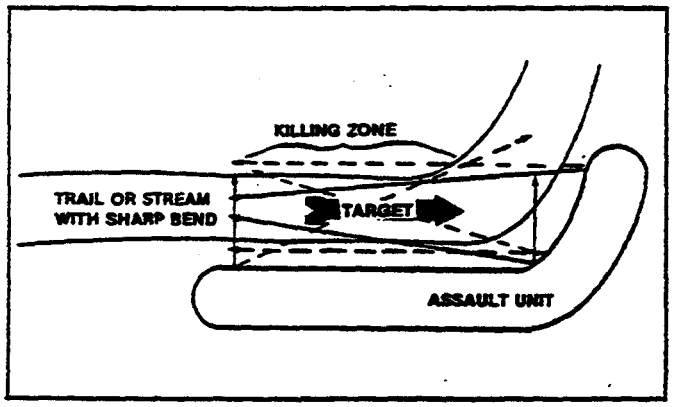


Figure 2. "L" Formation-Destruction Ambush.

When appropriate, fire from tire short side can be shifted to parallel the long side if the enemy attempts to assault or escape in the opposite direction. In addition, the short side prevents escape in its direction and reinforcement from its direction. (See Figure 3)

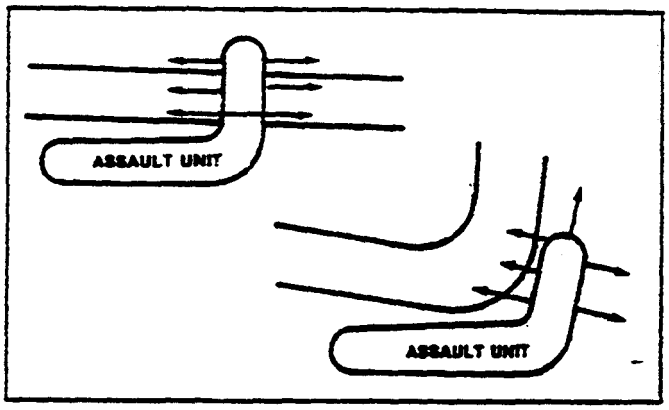


Figure 3. "L" Formation short leg prevents escape or reinforcement.

APPENDIX N

The "Z" formation is another variation of the line formation. The assault unit is deployed as in the "L" formation, but with an additional side so that the formation resembles a "Z". The additional side may serve any of the following purposes. (See Figure 4)

- To engage a force attempting to relieve or reinforce the kill zone.

- To seal the end of the killing zone.

- To restrict a flank.

- To prevent envelopment.

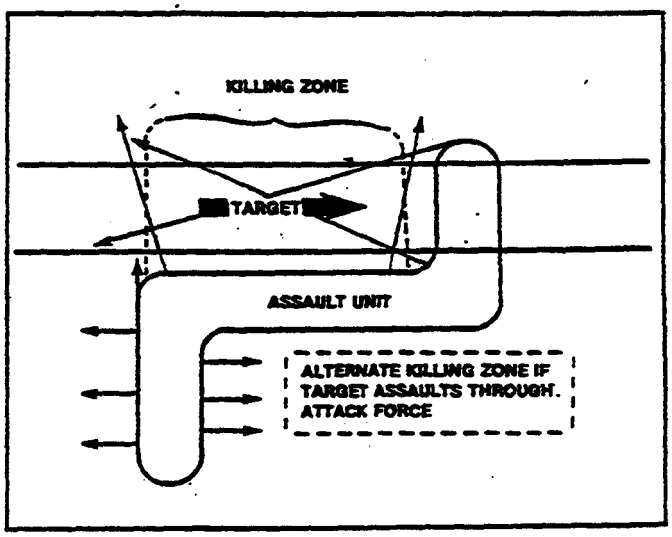


Figure 4. Z Formation-Destruction Ambush.

In the "T" shaped formation, the assault unit is deployed across and at right angles to the enemy's route of movement so that it and the enemy form a "T" (See Figure 5). This formation can be used day or night to establish an ambush to interdict movement through open, hard to seal areas.

A small force can use the "T" formation to harass, slow, and disorganize a larger force. When the lead elements of the enemy are engaged, they will normally attempt to maneuver right or left to close with the ambush. Mines and other obstacles placed to the banks of the killing zones slow the enemy's movements and permit the ambush force to deliver heavy fire and withdraw without becoming decisively engaged.

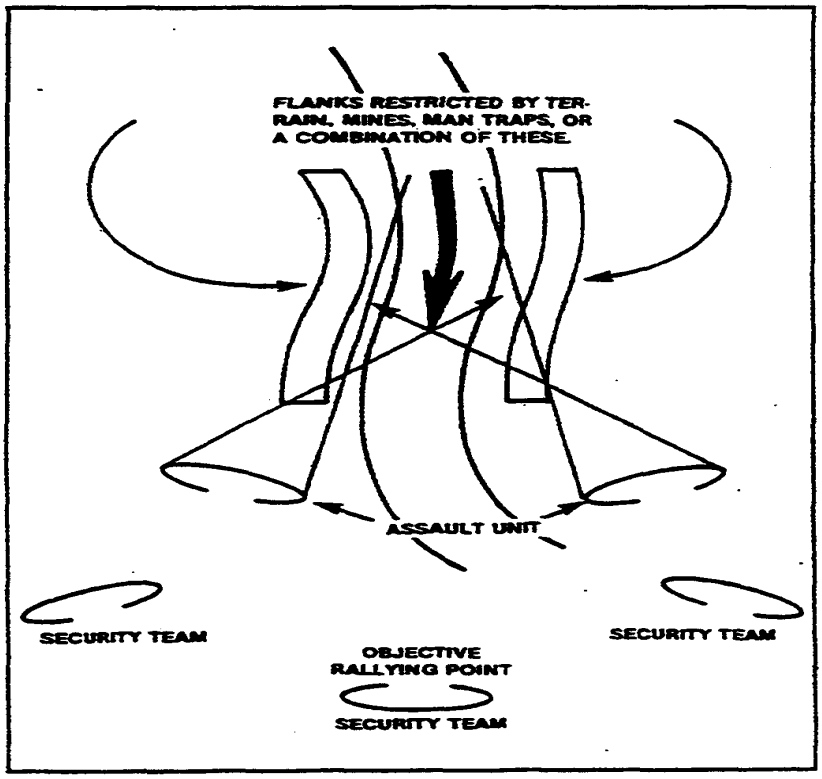


Figure 5. "T" Formation - Harassing Ambush.

The "T" formation can be used to interdict small groups attempting night movement across open areas. For example, the assault unit is deployed along an avenue of approach with every second man facing the opposite direction. The attack of the enemy approaching from either direction requires only that every second man may shift to the side of the formation. Each man fires only to his front and only when the enemy is at a very close range. Attack is by fire only and each man keeps the enemy under fire as long as it remains on his front.

If the enemy attempts to escape in either direction along the killing zone, each man takes him under fire as he comes into his sector of fire. The "T" formation is very effective at halting infiltration. But it has one chief disadvantage; there is a possibility that the ambush will engage a superior force at night while spread out. Use of this formation must, therefore, fit the local enemy situation. (See Figure 6).

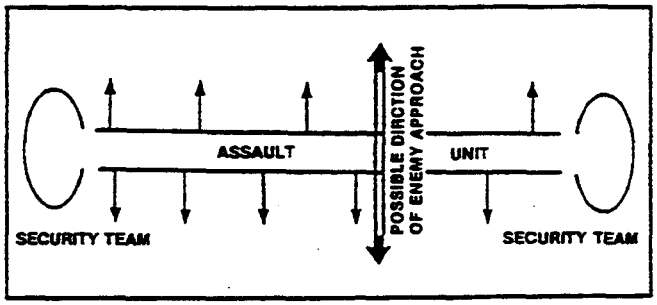


Figure 6. 'T' Formation-Harassing Ambush Target Approach from Either Direction.

The "V" shaped formation is deployed along both sides of the enemy's route of movement so that it forms a "V"; care is taken to ensure that neither group (within the "V" fires into the other. This formation subjects the enemy to both enfilading sad interlocking fire. The "V" formation is best suited for fairly open terrain but can also be used in close terrain. When established in close terrain, the legs of the "V" close in as the lead element of the enemy force approaches the apex of the "V'", and opens fire at a close range. Here, even more than in open terrain, all movement and fire must be carefully coordinated to ensure that the fire of one leg does not endanger the other. The wider separation of forces makes this formation difficult to control, and there are few sites that favor its use. Its main advantage is that it is difficult for the enemy to detect the ambush until it is well into the killing zone. (See Figures 7 and 8).

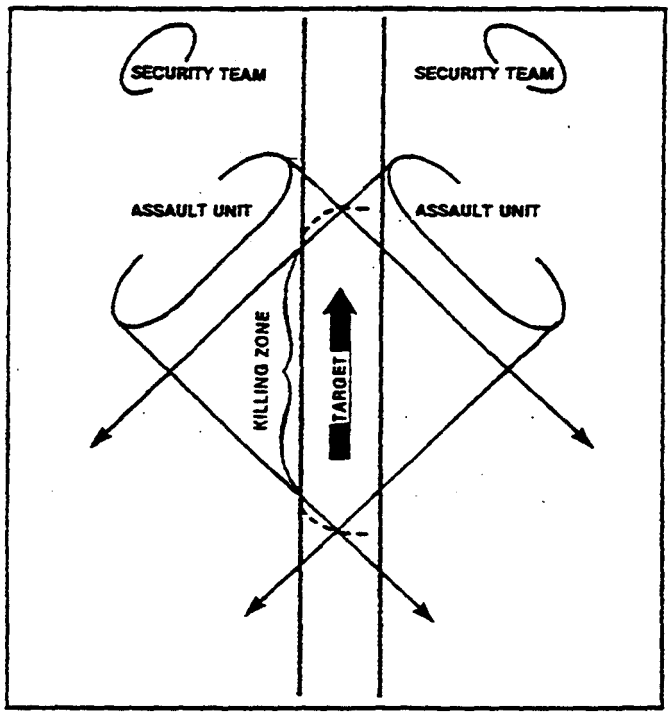


Figure 7. "V" Formation Open Terrain. (in mountain terrain where plunging fire is obtained, legs may be closed in nearly parallel to the killing zone.)

The triangle is a variation of the "V" formation and can be varied in three ways:

a. Closed Triangle Formation. (See Figure 9) The assault unit is deployed in three teams, positioned so that they form a triangle. An automatic weapon is placed at each point of the triangle and positioned so that it can be shifted quickly to interlock with either of the others. Men are positioned so that their sectors of fire overlap. Mortars may be positioned inside the triangle. When deployed in this matter, the triangle ambush becomes a small unit's strong point, which is used to interdict night movement through open areas. When enemy approach is

likely to be from any direction, this formation provides all-around security, and security forces are deployed only when they can be positioned so that if detected by an approaching enemy, they will not compromise the ambush. Attack is by fire only, and the enemy is allowed to approach within close range before fire is opened. The advantages of the closed triangle formation are:

(1) Ease of control.

(2) All-around security.

(3) The enemy approaching from any direction can be brought under fire of at least two automatic weapons.

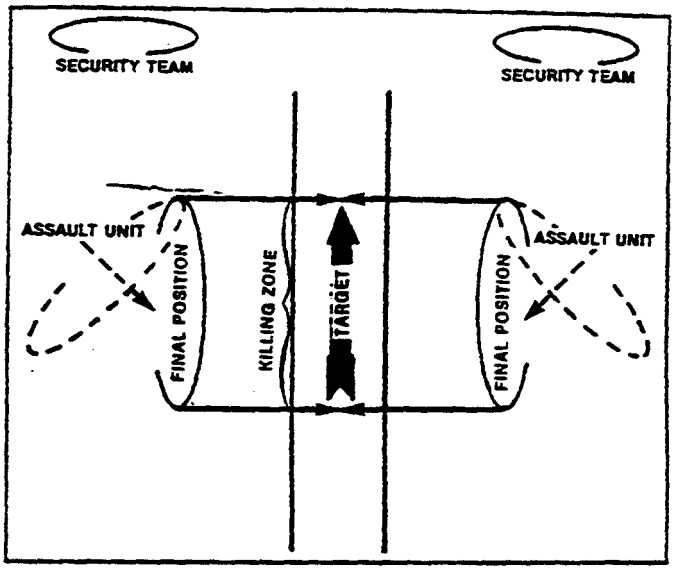


Figure 8. "V" formation - Close Terrain. (Legs in close as target approaches apex of 'V". Must be carefully coordinated and controlled to ensure that legs do not fire into each other.)

Disadvantages are:

(1) Requires a force of platoon size or larger to reduce the danger of being overrun by an unexpectedly large force.

(2) One or more sides of the triangle may come under enfilade fire. The lack of dispersion, particularly at the points, increases the danger from enemy mortar fire.

b. Open Triangle Harassing Formation. This variation of the triangle ambush is designed to enable a small force to harass, slow, and inflict heavy casualties upon a large force without itself being decisively engaged. The assault unit is deployed is three teams, positioned so that each team becomes a corner of a triangle containing the killing zone. When the enemy enters the killing zone, the team to the enemy's front

opens fire on the leading element. When the enemy counterattacks, the group withdraws and the team to the enemy's flank opens fire. When this team is attacked, the team to the opposite flank opens fire. This process is repeated until the enemy is pulled apart. Each team reoccupies its position, if possible, and continues to inflict the maximum damage possible without becoming decisively engaged. (See Figure 10)

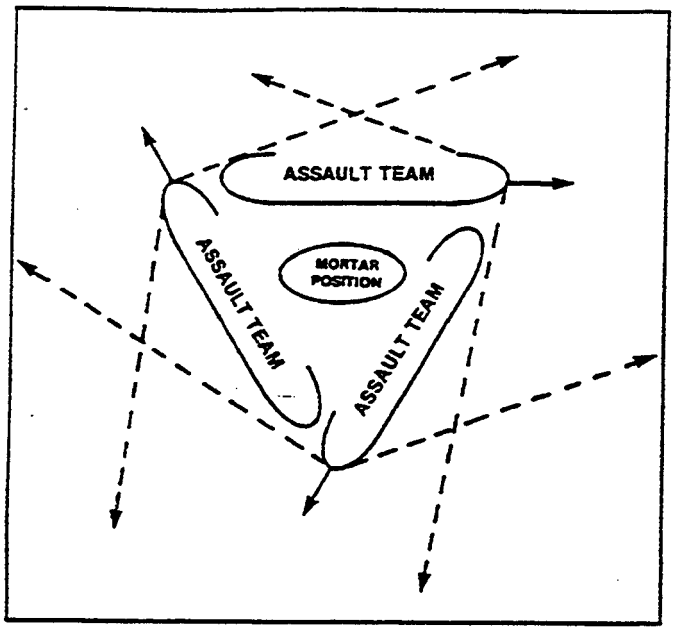


Figure 9. Closed Triangle Formation - Night Harassing Ambush.

c. Open Triangle Destruction Formation

(1) The assault unit is again deployed in three teams, positioned so that each team is a point of the triangle, 200 to 300 meters apart. The killing zone is the area within the triangle. The enemy is allowed to enter the killing zone; the nearest team attacks by fire. As the enemy attempts to maneuver or withdraw, the other teams open fire. One or more teams, as directed, assault or maneuver to envelop or destroy the enemy. (See Figure 13)

(2) As a destruction ambush, this formation is suitable for platoon-size or larger ambush forces. A smaller force would be in too great a danger of being overrun. Another disadvantage is that control, in assaulting or maneuvering, is very difficult. Very close coordination and control are necessary to ensure that assaulting or maneuvering teams are not fired on by another team. The ambush site must be a fairly level open area which provides concealment around its border for the ambush force.

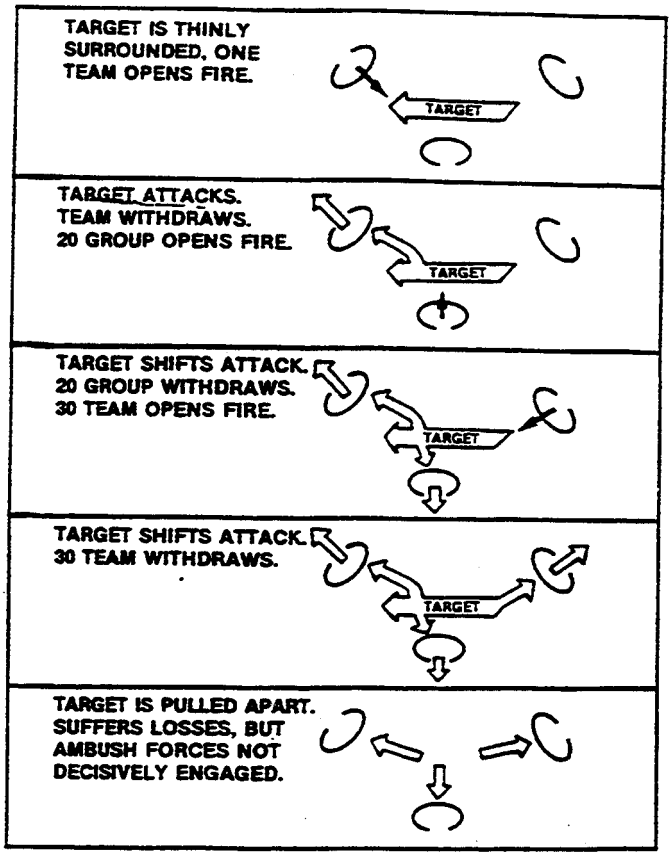


Figure 10. Open Triangle Formation - Harassing Ambush.

The Box Formation.

The "box" formation is similar in purpose to the open triangle ambush. The assault unit is deployed in our teams, positioned so that each team becomes a corner of a square or rectangle containing the killing zone. It can be used for a harassing or destruction ambush in the same manner as the variations of the open triangle formation.

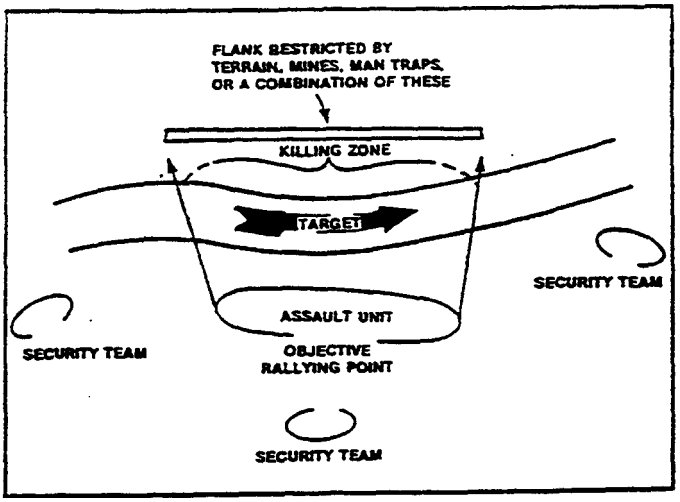


Figure 11. Line Formation - Harassing or Destruction Ambush.

APPENDIX N

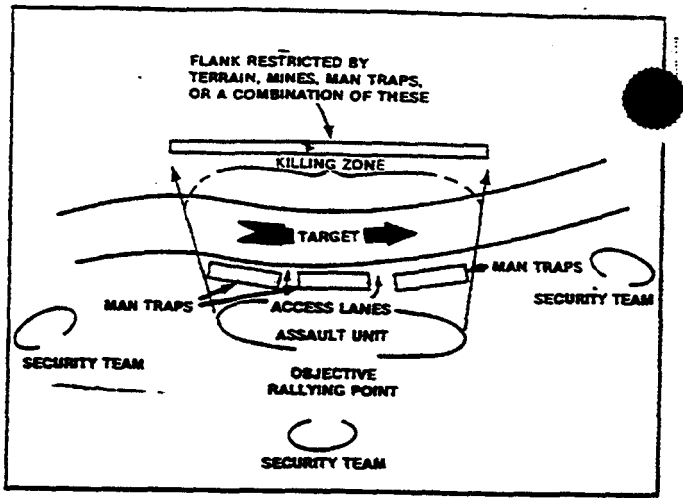


Figure 12. Line Formation - Destruction Ambush - Access Lanes for Assault Of Target.

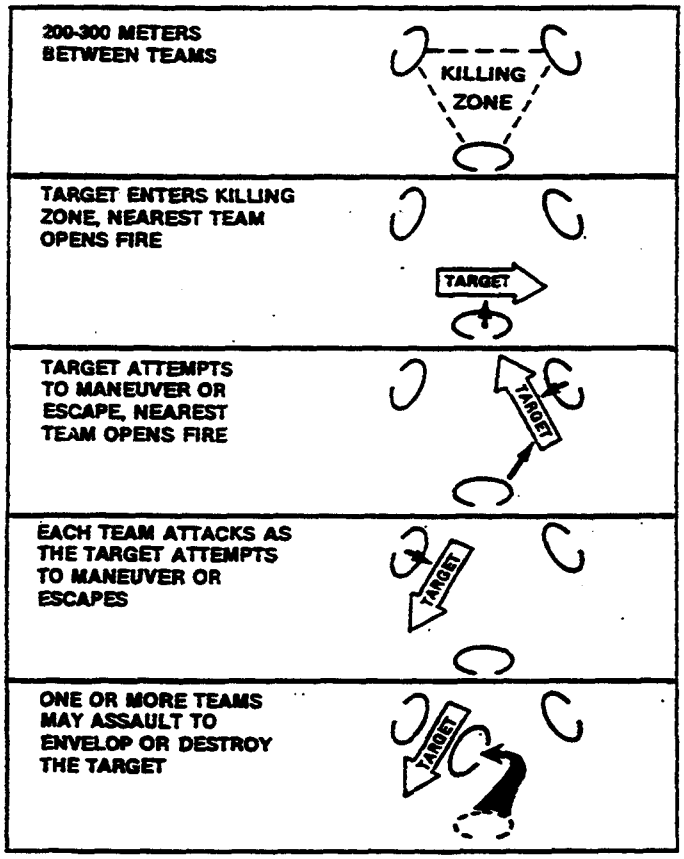


Figure 13. Open Triangle Formation - Destruction Ambush.

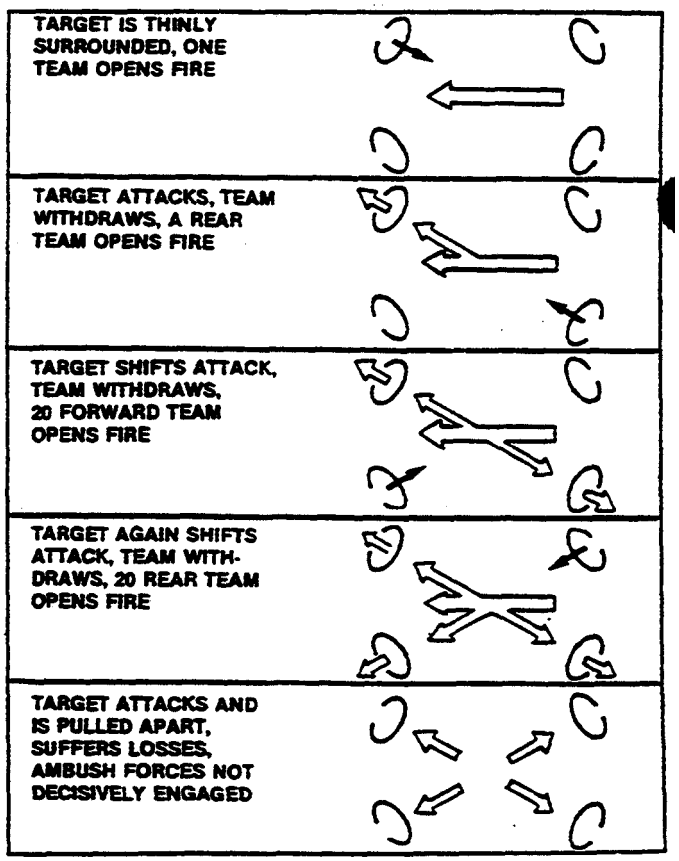


Figure 14. Box Formation - Harassing Ambush.

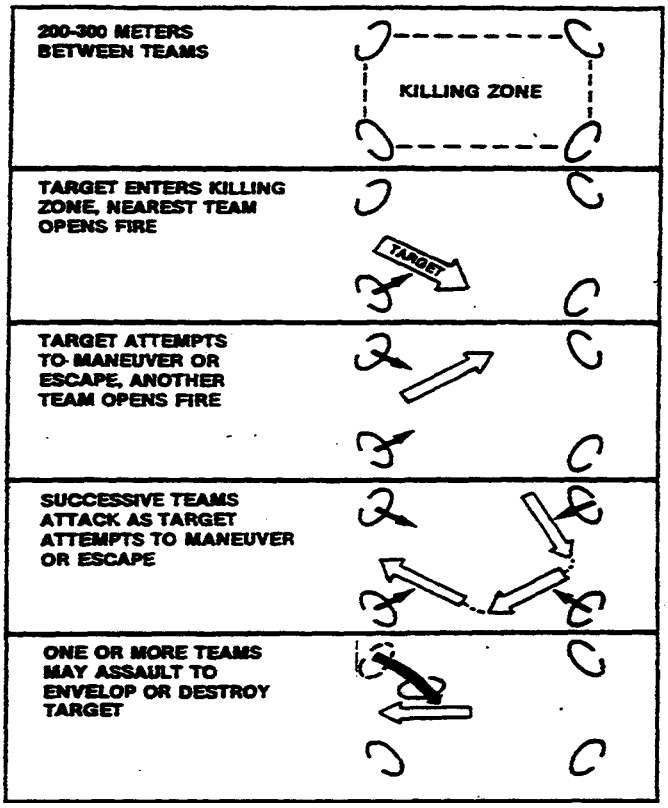
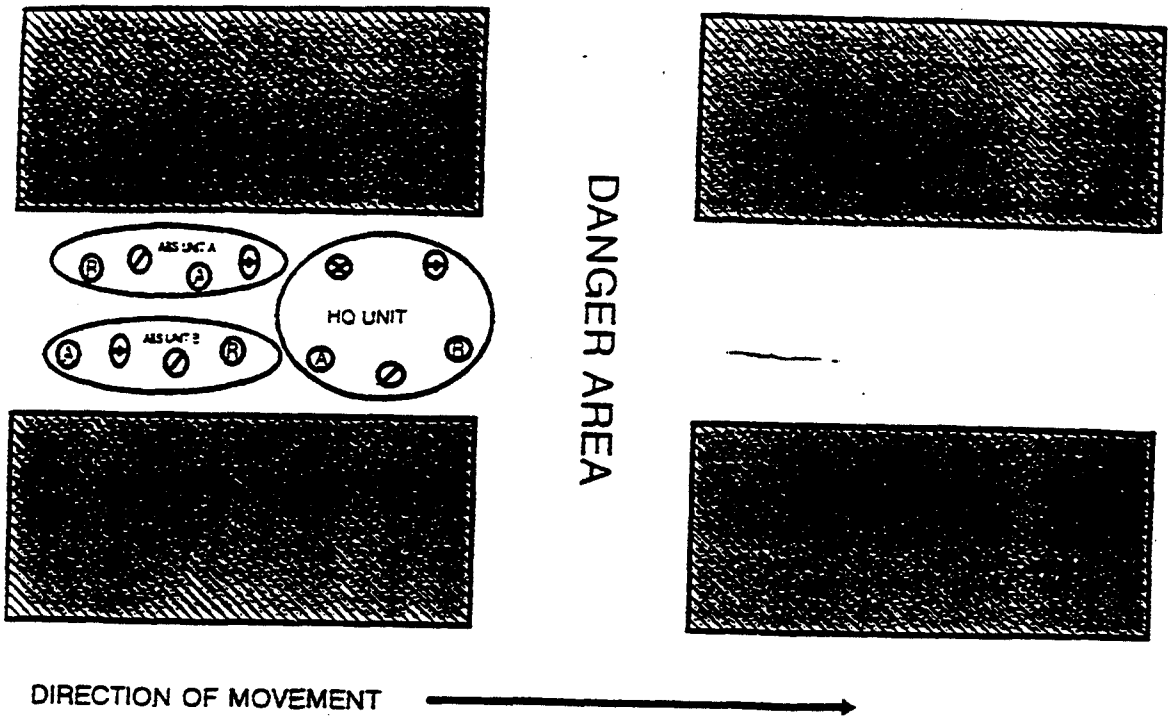


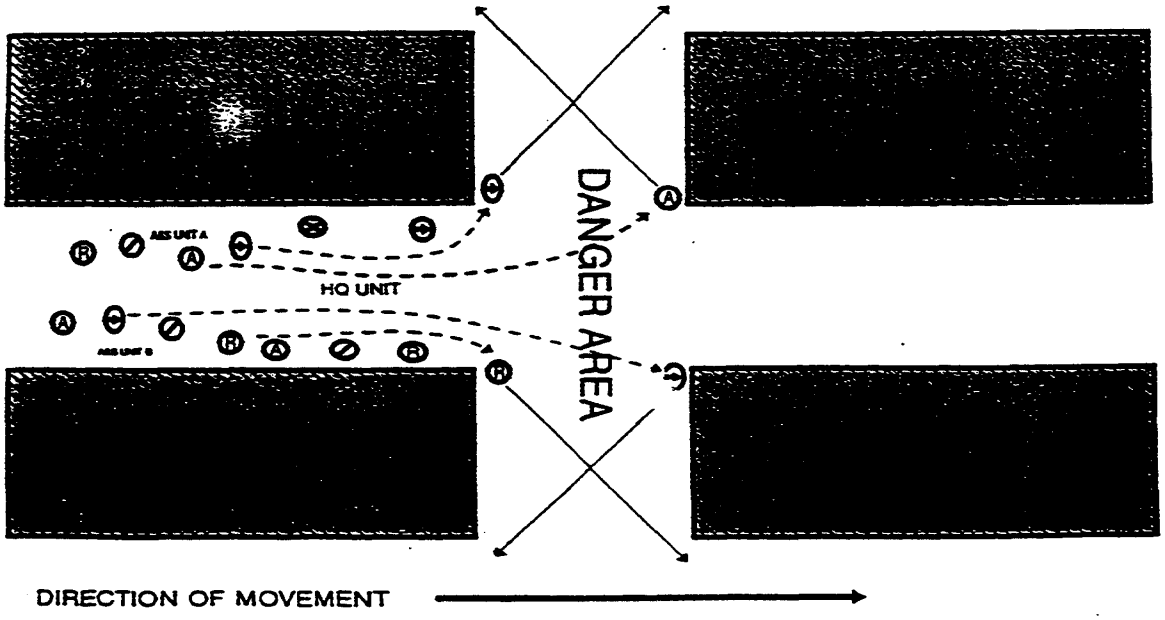
Figure 15. Box Formation - Destruction Ambush.

APPENDIX N

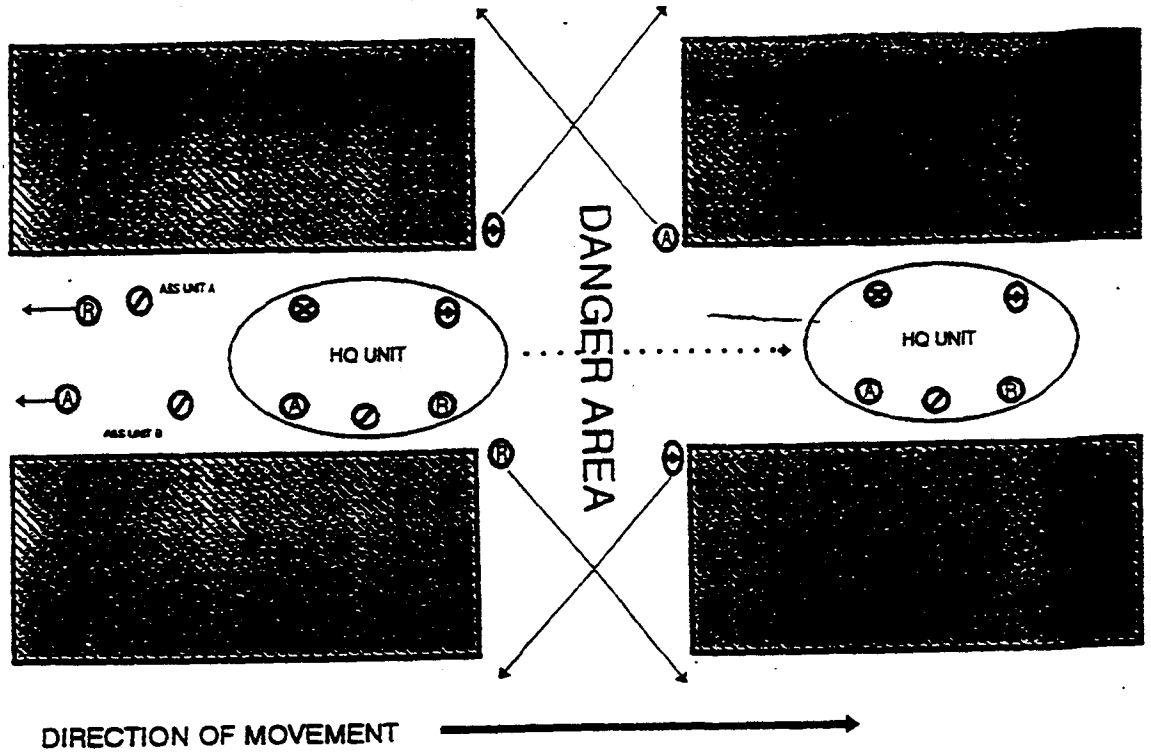
CROSSING DANGER AREAS.



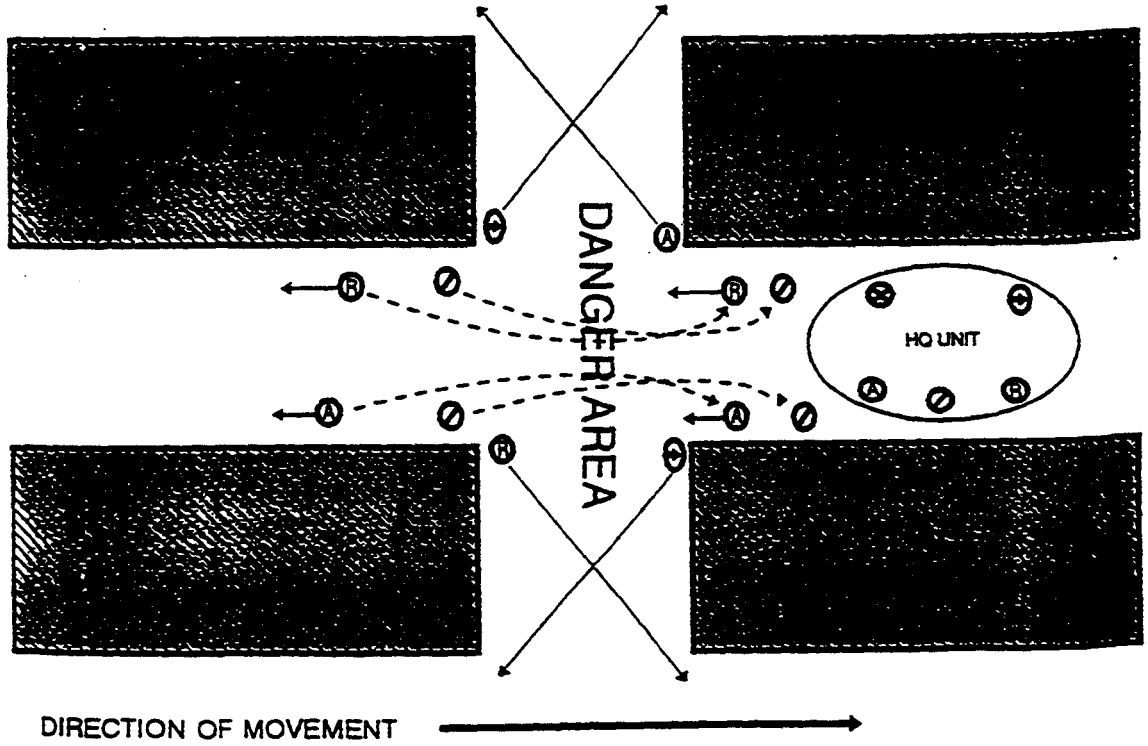
1. A designated two Marine element (consisting of one Marine from each A&S team) move through the HQ unit and establish respective firing positions on the heir side of the danger area covering the patrol's near side Banks. They are followed by a second pair (again, one Marine from each A&S team) who move across the far side of the danger area and establish respective 5 ring positions covering the patrol's far safe flanks. (See figure below)



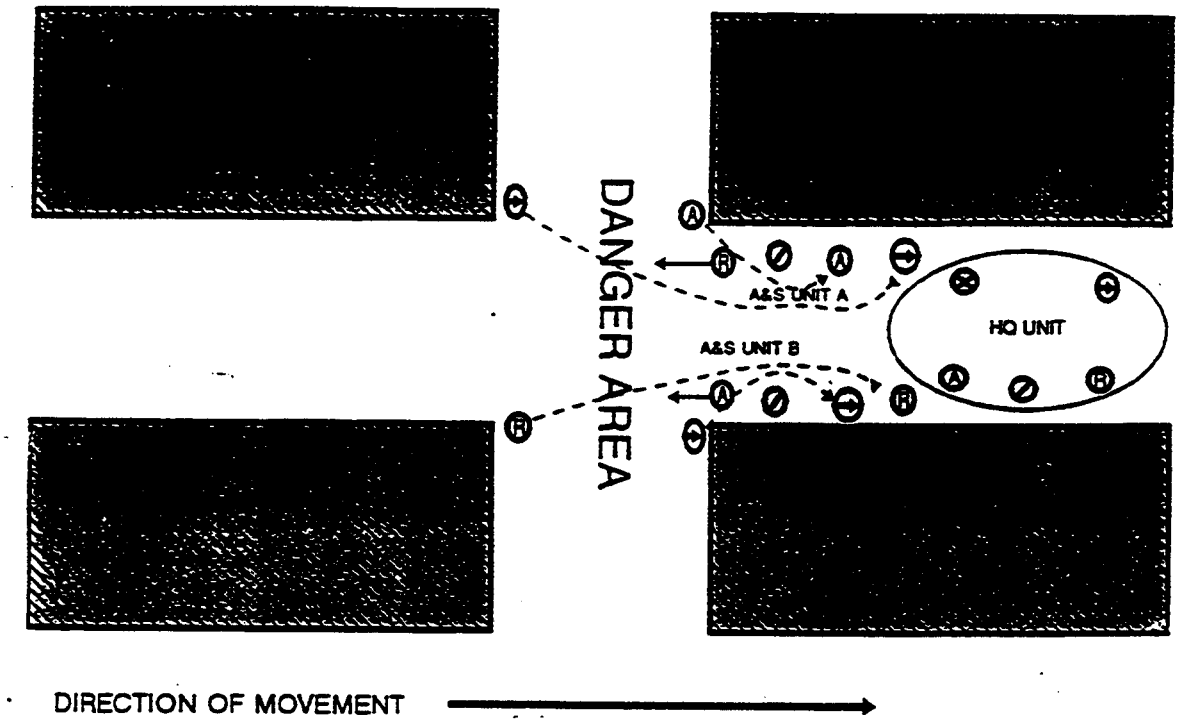
2. Once near and far side flank security is established, the headquarters unit then hard targets across to far side of the danger area.



3. The remaining A&S team members then cross the danger area and join the HQ unit on the far side



4. Once the trail A&S team members cross the danger area, they take up rear security and cover the movements of the near and far side flank security teams as they return to their positions in the patrol formation. The near side security team should collapse back fast, followed by their far-side counterparts. The patrol then resumes its advance away from the danger area.



Concerns

1. Interacting with local populations. Urban patrols must interact with the local populace. Patrols are at first a novelty to the civilians but can quickly become an unwelcome one. The movement of the patrol must be fast enough to prevent the enemy from massing their fires upon it, but deliberate enough to ensure adequate security, minimal support etc.. Patrol members must realize that they are usually the only Marine the local population will deal with and that inappropriate comments or acts could lead to the deterioration of the rapport between the U.S. and the general population. Marines must remember that the vast majority of the individuals they will come in contact with are noncombatants attempting to survive in trying political, economic, and social situations.

a. Hostile incident indicators. Hostile incidents often stem to occur spontaneously, but there are indicators that can alert Marines in imminent danger. The most obvious indicators are the sudden absence of normal routine, patterns and attitudes of the local populace or the presence of abnormal activity. Some examples are:

(1) Observers on roof tops, in windows, etc., who are obviously threats to the patrol.

(2) The unusual absence of pedestrian traffic, people on porches, etc.

(3) Stores, markets, or street vendors closed suddenly without explanation

(4) Dramatic change is civilian attitude toward patrol members

(5) Unfamiliar individuals or vehicles within tire patrol area

(6) Unfamiliar vehicles parked in rim patrol area.

(7) Road blocks

(8) Children throwing rocks at patrols to possibly draw the patrol's attention away from a more serious event such as a deliberate ambush.

(9) Vehicles riding unusually low due to overloading (ferrying people, weapons, explosives)

APPENDIX N

PATROL ORDER

PATROL ORDER.

Introduction and Definitions

1. **Purpose.** To provide a format enabling the Patrol Leader to organize and present all necessary patrol information to his subordinates.

2. **General.** The patrol order format ensures that all team members are well informed, and ensures that they know their individual duties in relation to the mission. Patrol orders are necessarily detailed.

3. **Procedure.** If time permits, the Patrol Leader will issue a Warning Order (See TAB A2), and write a full Five Paragraph Order. A terrain model will be made in accordance with the patrol area/zone/route, and the order will be issued over the terrain model.

ORIENTATION: (FROM VANTAGE POINT) DATE: _____

BREAK OUT MAP TIME:_____

THAT WAY IS NORTH

PRESENT LOCATION IS GRID COORDINATE_____

OBSERVE TERRAIN MODEL

KEY TERRAIN	OBJECTIVE AREAS
1. GC_____	OBJ#:_____
2. GC_____	OBJ#:_____
3. GC_____	OBJ#:_____

VEGETATION:

CONTROL MEASURES

TRACE OF FRIENDLY LINES _____

FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MSRS _____

POINT OF DEPARTURE _____

1. FSCL:_____
2. CFL:_____
3. RFL:_____

POINT OF REENTRY RALLY POINTS

APPENDIX N

_____ IRP:_____ ORP:_____

CHECK POINTS

#___ GC_____ #___ GC_____
#___ GC_____ #___ GC_____
#___ GC_____ #___ GC_____

1. **Situation**.

a. ENEMY

(1) COMPOSTTION / DISPOSITION / STRENGTH:

_____
_____
_____
_____

(2) MOST PROBABLE COURSE OF ACTION:

_____
_____
_____
_____

b. FRIENDLY

(1) HIGHER MISSION:

_____
_____
_____

(2) ADJACENT

(a) LEFT/RIGHT: (UNIT/LOCATION/MISSION)

1.___/___/_____ 1.___/___/_____

2.___/___/_____ 2.___/___/_____

3.___/___/_____ 3.___/___/_____

(b) FRONT/REAR:

1.___/___/_____ 1.___/___/_____

2.___/___/_____ 2.___/___/_____

3.___/___/_____ 3.___/___/_____

APPENDIX N

(3) SUPPORTING: FIRE SUPPORT (UNIT/LOCATION/[GS/DS/ATTACH])

1._____/_____/_____

2._____/_____/_____

3._____/_____/_____

4._____/_____/_____

(4) SECURITY

1._____

2._____

3._____

c. ATTACHMENTS: (UNIT/TIME EFFECTIVE)

1._____/_____ 2._____/_____

3._____/_____ 4._____/_____

5._____/_____ 6._____/_____

d. DETACHMENTS: (UNIT OR MARINES / TIME EFFECTIVE)

1._____/_____ 2._____/_____

2. MISSION (PATROL TYPE / WHO - WHAT - WHEN - WHERE - WHY)

_____

_____

_____

3. **Execution**.

a. CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS

(1) SCHEME OF MANEUVER:

_____

_____

_____

(2) FIRE SUPPORT PLAN (MGs/60mm/81mm/ARTY/AIR/NAV/GUN)

_____

_____

_____

APPENDIX N

b. TASKS

(1) SECURITY UNIT / UNIT LEADER (EN ROUTE / AT OBJECTIVE)

_____
_____
_____

(2) ASSAULT UNIT / UNIT LEADER (EN ROUTE / AT OBJECTIVE)

_____
_____
_____

(3) HEADQUARTERS UNIT / UNIT LEADER (EN ROUTE / AT OBJECTIVE)

_____
_____
_____

(4) SUPPORTING UNIT / UNIT LEADER (EN ROUTE / AT OBJECTIVE),

_____
_____
_____

(5) APL

_____
_____
_____

(6) NAVIGATOR

_____
_____
_____

c. COORDINATING INSTRUCTIONS

(1) TIME OF DEPARTURE_____ TIME OF RETURN_____

(2) PATROL ROUTE: PRIMARY / ALTERNATE

FROM GC (IRP)	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT #	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT #	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT #	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM ORP	FOR	TO OBJ	AT GC
FROM OBJ	FOR	TO ORP	AT GC
FROM ORP	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT 4-	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT #	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT #	FOR	TO CKPT#	AT GC
FROM CKPT#	FOR	TO RRP	AT GC

APPENDIX N

(3) ORGANIZATION FOR MOVEMENT (DIAGRAM / TERRAIN MODEL)

_____
_____
_____

(4) SECURITY DURING MOVEMENT:

FLANKS:_____ REAR:_____

FRONT:_____ OVERHEAD:_____

(5) SECURITY DURING HALTS:

_____
_____
_____

(6) ACTIONS AT DANGER AREAS:_____

(a) LINEAR:

_____
_____

(b) CROSS-COMPARTMENT:

_____
_____

(c) OBSTACLES:

_____
_____

(7) ACTIONS UPON CONTACT:_____

(a) HASTY AMBUSH:

_____
_____

(b) CONTACT (LEFT/RIGHT):

_____
_____

(c) CONTACT (FRONT/REAR):

_____
_____

(d) FAR / NEAR AMBUSH

_____
_____

(8) DEPARTURE OF FRIENDLY LINES

_____

_____

(9) REENTRY OF FRIENDLY LINES

_____

_____

(10) ACTIONS AT RALLY POINTS

_____

_____

(11) ACTIONS IN THE OBJECTIVE AREA

_____

_____

(12) DEBRIEFING:

_____

_____

(13) MOPP LEVEL:

_____

4. **Administration and Logistics**.

a. AMMUNITION (ROUNDS PER MAN / PER GUN)

RIFLEMEN:_____ AUTOMATIC RIFLEMEN:_____

M-203s:_____ M-60E3:_____

ATTACHMENTS:_____

b. SPECIAL ORDNANCE

(1) PYROTECHNICS

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

(2) SMOKE

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

TYPE:_____#:_____ COLOR:_____

(3) GRENADES_____ / AT-4_____

(4) CLAYMORES_____ / NVGs_____

(5) EXPLOSIVES_____

(6) RESUPPLY / WHEN:_____ WHERE:_____ HOW:_____

(7) CHOW:_____ WATER:_____

(8) HANDLING / KIA_____ WIA_____

(9) CORPSMAN LOC._____ AID STATION_____

(10) SPECIAL EQUIPMENT_____

5. **Command and Signal**.

a. SIGNAL

(1) BREVITY CODE (SOP)

_____/_____/_____/_____

(2) CALL SIGNS / CEOI DAY:_____ CHANGE TIME:_____

(3) FREQUENCIES: BN TAC CO TAC COF OTHER

Primary: _____ _____ _____ _____
Alternate: _____ _____ _____ _____

(4) USE HAND AND ARM SIGNALS / MESSENGER / VISUAL WITHIN PATROL

b. COMMAND

(1) CHAIN OF COMMAND_____

(2) LOCATION OF PATROL LEADERS_____

ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS? TIME IS NOW_____

WARNING ORDER

A. SITUATION: 1) ENEMY: _____
2) FRIENDLY: _____

B. MISSION: _____

C. GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS:

1. NAME	2. CHAIN OF COMMAND	3. GEN. ORG. (ELEMENTS)	4. SPEC. ORG. (TEAMS)	5. DUTIES	6. ARMS, AMMO, & EQUIP.	7. GEAR COMMON TO ALL	8. TIME SCHEDULE A. WHEN	B. WHAT	C. WHERE	D. WHO
						UTILITIES, UNSTARCHED		DRAW RATIONS		
						SOFT COVERS		DRAW MACHINE GUNS		
						BOOTS		DRAW/TEST COMM. GEAR		
						GLOVES, BLACK		DRAW AMMO & ORDNANCE		
						CAMO PAINT		ISSUE AMMO/TEST FIRE		
						I.D. TAGS, TAPED		FIRE SUPPORT COORD		
						MILITARY I.D. CARD		FORWARD UNIT COORD		
						EQUIPMENT BELT		CHOW		
						BELT SUSPENDERS				
						AMMO POUCHES				
						CANTEEN CUP				
						CANTEEN COVERS				
						FIRST AID POUCH		PATROL ORDER		
						PONCHO				
						NOTEBOOK, PENCIL				
						LAMINATED MAP		INITIAL INSPECTION		
						GREASE PENCIL				
						EXTRA PR SOCKS		REHEARSAL		
						EXTRA BOOTLACES				
						COMPASS		FINAL INSPECTION		
						ALICE PACK		T.O.D.		
						RIFLE –		T.O.R.		
						CLEANING GEAR		DEBRIEF		

D. SPECIFIC INSTRUCTIONS:

1. A. APL YOU ARE SECOND IN COMMAND AND THEREFORE IN CHARGE AT ANY TIME DURING MY ABSENCE. I WANT YOU TO ASSIST ME AT ALL TIMES THROUGHOUT THE DAY IN ENSURING THAT THE TIME SCHEDULE IS ADHERED TO. YOU WILL SUPERVISE PATROL PREPARATION AND DRAWING OF EQUIPMENT. ENSURE COMPLIANCE OF WARNING ORDER BY ALL MEMBERS.

   B. ELEMENT LEADERS SUPERVISE PREPARATION OF RESPECTIVE ELEMENTS AND REPORT COMPLIANCE TO APL

2. SPECIAL PURPOSE TEAMS/KEY INDIVIDUALS _____

APPENDIX N

PATROL PLANNING.

1. **BEGIN PLANNING.**

a. BEGIN REVERSE PLANNING - START FROM STEP OFF TIME / WORK BACK TO CURRENT TIME

b. CONDUCT AN ESTIMATE OF THE SITUATION (METT-T)

c. ISSUE WARNING ORDER TO ASSISTANT PATROL LEADER (APL)

2. **ARRANGE RECONNAISSANCE.**

a. CONDUCT A MAP RECONNAISSANCE / CHOOSE RECON ROUTE AND OBJECTIVES

b. CHOOSE RECONNAISSANCE TEAM (USUALLY PL/RO/2 SECURITY)

c. ARRANGE WITH FORWARD UNIT COMMANDER FOR PASSAGE THROUGH FRIENDLY LINES

d. ISSUE FIVE POINT CONTINGENCY PLAN TO APL

(1) WHERE YOU ARE GOING

(2) OTHERS GOING ON RECONNAISSANCE

(3) TIME YOU WILL BE GONE

(4) WHAT TO DO IF YOU DON'T RETURN

(5) ACTIONS ON ENEMY CONTACT

3. **MAKE RECONNAISSANCE.**

a. CONDUCT RECONNAISSANCE LOOKING FOR INFORMATION THAT WILL ASSIST YOU IN COMPLETION OF THE PLANNING.

4. **COMPLETE THE PLANNING.**

a. BASED ON RECONNAISSANCE DECIDE:

(1) TASK ORGANIZATION

(2) ROUTES TO THE OBJECTIVE AREA

(3) OBSERVATION POINTS / POINT OF ATTACK / FORM OF MANEUVER/ TYPE OF AMBUSH/ RETURN ROUTES

(4) NECESSARY FIRE SUPPORT

APPENDIX N

(5) PREPARE FINAL FIVE PARAGRAPH ORDER

5. **ISSUE THE ORDER.**

a. CONSTRUCT TERRAIN MODEL

b. GATHER MARINES IN TEAM ORDER AROUND TERRAIN MODEL

c. ISSUE ORDER TO ENTIRE PATROL

d. ANSWER QUESTIONS

7. **SUPERVISE.**

a. CONDUCT INSPECTIONS

b. CONDUCT DETAILED REHEARSALS

c. CONDUCT FINAL REHEARSAL AND FINAL INSPECTION

APPENDIX N

PATROLLING TIPS.

1. **Preparation**.

a. Understand your mission; keep your plan simple but thorough.

b. Make a detailed map study. Know the terrain in your objective area. On short patrols, memorize your route. For long patrols, select terrain features to help you keep oriented. A piece of acetate over luminous tape can be used to make a rough sketch or strip map. The sketch map will glow in the dark and make the use of lights unnecessary. Use a grease pencil to write on the sketch map so marks can be easily erased.

c. Consider the use of difficult terrain when planning your route. Impassable terrain is very rare.

d. When your patrol is to infiltrate the enemy area, select a primary and alternate rendezvous point.

e. Consider all types of grenades: fragmentation, CS, white phosphorous, concussion, smoke, high explosive, high explosive airburst, anti-armor, antipersonnel, dual purpose (antipersonnel/antiarmor), and CS for the M203 grenade launcher.

f. Reconnaissance patrols should carry at least one automatic weapon. It provides valuable sustained firepower.

g. Avoid taking weapons requiring different types of ammunition.

h. Clean, check, and test fire all weapons before departure.

i. Carry gloves to protect hands.

j. Carry at least two flashlights and two of such critical items as compasses, binoculars, wire cutters and fuse crimpers.

k. Carry an extra flashlight and radio batteries on long patrol.

1. Every man should carry two canteens and a poncho.

m. Ponchos can be used to make litters, construct rafts, conceal lights, and as shelters.

n. Have every man carry an extra pair of socks.

o. A length of rope, which can be secured around the waist, can be used for binding prisoners, climbing or descending obstacles, and crossing streams.

p. Consider the use of snipers and scout dogs.

q. Two pieces of luminous tape worn on the back of the collar aid in control and movement on dark nights. Turn the collar down when near the enemy. The tape can also be worn on the back of the cap, but cover or remove it when near the enemy.

r. Use friction tape to secure rifle swivels, sling, dog tags, and other items which might rattle.

s. Be sure to camouflage the back of your neck, behind your ears, and the backs of your hands.

t. Provide for security by assigning every man an area of responsibility.

u. Designate at least two pacers and use the average of their individual counts.

v. Fold maps before departing so they can be more easily handled.

w. Preset compasses before departing. Preset more than one compass for each setting required.

z. Take your subordinate leaders with you on your reconnaissance.

y. Prearrange and rehearse all signals to be used. Keep signals simple.

z. Plan time for your patrol members to accustom their eyes to the dark if you have a night patrol.

aa. Use visual aids in issuing your patrol leader’s order (sketch on the ground or a ration box). A properly used visual aid may make the difference between success and failure of the patrol.

bb. Do not carry maps marked with formation that might aid the enemy.

cc. Conduct rehearsals, if time permits, on terrain similar to that over which you will operate. Conduct day and night rehearsals for a night patrol.

dd. Inspect your patrol carefully before rehearsals and before departure. Question your Marines to check their understanding of the action planned.

ee. Retain fire team and squad integrity when organizing the patrol.

2. **Execution**.

APPENDIX N

a. On small patrols, the count should be sent up automatically after each halt or passage of a danger area. In large patrols, use the chain of command to account for men.

b. Use the point for security and not for navigation; however, a navigator may accompany the point.

c. Check navigation frequently.

d. On long patrols, change point and compass men occasionally.

e. Use an alternate challenge and password outside friendly lines.

f. In mountainous terrain, use ridgelines to guide movement whenever possible, but do not move along ridgetops.

g. Weapons are always carried at the ready position.

h. Cut the enemy wire obstacles only when necessary. Make a reconnaissance first.

i. When moving at night, take advantage of any noises such as wind, vehicles, planes, battle sounds, and even sounds caused by inspects.

j. Do not move on roads and trails unless absolutely necessary.

k. Over short distance, the compass can be used for signaling at night. A piece of luminous tape can also be used.

1. Crossing roads in enemy territory is a matter of common sense. Each situation may dictate a different method. You will not violate established procedures if you properly reconnoiter before crossing the road. Establish adequate security and move silently and quickly to avoid detection. A main point of consideration in any road crossing is the control of your unit. Some method used are:

(1) Patrol can form a skirmish line and move quickly and quietly across the road in a single bound.

(2) The entire patrol can form a file, following the footsteps of the man in front in order to minimize footprints.

(3) Men cross the road a few at a time until the entire patrol is across.

(4) Erase all footprints after the patrol has crossed the road regardless of the method used.

m. Crossing streams is similar to crossing roads; reconnaissance and security are necessary.

n. When it is necessary to leave a wounded Marine to be picked up on your return trip, leave another Marine with him. Walking wounded either continue or return on their own to friendly areas. When near the enemy, remove the wounded from the immediate area before applying first aid.

o. Avoid all human habitations.

p. Bypass enemy positions or obstacles by offsetting around them. Stay oriented by moving at right angles for specified distances. If you are moving on an azimuth of 360 and wish to bypass an obstacle or position, change direction 90 degrees and move for 100 meters, change direction back to 360 degrees and you are back to your original route. Do not attempt to slide around or by the enemy position or obstacle. This procedure may result in a lost patrol.

q. Break contact with the enemy by the clock system, by fire and maneuver, or by a combination of both.

r. Know your location at all times. A relatively slight error can cause you to miss your objective or your point of reentry into the friendly area.

3. **Miscellaneous**.

a. Keep the cutting edge of the entrenching tool extremely sharp. It is a good silent weapon and can be used instead of a machete.

b. A garrote (a strangling device) can be used for killing a sentry.

c. Do not jeopardize security by letting ear flaps and hoods interfere with hearing.

d. Keep talking to a minimum. use hand and arm signals to the maximum.

e. When reconnoitering enemy positions, keep the security element within supporting distance of the reconnaissance element.

f. Never throw trash on the ground.

g. Dark, rainy, and windy nights are best for patrols.

h. Prepare for mission accomplishment even with casualties by:

(1) Giving the complete patrol order to all patrol members.

(2) Questioning members during inspections on duties of other teams and elements.

APPENDIX N

(3) Switching individuals, teams, and elements during rehearsals.

i. Ensure that each member knows the general direction of friendly lines and how to navigate there without a compass.

APPENDIX N

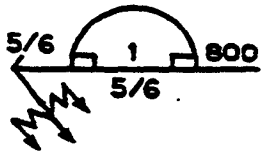
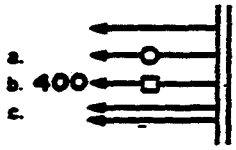
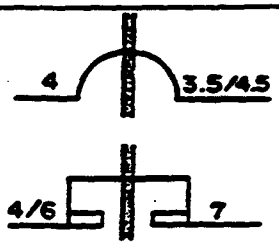
ROUTE RECON SYMBOLS.

ROUTE RECON SYMBOLS

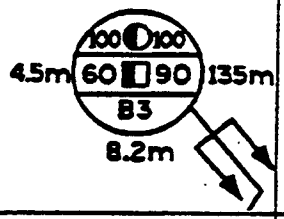
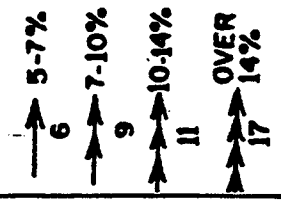
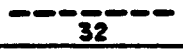
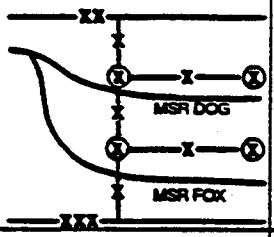
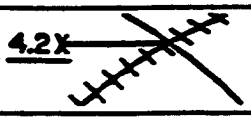
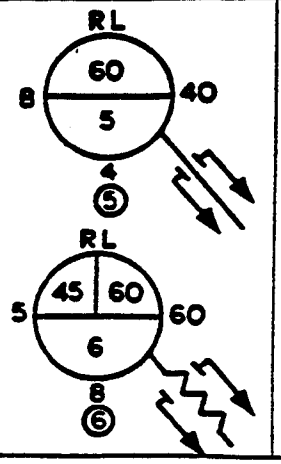
EXPLANATION	SYMBOL	REMARKS
1. **ABBREVIATED BRIDGE SYMBOL**	80 / 4	Use this symbol only when map scale does not permit use of the full NATO bridge symbol. If this symbol is used, DA Form1249 must be submitted. Draw arrow to map location of bridge. Show bridge serial number in lower portion of symbol and military load classification for single-flow traffic in upper portion. If there are separate load classifications for tracked or wheeled vehicles, show the lesser classification. Underline classification number if width of overhead clearance is below minimum standard.
2. **AXIAL ROUTE**	57	Use a solid line and identify the route by an odd number.
3. **BYPASS DIFFICULT**		Use when the obstacle can be crossed in the immediate vicinity, but some work to improve the bypass is necessary.
4. **BYPASS EASY**		Use when the obstacle can be crossed in the immediate vicinity by a US 2 1/2-ton truck (or NATO equivalent) without work to improve the bypass.
5. **BYPASS IMPOSSIBLE**		Use when the obstacle can be crossed only by repairing or constructing a feature, or by detouring around the obstacle.
6. **CIVIL OR MILITARY ROUTE DESIGNATION**	(B 209)	Write the designation in parentheses along the route.
7. **CONCEALMENT**		Show roads lined with trees by a single line of circles for deciduous trees and a single line of inverted Vs for evergreen trees. Show woods bordering a road by several rows of circles for deciduous trees and several rows of inverted Vs for evergreen trees.
8. **CRITICAL POINTS**	3	Number, in order, and describe critical points on DA Form 1711-R. Use critical points to show features not adequately covered by other symbols on the overlay.
9. **DAMAGE OR DESTRUCTION**		
10. **FERRY** *Ferry Type* P – pedestrian V – vehicular	2 P ? 6 12 4 V 60 ? 20	Draw arrow to the map location of the ferry. The data above the symbol shows, in order, the left approach, ferry serial number, ferry type, and right approach. The data inside the symbol shows, from left to right, the military load classification and the dead weight capacity in tons. The number below the symbol shows the turnaround time in minutes. A question mark indicates unknown information. Show difficult approaches by zigzag lines and easy approaches by a straight line
11. **FORD** *Ford Type* P – pedestrian V – vehicular	1/P/2.5/X 15/3.5/S/0.5 4/V/?/Y 15/3/P/0.75	Draw arrow to the ford location. The data above the line shows, in order, the left bank approach, the ford serial number, ford type, stream velocity (in meters per second) seasonal limitations, and right bank approach. Difficult approaches are represented by zigzag lines corresponding in position to shore where approach is located. Straight lines identify an easy approach. The left and right banks are determined by looking downstream. The data below the line shows, in order, length, width, bottom type, and depth. All measurements are in meters. *Seasonal Limiting Factors:* X – none, Y – significant. ? – Unknown information. *Bottom Type:* M –mud, C –clay, S –sand, G –gravel, R –rock, P –artificial paving.

APPENDIX N

ROUTE CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

EXPLANATION	SYMBOL	REMARKS
22. ROUTE CLASSIFICATION FORMULA	10.5 m/X/120/00 6m/Z/30/4.1m/(OB) 9m/Y/40/5 m/(OB)(W)	Express the formula in order of route width, route type, military load classification, minimum overhead clearance, obstructions (if present) and special conditions. *Route Types:* X –all-weather , Y –limited all-weather route, Z –fair-weather route *Special Conditions:* (T) -Regular snow blockage, (W) -Regular flooding
23. SERIES OF SHARP CURVES		Point vertex of triangle at the first curve in the series. Indicate the number of curves in the series (left) and the radius of the sharpest curve (right).
24. SHARP CURVE		Point vertex of triangle to map location of curve and indicate the radius of the curve, in meters, outside the triangle. A curve of 45 meters or less must be reported on the overlay, and a curve of 25 meters or less is an obstruction.
25. TRAFFIC CONTROL HEADQUARTERS		
26. TRAFFIC CONTROL POST		
27. TUNNEL		Draw arrow to map location of tunnel. Place bypass condition symbol on arrow. Show minimum and maximum overhead clearances to the left of the symbol, the tunnel serial number inside the symbol, and the total tunnel length to the right of the symbol. Below the symbol, show the traveled way width. If sidewalks are present, follow with a slash and the total traveled way, including sidewalks. Underline the traveled way if the road entering the tunnel is wider than the traveled way of the tunnel. Use a question mark to show unknown information.
28. TURNOUT The symbol may be amplified as follows: a. Wheeled vehicle b. Tracked vehicle c. A length of road exceeding 1 km.		Use this symbol to show the possibility of driving off the road. Draw the arrow in the direction of the turnout (right or left of road). For wheeled vehicles, draw a small circle on the shaft of the arrow. For tracked vehicles, draw a small square on the shaft of the arrow and place the length of the turnout, in meters, at the tip of the arrow. When the turnout is longer than 1 kilometer, use double arrows.
29. UNDERPASS CONSTRICTIONS— arched or rectangular		Draw the symbol over the road. Place the width of the traveled way, in meters, to the left of the symbol. If sidewalks are present, follow the traveled way width with a slash and the total width, including sidewalks. Underline the traveled way width if the road entering the underpass is wider than the underpass traveled way. Show the overhead clearance, in meters, to the right of the symbol. Show both minimum and maximum overhead clearances, if different.
30. UNKNOWN or doubtful information	?	
31. WIDTH CONSTRICTION		The number at the left shows the narrowest width of the constriction, and the one at the right is the total constricted length. Both dimensions are in meters.

APPENDIX N

EXPLANATION	SYMBOL	REMARKS
12. **FULL NATO BRIDGE SYMBOL**		Indicate wheeled vehicles in the upper third of the symbol with the two-way wheeled classification at the left and the one-way wheeled classification at the right. Show tracked vehicles in the center third of the symbol with the two-way tracked classification at the left and the one-way tracked classification at the right. Place the bridge serial number in the lower third of the symbol. Draw the arrow to the location of the bridge and show bypass conditions on the arrow shaft. Place traveled way width below the symbol, overhead clearance to the left of the symbol, and overall length to the right of the symbol.
13. **GRADES**		Show the actual percent of grade to the right of the symbol. Any grade of 7 percent or more is an obstruction. Include in the route classification formula. Arrows point uphill; the length of the arrow represents the length of the grade if the map scale permits.
14. **LATERAL ROUTE**		Use a broken line and identify the route by an even number.
15. **LIMITS OF SECTOR**		Show the beginning and ending of a reconnoitered section of a route or road with this symbol.
16. **MAIN SUPPLY ROUTE**		Route is labeled "MSR" and is assigned a code name.
17. **OBSTACLES** a. Proposed block b. Prepared but passable c. Completed block		Place the center of the symbol over the location of the blocked part of the route. Use parallel broken lines for a proposed block, parallel lines for a prepared but passable block, and crossed lines for a completed block.
18. **CLEARANCE**		Overhead clearance unlimited.
19. **PARKING AREA**		
20. **RAILROAD GRADE CROSSING**		Use this symbol to show a level crossing where passing trains would interrupt traffic flow. If there is a power line present, show its height, in meters, from the ground. Underline the overhead clearance if it is less than 4.3 meters.
21. **RAILWAY BRIDGE SYMBOL**		Place RL above the symbol to indicate a railway bridge. At the left of the symbol show the overhead clearance. Show the overall length of the bridge at the right of the symbol. Indicate the traveled way width below the symbol and underline it if it is below standard for the classification. Inside the symbol, show the bridge classification in the upper half. If the class is different for single- and double-flow traffic, show single flow on the left and double flow on the right. Place the railway bridge serial number in the lower half of the symbol. Draw an arrow to the map location of the bridge. On the arrow shaft, indicate the ease of adapting the bridge for road vehicle use. A zigzag line means it would be difficult to adapt, and a straight line means it would be easy to adapt. Place the bypass symbol on the arrow shaft to indicate bypass conditions.

APPENDIX N

ROUTE RECON KIT.

1. Two (2) sets of colored overlay pens of varying color and thickness

2. Five (5) sheets laminated 8 I/2" x 11" lined white paper

3. Ten (10) sheets of 18" x 24" plastic overlay material

4. Ten (10) laminated copies of DA form 1248 Road Reconnaissance Report

5. Ten (10) laminated copies of DA form 1249 Bridge Reconnaissance Report

6. Ten (10) laminated copies of DA form 1250 Tunnel Reconnaissance Report

7. Ten (10) laminated copies of DA form 1251 Ford Reconnaissance Report

8. Ten (10) laminated copies of DA form 1252 Ferry Reconnaissance Report

9. Two 25 meter lengths of 1/2" line weighted with 10 oz. plumb and marked each meter with colored ribbon

10. One (1) folding one meter ruler

11. One (1) twelve inch ruler with metric markings

12. Two (2) map protractors

13. One (1) Joint Plotter

14. One (1) Surveyors Compass w/ Fine Point Black Alcohol Pen

15. Two (2) laminated Engineer Cards

16. One (1) Engineers Clinometer

ADDITIONAL EQUIPMENT:

1. One (1) 35mm Camera w/film

2. One (1) Laser Range Finder

3. Route signs as necessary

4. Police Tape/Engineer Tape

APPENDIX N

PREPARING A PATROL OVERLAY.

1. **General**. A patrol overlay graphically depicts the route traveled by a patrol. The patrol leader will prepare a patrol overlay for each patrol.

2. **Patrol Overlay**. Each patrol overlay will contain the following information:

a. Two sets of grid reference points.

b. A North seeking arrow.

c. Overall classification of the overlay will be place centered in the top and bottom margins.

d. Reference box containing the following information:

(1) Name, Rank.

(2) SSN.

(3) Unit:

(4) Date Time Group expressed as DayTime(local)Month Year / 12 1930L May 95.

(5) Map Name; Edition, Scale.

(6) Key: Depicting special symbology.

(7) Mode of travel (Foot or Vehicle) & distance traveled.

(8) Estimated time of departure and return.

e. Location of Friendly Forces.

f. Location of checkpoints or ambush sites.

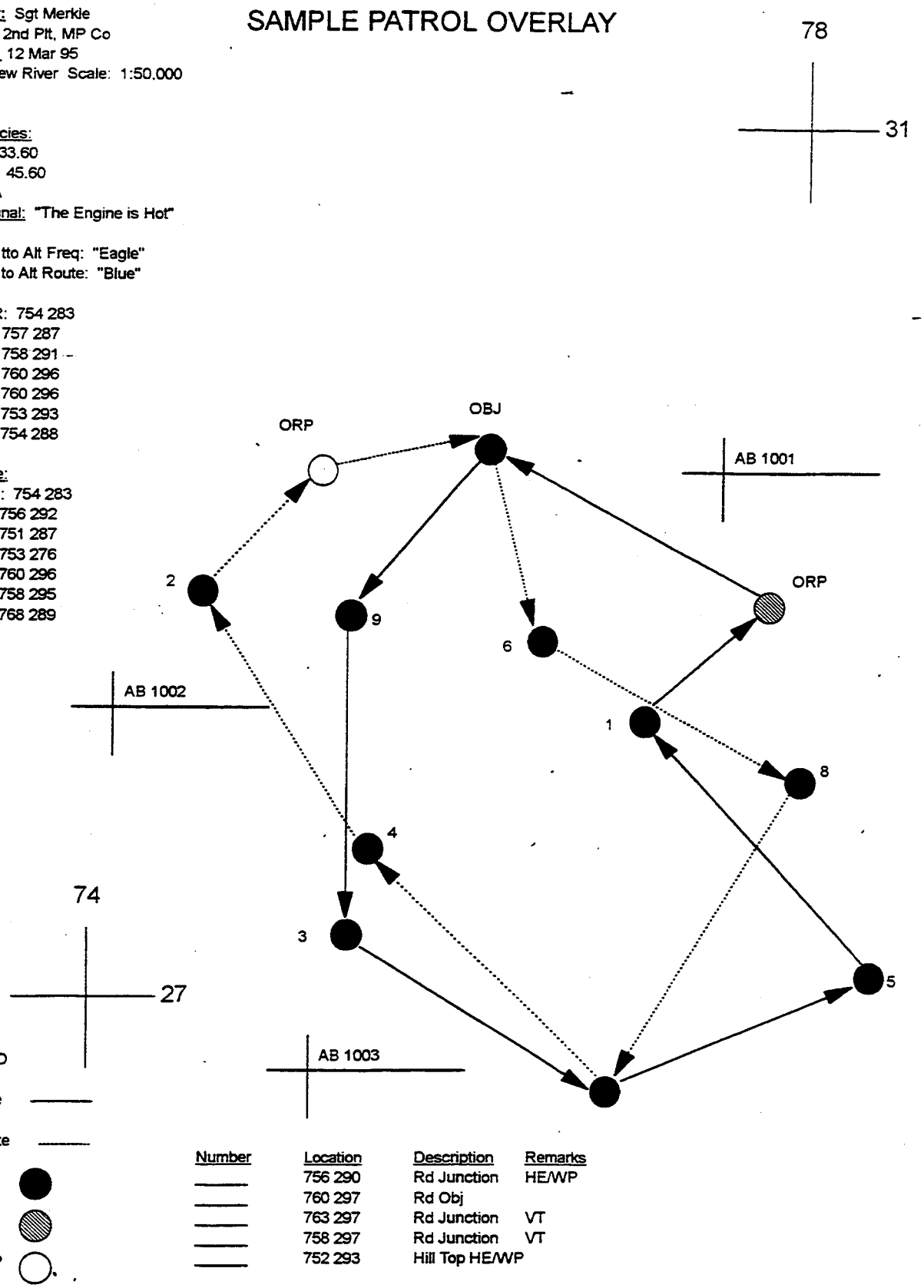
g. The patrol leader is responsible for providing the tactical command post this overlay before departure and immediately upon return. See the Enclosures.

APPENDIX N

SAMPLE PATROL AND ROUTE RECON OVERLAY.

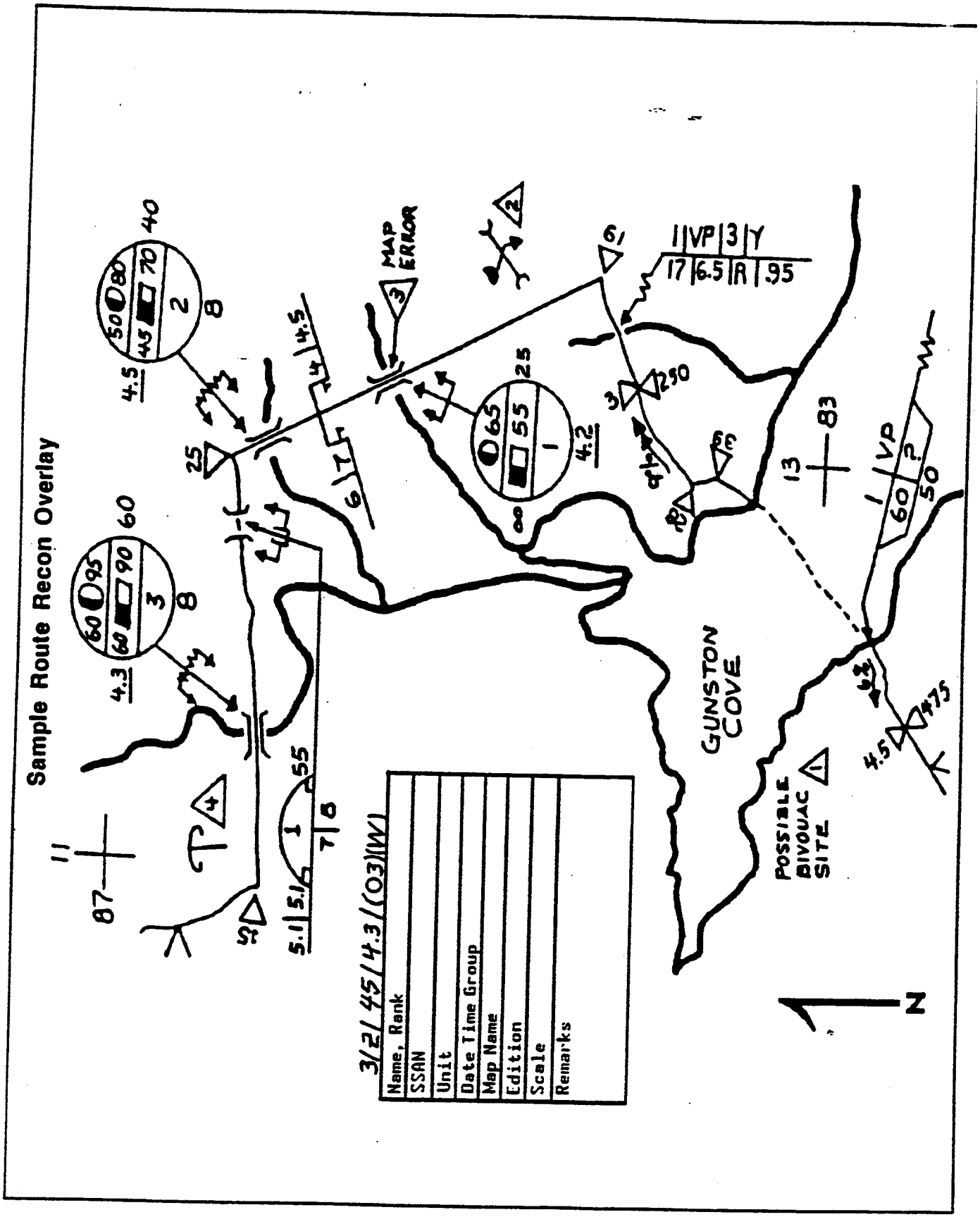
Patrol Leader: Sgt Merkle
Unit: 1st Sqd, 2nd Plt, MP Co
Date of Patrol: 12 Mar 95
Map Sheet: New River Scale: 1:50,000
TOD: 1845
TOR: 0200
Patrol Frequencies:
Primary: 33.60
Alternate: 45.60
Call Sign: N4A
Emergency Signal: "The Engine is Hot"
Code Words:
Switching tto Alt Freq: "Eagle"
Switching to Alt Route: "Blue"
Primary Route:
POD/POR: 754 283
CP5: 757 287
CP1: 758 291
ORP: 760 296
OBJ: 760 296
CP9: 753 293
CP3: 754 288

ALternate Route:
POD.POR: 754 283
CP4: 756 292
CP2: 751 287
ORP: 753 276
OBJ: 760 296
CP6: 758 295
CP8: 768 289



Number	Location	Description	Remarks
	756 290	Rd Junction	HE/WP
	760 297	Rd Obj	
	763 297	Rd Junction	VT
	758 297	Rd Junction	VT
	752 293	Hill Top HE/WP	

APPENDIX N


Sample Route Recon Overlay
GUNSTON COVE
POSSIBLE BIVOUAC SITE
MAP ERROR
N
Name, Rank
SSAN
Unit
Date Time Group
Map Name
Edition
Scale
Remarks

APPENDIX N

APPENDIX O

EXAMPLES OF OBSTACLES AND BARRIERS.

TRIPLE STANDARD CONCERTTNA FENCE

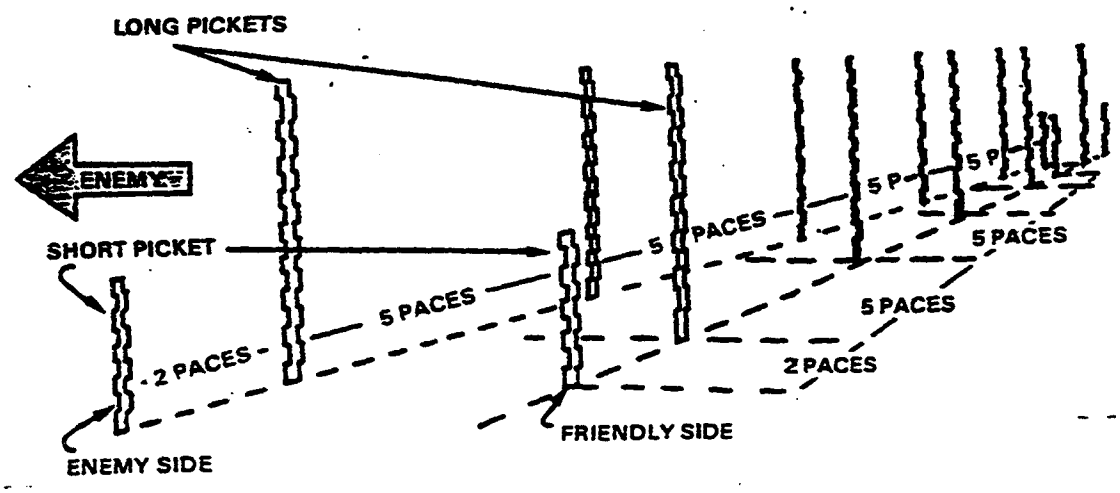
1. **General.** Of the wire harriers a platoon or squad may build, the most common is the triple standard concertina fence. It is built of either barbed wire concertina or barbed tape concertina. There is no difference in building methods.

2. **Material and Labor.** The material and labor requirements for a 30 meter fence are:

Long pickets	160	
Short pickets	4	
400 meter reels of barbed wire	3	
Rolls of concertina	59	
Staples	317	
Man hours to erect	30	(or 1 platoon hour)

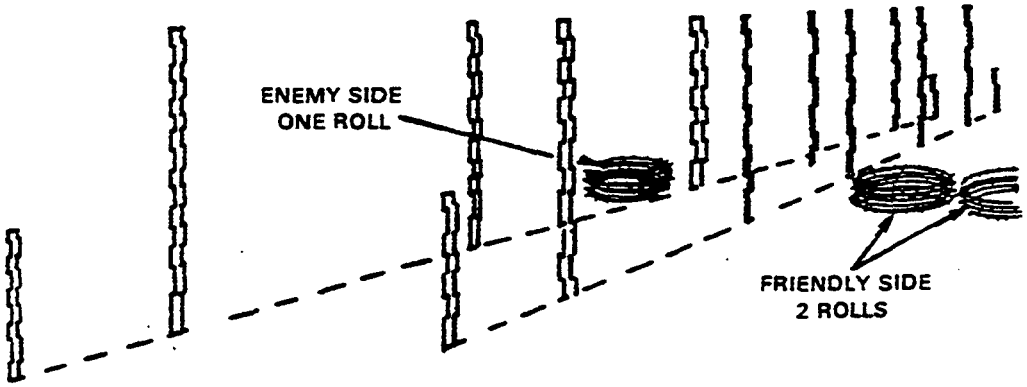
3. **To Construct a Triple Standard Concertina Fence.**

a. Lay out and install all pickets from left to right (as you face the enemy). Put the long pickets five paces apart, and the short (anchor) pickets two paces from the end of the long pickets. Lay out two rows of pickets. These rows are offset and are placed 3 feet apart.

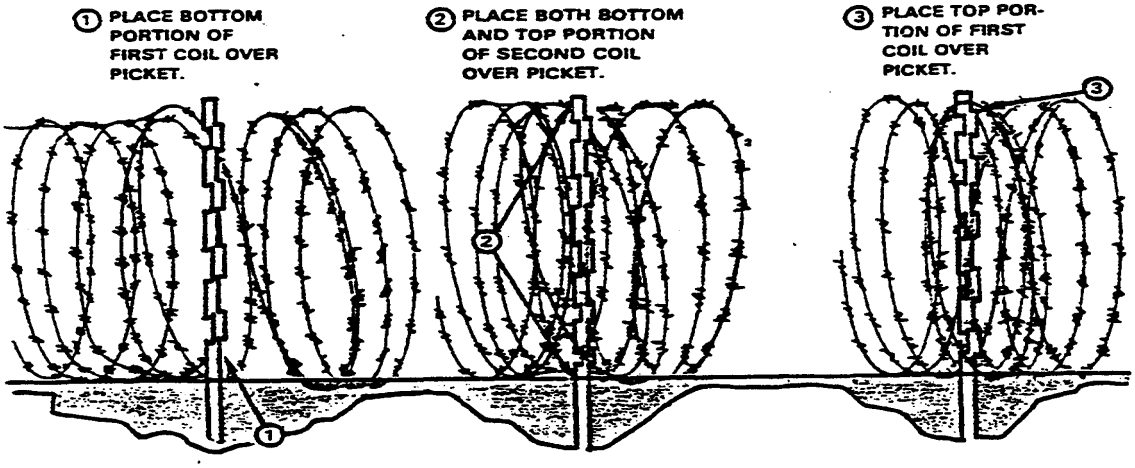


b. Now lay out all rolls of concertina. Place a roll in front of the third picket on the enemy side, and two rolls to the rear of the third picket on the friendly side. This step is repeated for every fourth picket thereafter.

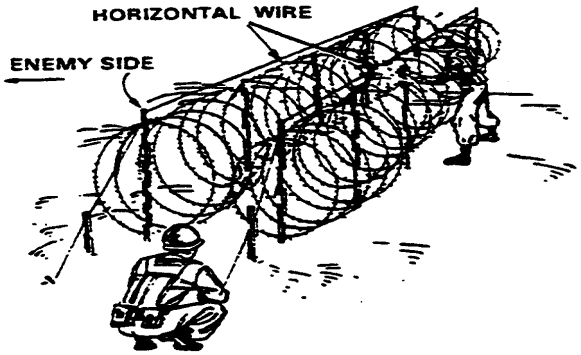
APPENDIX O



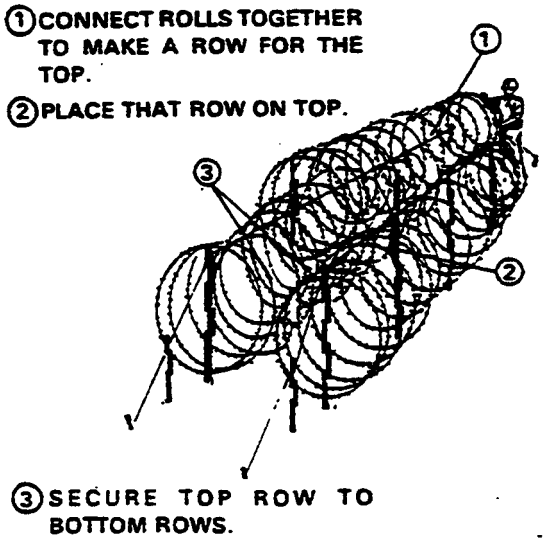
c. Install the front row of concertina and horizontal wire. Place the concertina over the pickets as shown. Run the horizontal wire from the picket across the tip of the concertina. Fasten it to the concertina and stakes. Anchor it at both ends with the short pickets.



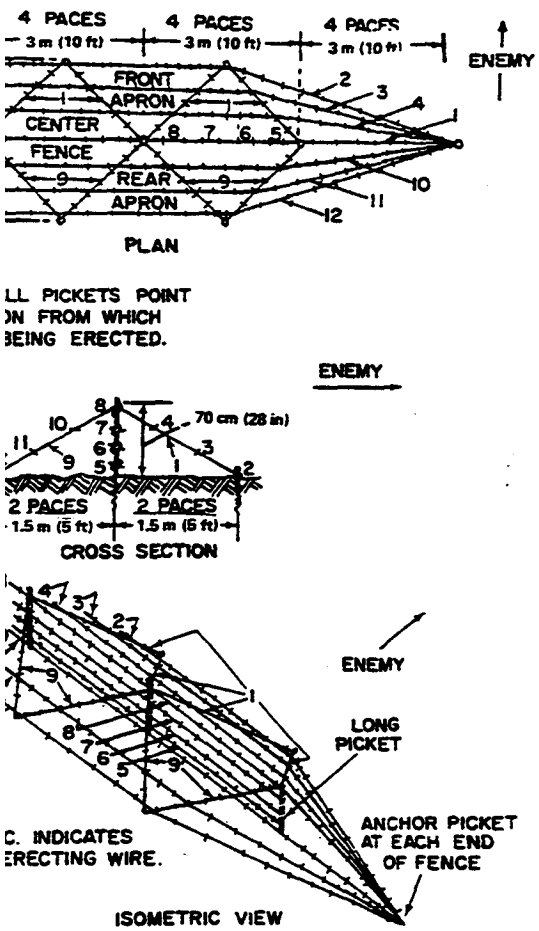
d. Install the rear row of concertina and horizontal wire using the same procedure used for the front row.



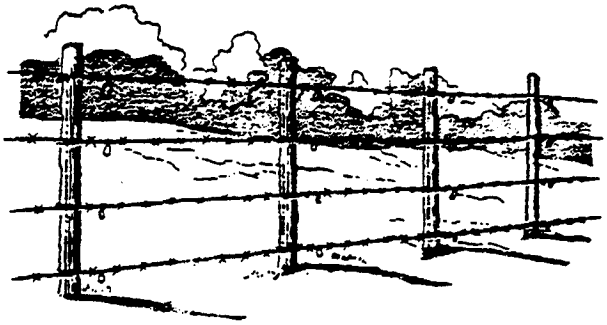
e. Install the top row of concertina, first connecting the rolls of concertina together. Then place this row on top of the first two rows. Secure the top row by fastening it to the horizontal wires of the front and rear rows. Telephone wire, rope, or any other material can be used to secure the rolls and rows together.



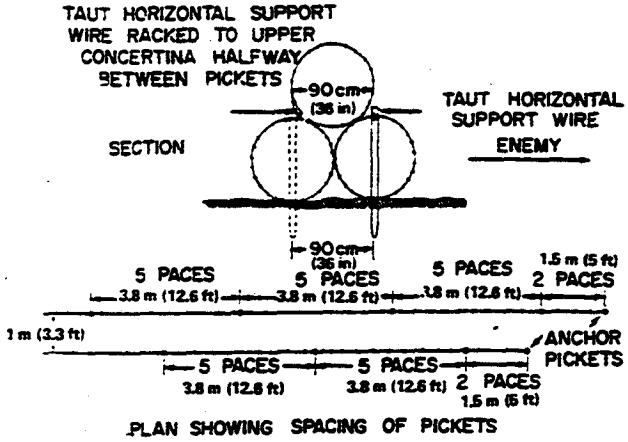
APPENDIX O



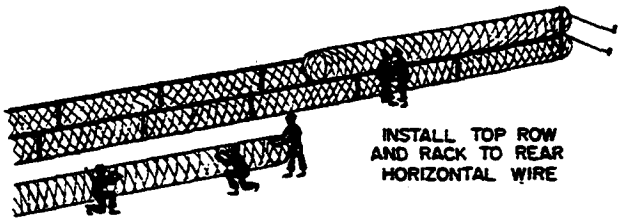
Double apron fence.



Fo· -strand cattle fence as viewed from the enemy side.



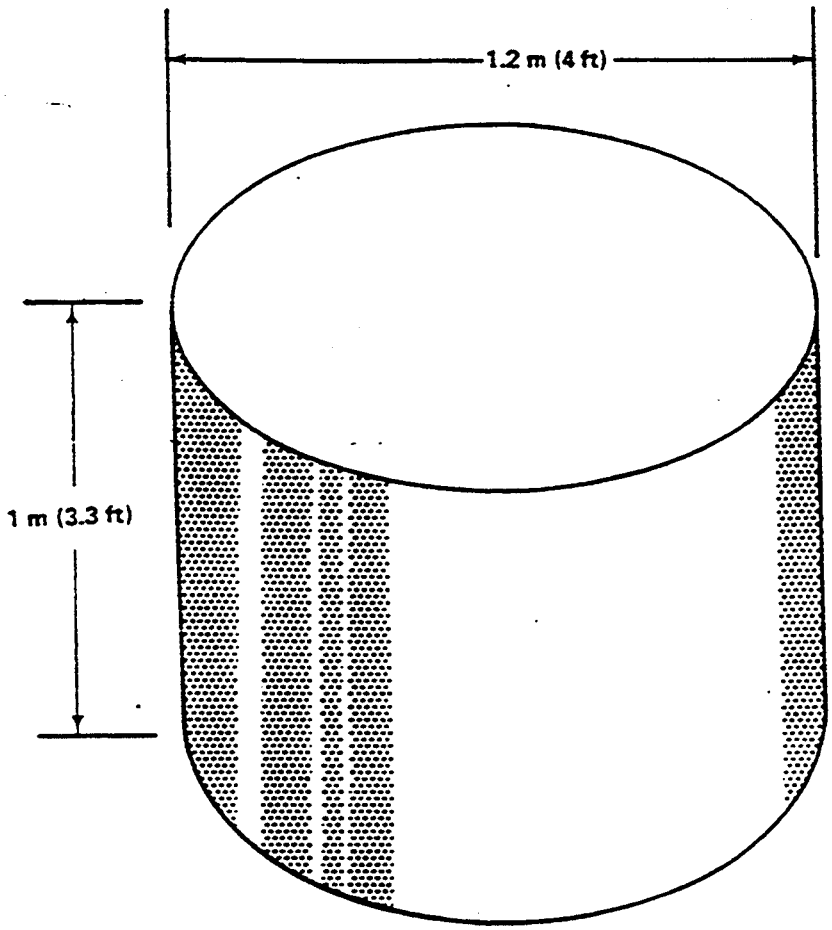
Triple standard concertina fence.



Installing concertina.

APPENDIX O

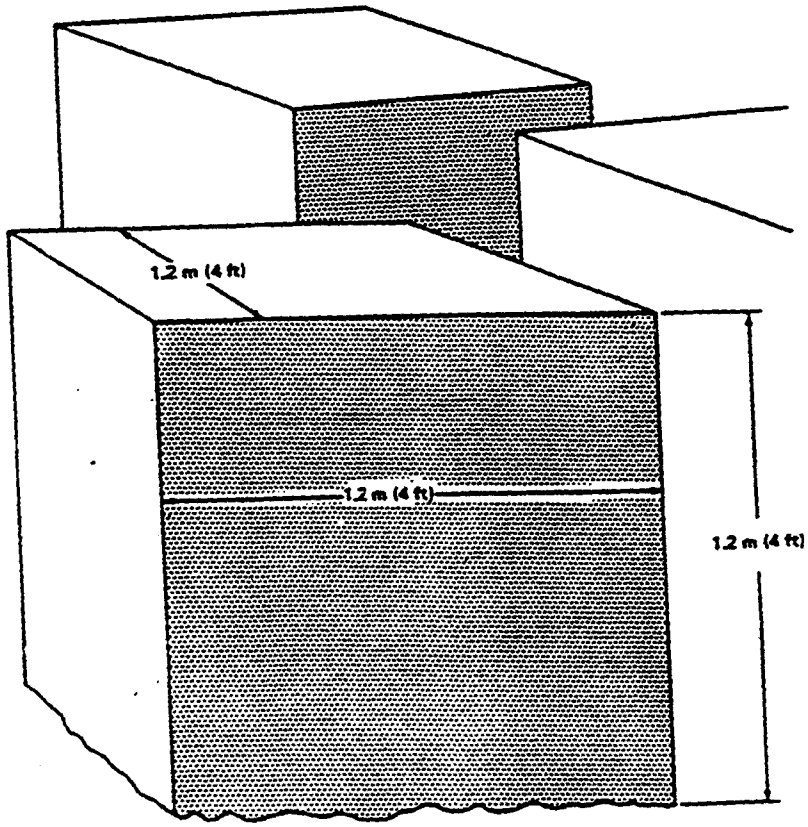
Concrete Cylinder:



Concrete cylinder.

APPENDIX O

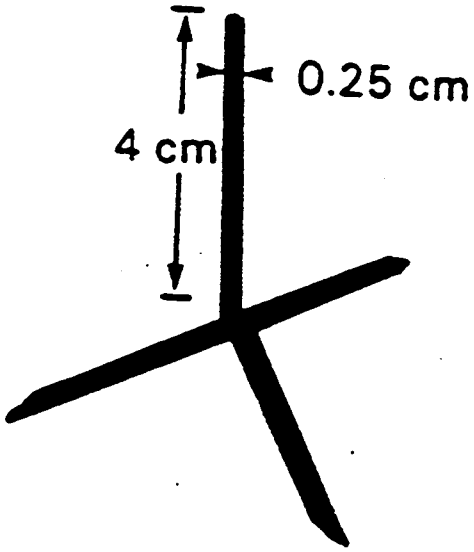
Concrete Cube:



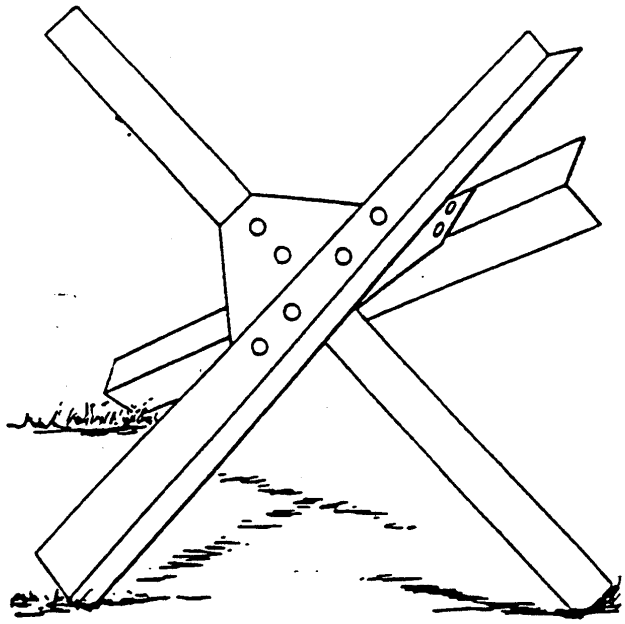
Concrete cubes.

APPENDIX O

Caltrop:

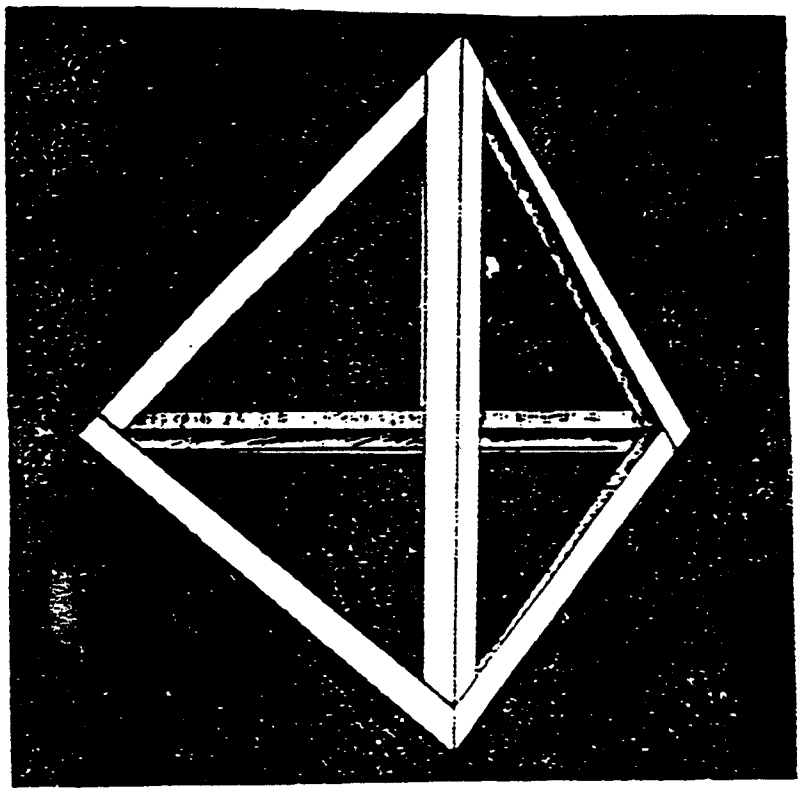


Hedgehog:

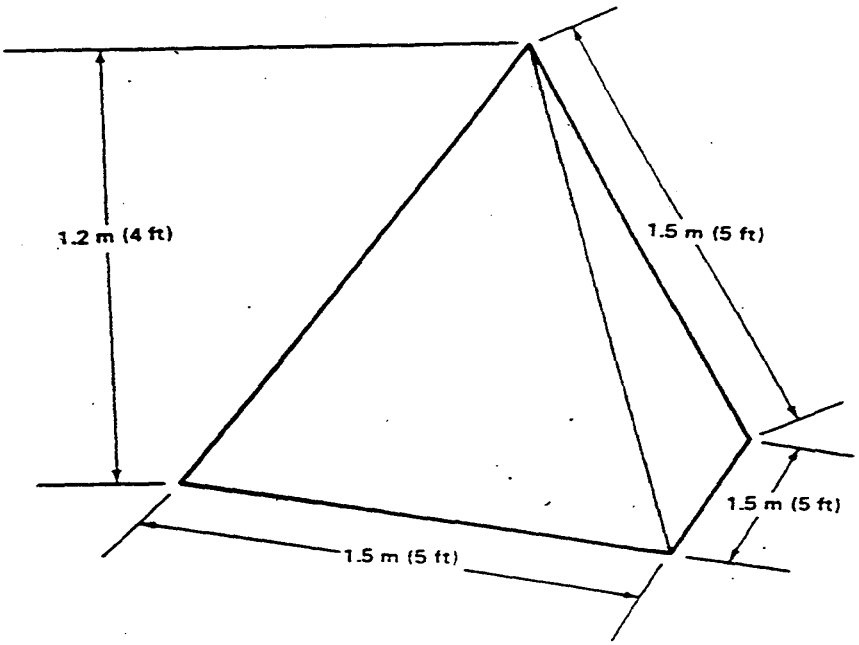


APPENDIX O

Tetrahedron:

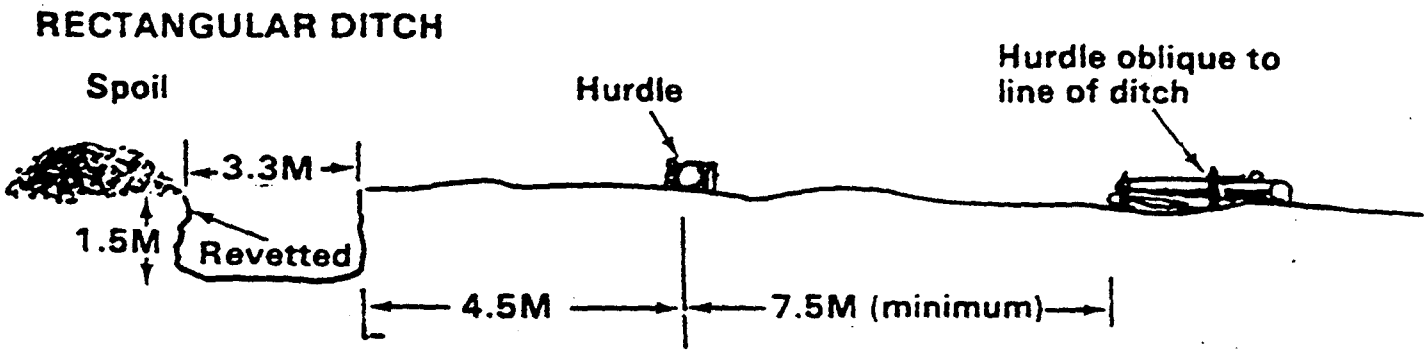


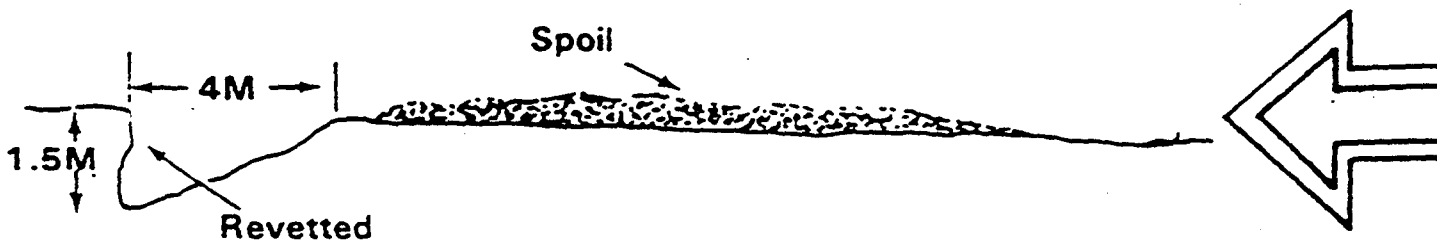
Concrete Tetrahedron:

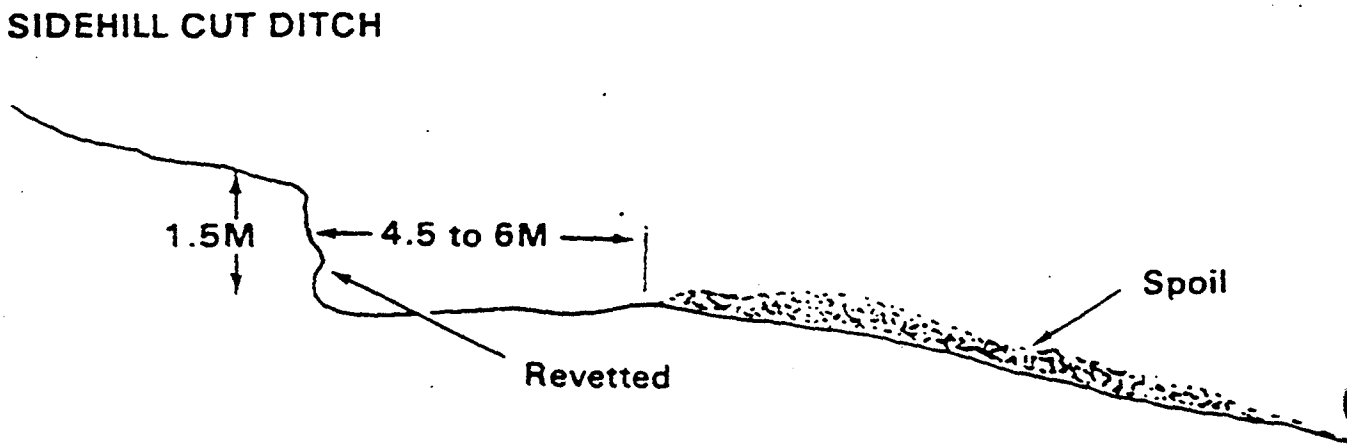


Concrete tetrahedron.

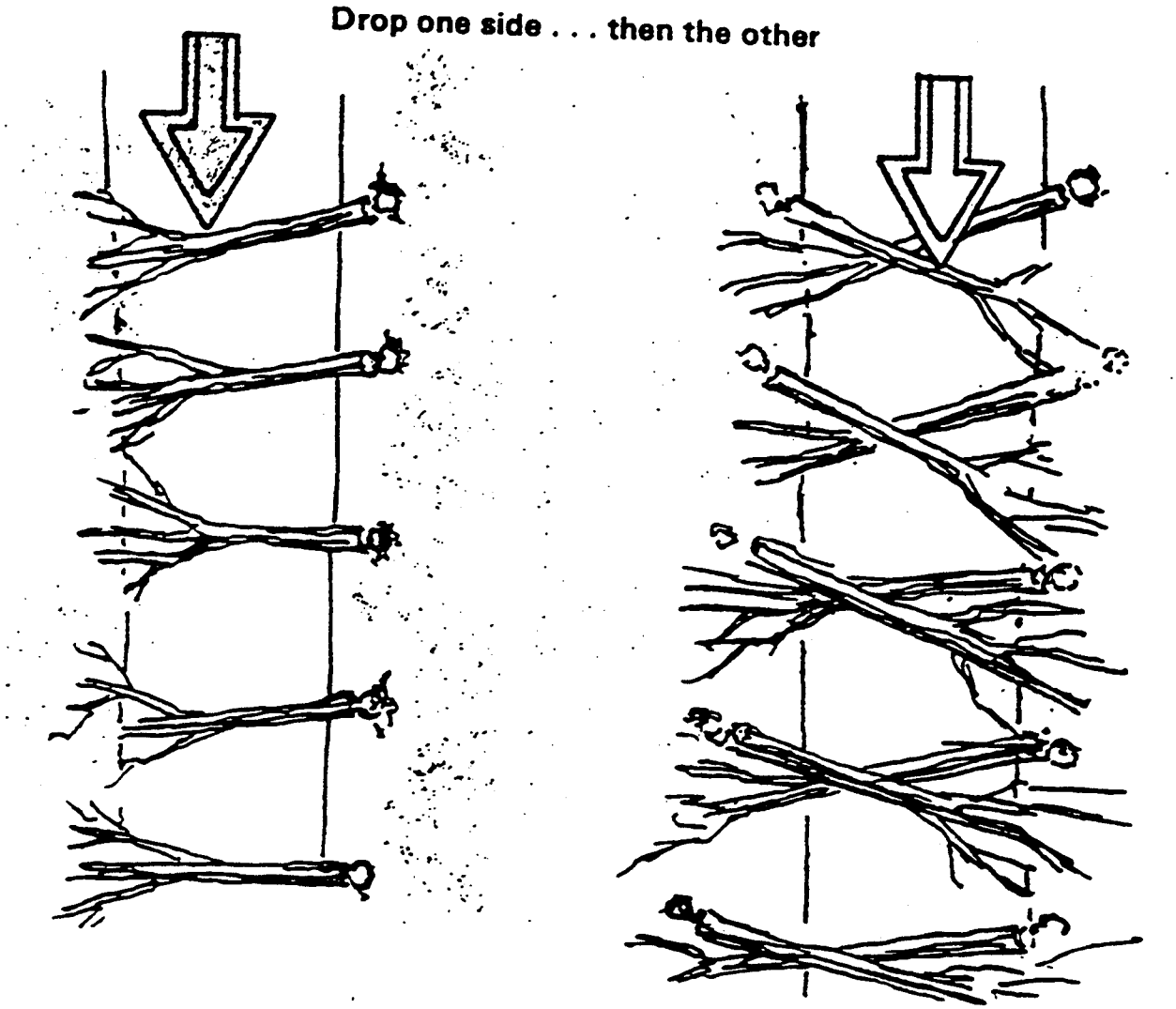
APPENDIX O


RECTANGULAR DITCH
Spoil
Hurdle
Hurdle oblique to line of ditch
3.3M
1.5M
Revetted
4.5M
7.5M (minimum)

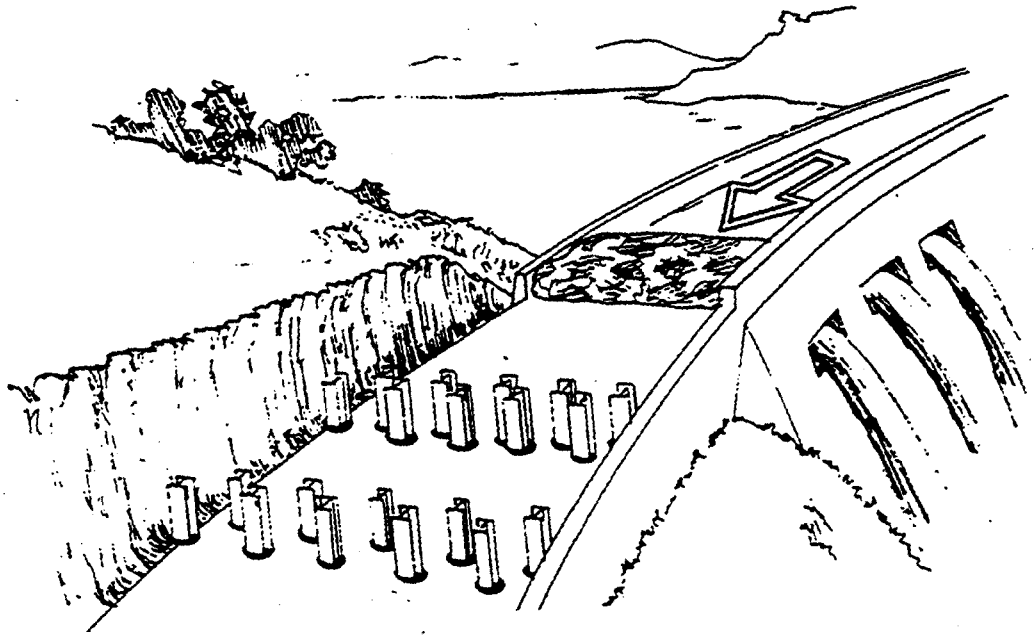

TRIANGULAR DITCH
Spoil
4M
1.5M
Revetted

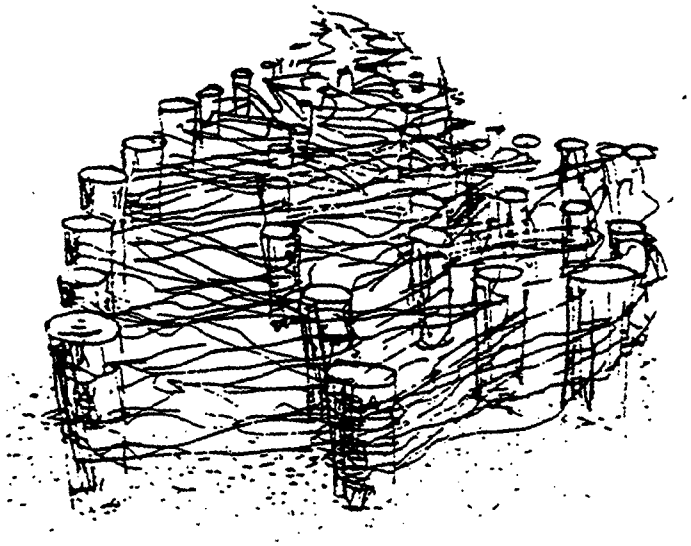

SIDEHILL CUT DITCH
1.5M
4.5 to 6M
Spoil
Revetted

APPENDIX O



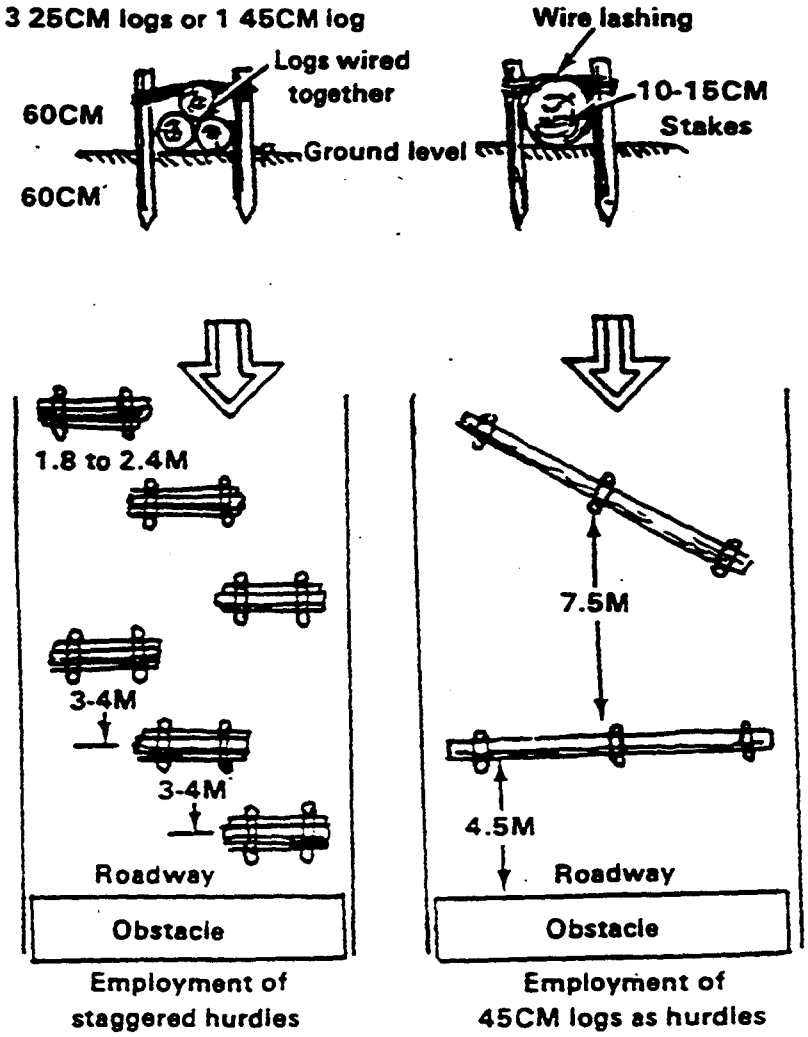
APPENDIX O



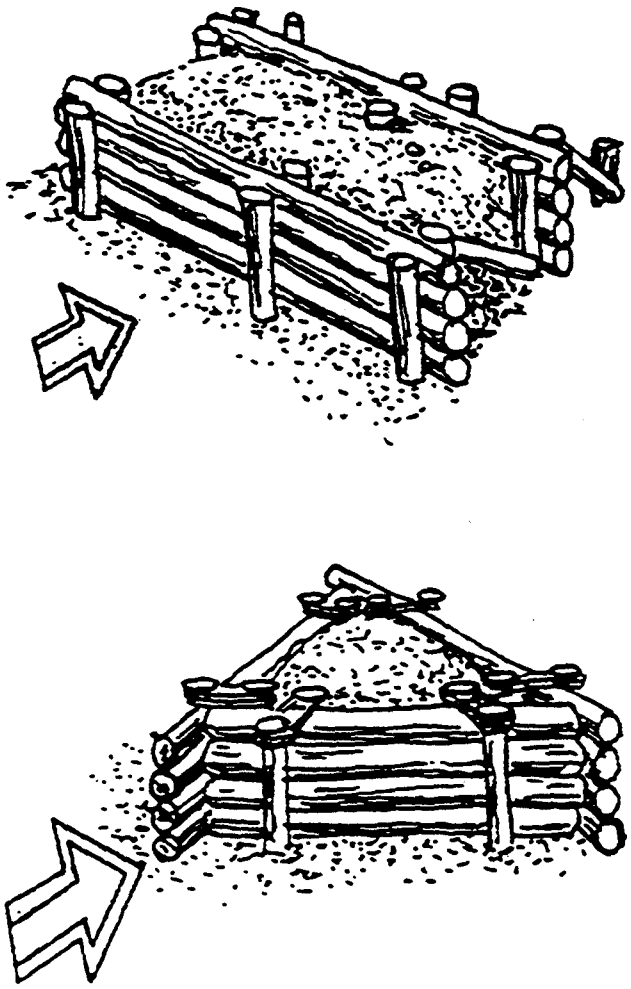


APPENDIX O

Log Hurdles



Log Cribs



APPENDIX O

OBSTACLE SYSTEM
B
B
C
A
D
A
B
Key:
A. Antipersonnel mines
B. Antitank mines
C. Booby traps
D. Road crater

APPENDIX P

NBC OPERATIONAL PLANNING

MOPP LEVELS PLANNING AND GUIDANCE.

MOPP LEVELS

MOPP	OVERGARMENT	OVERBOOTS	MASK WITH HOOD	GLOVES
0	Readily Available	Readily Available	Carried	Readily Available
1	Worn, Open or Closed	Carried	Carried	Carried
2	Same as MOPP 1	Worn	Carried	Carried
3	Same as MOPP 1	Worn	Worn	Carried
4	Worn, Closed	Worn	Worn	Worn

MISSION ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) AND PLANNING GUIDANCE

1. MOPP 0. The MOPP gear is readily available (that is, within the work area, vehicle, fighting position, or the like) and the protective mask is carried. MOPP Zero is appropriate when the enemy has an NBC employment capability but chemical warfare has not begun or when troops are first deployed outside the theater of operation. MOPP Zero allows Marines to be free of the burden of wearing the CPOG and mask and yet have them readily available.

2. MOPP 1. The CPOG, jacket and blouse, is worn. In hot weather, the CPOG can be worn directly over the underwear and the jacket may be left open for ventilation, but the trousers should be kept closed. For Marines, in MOPP One, the reaction time needed to adopt MOPP Four Protection against an attack is cut in half; from eight minutes to four.

3. MOPP 2. Chemical protective over boots are added. The over boots take about three to four minutes to put on; once a Marine is in MOPP Two. The Marine can go to higher levels of MOPP in a matter of seconds. In hot weather, the jacket may be left open for ventilation, but the trousers remain closed.

4. MOPP 3. The protective mask and hood are added making protection almost complete, but interference with the ability to

perform becomes significant. The mask and hood restrict vision; heat stress becomes a major factor; and a greater risk of heat exhaustion exists. In hot weather, Marines may open the over garment jacket and roll the hood for ventilation, but the trouser should remain closed.

5. MOPP 4. Total protection. Hands are protected with the rubber gloves, the hood and the jacket are completely closed up.

6. Upon the attainment of MOPP 1 the following actions will occur:

a. Effect maximum dispersion of material issued.

b. Ensure all individual protective equipment is issued.

c. Alert decontamination teams.

d. Prepare contingency locations for decontamination.

e. When under NBC attack, advise higher headquarters using the reports in ANNEX Y.

f. Adverse effect of wearing MOPP gear when in level three or four.

(1) Consider the physical effects:

(a) Elevated body temperature will cause a rapid decrease in performance.

(b) Dehydration can be rapid. A Marine can lose up to one quart of fluid per hour.

(c) Wearing the hood impairs heating.

(d) The mask makes speech *difficult to* understand.

(2) Consider the psychological effects:

(a) Claustrophobia.

(b) Disorientation.

(c) Distorted body sensations.

(d) Confusion.

g. Actions taken to minimize adverse effects

(1) Plan for tasks to take longer.

(2) Take breaks more frequently and for longer periods of time.

(3) Ensure Marines increase water intake to avoid dehydration heat injuries.

(4) Speak slowly

(5) Hold the microphone close to the voicemitter when using radios.

(6) Repeat orders to ensure that they are understood.

(7) Wear MOPP gear directly over underwear in hot weather.

(8) Move Marines to a contamination-free area for short unmasking periods and eating.

APPENDIX P

THREAT CHEMICAL AGENTS AND TOXINS CHART.

Type of Agent	Sym-bol	Means of ID	Symptoms in Man	Effects on Man	Rate of Action	How Nor-mally Dissemi-nated	Protection **Required**	Decontam-ination
I Nerve	GA GB GD V	M256, M18A2, M19, M8/M9 Paper	Difficult Breathing, sweating, drooling, nausea, vomiting, convulsion, and dim vision	Incapacitate at Low concentra-tions; kills if Inhaled or absorbed through the Skin or eyes.	Very rapid by inhalation, slower through skin. Delayed through skin; rapid through eyes	Aerosol or vapor	Protective mask and protective clothing Protective mask and protective clothing	STB slurry; household bleach; 10% lye or washing soda; DS2; steam and ammonia in confined area; hot, soapy water; M258 series kit.
Blood	AC CK	M256 M18A2 M19	Rapid breathing, convulsions, and coma	Kills if high concentrations Are inhaled.	Rapid	Aerosol or vapor	Protective mask	None needed in field.
Blister	HD HN HL L CX	M256 M 18A2 M19 M8/M9 Paper	No early symptoms. Searing of eyes and stinging of skin Powerful irritation of eyes, nose, and skin.	Blisters skin And respiratory tract; can cause temporary blindness. Some agents sting and form Wheals on the Skin.	Blisters delayed hours to days; eyes effect more rapid. Mustard, lewisite, and phosgene oxime very rapid.	Liquid or droplets	Protective mask and clothing	STB, DS2, household ;; bleach, M2~8 series kit. try lye, fire; wash with soap and water

APPENDIX P

Type of **Toxin**	Means **of ID**	**Symptoms in** Man	Effects on Man	Rate of Action	**How Nor**mally **Dissemi**n-ated	**Protection Required**	**Decontam-ination**
Mycotoxins	None	Vomiting, eye and skin irration, dizziness, bloody diarrhea, and blisters.	Can incapaci-tate or kills, dep-ending on concentrat ion.	Rapid	Dust, droplets, aerosols, smokes or covert means.	Protective mask and protective clothing.	Soap and water, bleach, M258-series kit, STB, and DS2.
Entero-toxins	**None**	**Rapid Breathing, convulsions, and coma**	**Primarily incapacita tes, assum-ing proper first aid is conducted**	**Rapid**	**Same as above**	**Same as above**	**Same as above**
Botulinum Toxin	None	No early symptoms. Searing of eyes and stinging of skin. Powerful irritation of eyes, nose, and skin.	Kills	Delayed	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above

APPENDIX P

MOPP LEVELS AND WORK SCHEDULE.

TEMPERATURE RANGES

MOPP Level	Work Rate	-70F -21C	70-79F 21-26C	80-89F 27-32C	90 +33C
1	LOW	a	a	a	a
1	MODERATE	a	a	60/20	40/50
1	HEAVY	a	60/15	40/25	30/50
2	LOW	a	a	a	50/50
2	MODERATE	a	a	50/35	30/60
2	HEAVY	60/30	45/30	25/30	b
3	LOW	a	a	a	60/30
3	MODERATE	a	60/20	40/35	30/50
3	HEAVY	40/20	35/30	b	b
4	LOW	a	a	a	60/30
4	MODERATE	a	60/20	40/35	30/50
4	HEAVY	40/20	35/30	b	b

a. Under these conditions, any reasonable work/rest periods will *suffice to* prevent heat casualties.

b. Under these conditions, work time will be severely limited and even very short periods of work could result in heat casualties.

Warning. This table is intended as a guide only.

APPENDIX P

MOPP Levels & Work Schedule(maximum).

TEMPERATURE RANGES

		-70F -21C	70-79F 21-26C	80-89F 27-32C	90+F +33C
MOPP Level	Work Rate				
1	LOW	a	a	a	a
1	MODERATE	a	a	a	100
1	HEAVY	a	a	110	50
2	LOW	a	a	a	a
2	MODERATE	a	a	a	65
2	HEAVY	a	170	65	45
3	LOW	a	a	a	a
3	MODERATE	a	a	140	55
3	HEAVY	200	95	55	50
4	LOW	a	a	a	80
4	MODERATE	a	115	65	40
4	HEAVY	60	50	40	30

a. Under these conditions, fatigue caused by exertion will probably be the limiting consideration rather than body heat buildup.

Warning. This table is intended as a guide only.

Note. Well trained, acclimated, physically fit personnel will require shorter less frequent rest periods.

APPENDIX P

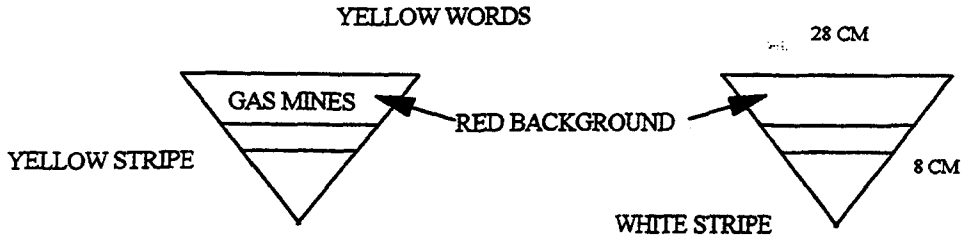
US AND NATO MARKERS.

COLORS OF US AND NATO MARKING

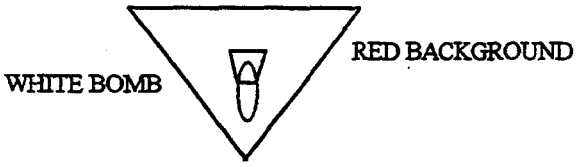
DANGER	PRIMARY COLOR	SECONDARY COLORS MARKINGS/INSCRIPTION
RADIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION	WHITE	NONE/BLACK
BIOLOGICAL CONTAMINATION	BLUE	NONE/RED
CHEMICAL CONTAMINATION	YELLOW	NONE/RED
CHEMICAL MINEFIELDS (OR BARRIERS)	RED	YELLOW STRIPE/YELLOW
MINEFIELDS (OR BARRIERS)	RED	NONE/WHITE
OTHER THAN CHEMICAL		
BOOBY TRAPPED AREA	RED	WHITE STRIPE/NONE
UNEXPLODED MUNITION	RED	WHITE BOMB/NONES

APPENDIX P

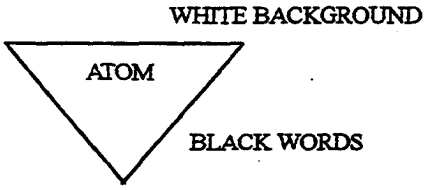
US AND NATO MARKERS



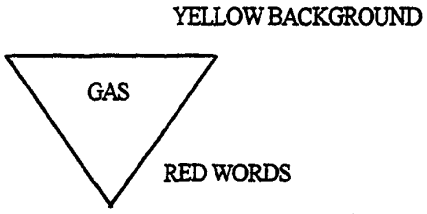
Chemical Munitions Booby Traps



Unexploded Munitions

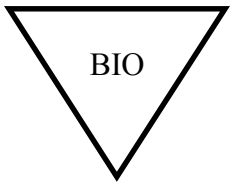


Radiological



Chemical

Blue Background
Red Words



Biological

APPENDIX Q

CONVOY OPERTIONS

ROAD MOVEMENT TABLE to OPORD 10-3-10 Armor), Ref: Map, series M501, sheet NM32-5 (FRANKFURT AM MAIN), edition 2-AMS, 1:250,000
Time Zone Used Throughout the order: Alpha

General Date:

1. Speed: 24 kmph.
2. Rate of March: 20 kmph.
3. Open Column.
4. Traffic Density: 15 vpk.
5. Time Gaps: 2 min between MU.
6. Halts: SOP.
7. Route: Annex A, Strip Map.
8. From: FRIEDBURG MA812610.
9. To: KLEINLUDER NB385005.
10. Main Routes to SP: Hy 3 to Hy 275.
11. Critical Points
    a. Start Point: RJ275 at MA839754(FAUERBACH).
    b. Release Point: RJ254 at NB383038.
    c. Other critical points:
    (1) RJ257 and 275 at MA989780 (RANSADT).
    (2) RJ275 and 254 at NB278102 (LAUTERBACH).
    d. Route classification 6m x 60.
12. Main Routes from RP: Un-numbered secondary routes.

March Unit No.	Date	Unit	No. Of Veh	Load Class Hv Veh	Critical Points (Ref)	Due (hr)	Clear (hr)	Remarks
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)	(g)	(h)	(i)
Qtr Party	4 Aug	S1,Comm Plt, HHC XO, Co A, B, C, CI III and IV, tks, aid/ evac veh	7	14				Move by Infiltration
Recon Party	4 Aug	Scout Plt	10	11				Move by Infiltration
MU1	4 Aug	Co A 3X 3X 3X	25 18 60 12	50 .9 3.0 .6	SP CP 1 CP 2 RP	0700 0754 1054 1130		1-1/4 ton qtr pty, Sup rk to Bn tns Atch: 2 CI III trks, 1 aid/evac veh. PST: 6 min

APPENDIX Q

CONVOY BRIEFING.

1. Introduction and location of all key personnel. Key personnel consists of the following:

a. Advance officer/NCO.

b. Advance party.

c. Pace setter.

d. Trail officer.

e. Trail maintenance officer/NCO.

f. Other personnel as required (security element commander, convoy commander, assistant commander and reconnaissance elements). Time permitting, a terrain model will be prepared.

2. Maps, supplemented if necessary by strip maps marked with route, halt points, distance tick marks, etc…

3. Destination.

4. Road and weather conditions and forecast covering time of convoy.

5. Route.

6. Rate of march and intervals.

7. Radio frequencies and signals.

8. Planned halts.

9. Final brief on breakdowns, ambush/air attack, procedures to follow if a break in convoy develops, mines and boobytraps.

10. Other special instructions.

11. Control measures, to include:

a. Distance, time, rate of movements, etc…, are controlled as follows:

b. Critical points such as road junctions and intersections.

c. Location of planned halts.

VEHICLE INSPECTION CHECKLIST.

1. Performs driver maintenance daily during movement.

2. Checks for fuel and oil leaks.

3. Checks vehicle waterproofing.

4. Inspects vehicle batteries.

5. Inspects tie down devices to see that vehicles are secured.

6. Inspects for deterioration due to dampness and seawater.

7. Inspects tires.

8. Ensures vehicle engines are started daily.

9. Schedules training for review of surf driving and cold/hot weather.

10. Inspects loads to guard against pilferage and to determine that lashing and fittings are properly secured.

11. Ensures ring mounts are fully functional and complete.

12. Establishes a schedule for vehicle preparation and inspection prior to movement ashore.

13. Installs items of special equipment required by operations plans; e.g., tire chains, ring mounts, shields, and fording gear.

14. Ensures crew served weapons are cleaned, inspected, and installed.

15. Ensures ammunition is allocated for crew served weapons.

PREPARE FOR A MOTOR MARCH.

1. Utilize a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the order

2. Allow an opportunity for questions and comments.

3. Brief all drivers prior to the movement on the situation; actions to be take at the various critical points, and the location of key leaders.

4. Ensure a thorough understanding of critical signals.

5. Ensure that drivers are trained for driving under any special road conditions required (ice, snow, sand, mud, fording, and difficult terrain) and for vehicle recovery in sand, mud, and snow.

6. Stage according to the march order.

7. Maintain dispersion and irregularity of formation.

8. Ensure that the time spent in the staging area is minimal.

9. Establish local security to include air defense.

10. Rehearse major actions with all units and personnel participating (immediate action drills, nighttime movement, actions at danger areas, and air defense skills).

11. Conduct a CPX or a staff rehearsal.

12. Issue ammunition and special equipment and conducts maintenance checks, LTI's, and pre-operation checks on required equipment and vehicles.

13. Provide time for final maintenance. No mechanically defective vehicle will be sent.

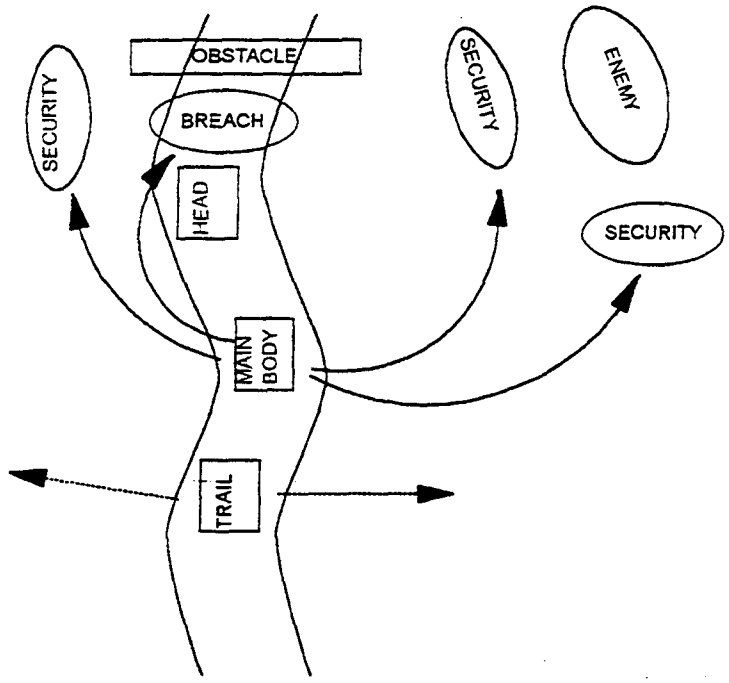
14. Conduct final inspection for all personnel and equipment to ensure that prescribed items are available, serviceable, and carried correctly, and that all personnel understand all required aspects of the mission.

15. Conduct final brief for key leaders to include a ZIPPO brief for pilots if helicopters are involved in the movement.

APPENDIX Q

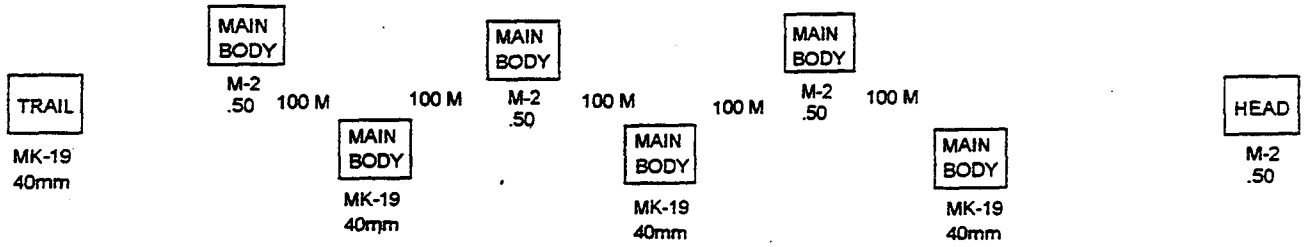
IMMEDIATE ACTION DRILLS AND CONVOY OPERATIONS.

BLOCKED AMBUSH

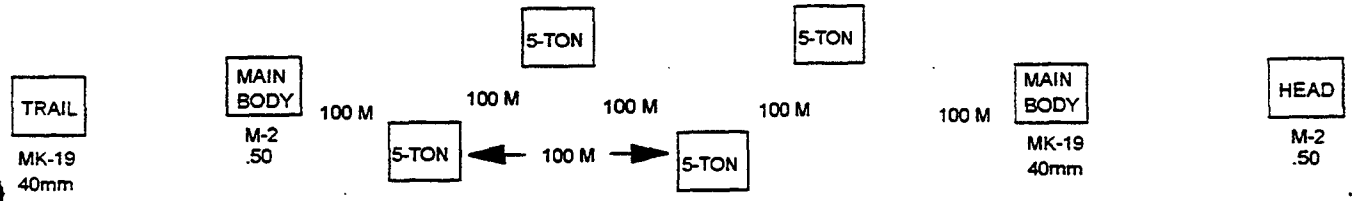


1. HEAD HALTS UNDER FIRE AND RETURNS FIRE AT THE RAPID RATE (TAKES COVER).
2. OTHER ELEMENTS FIRE AT RAPID RATE TO SUPPRESS THE ENEMY (IF IN SIGHT)
3. COLUMN EXECUTES HERRINGBONE.
4. SECURITY ELEMENT DEPLOYS TO SECURE THE BREACH SITE AND ENGAGE THE ENEMY.
5. BREACH TEAM DEPLOYS AND CLEARS BREACH.
6. ENEMY DESTROYED OR SECURITY UNIT DISENGAGES AND REJOINS CONVOY.
7. CONVOY CONTINUES MISSION.

STANDARD MP CONVOY

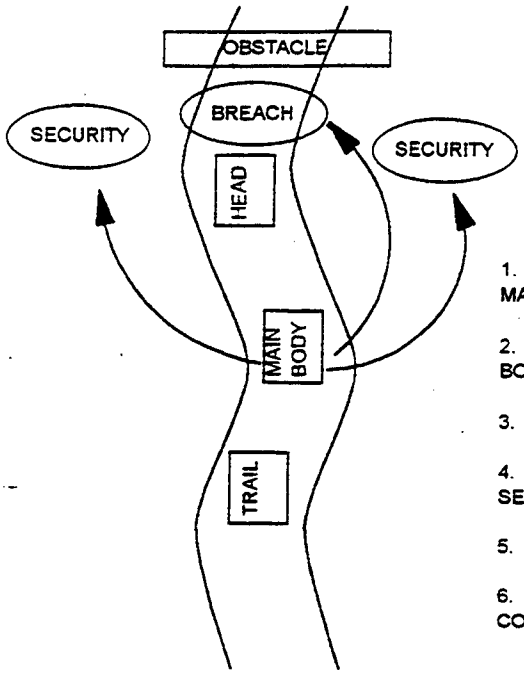


MP ESCORTED CONVOY



APPENDIX Q

OBSTACLE BREACH



1. HEAD HALTS AND CONTACTS MAIN BODY.

2. CONVOY HALTS IN HERRING-BONE.

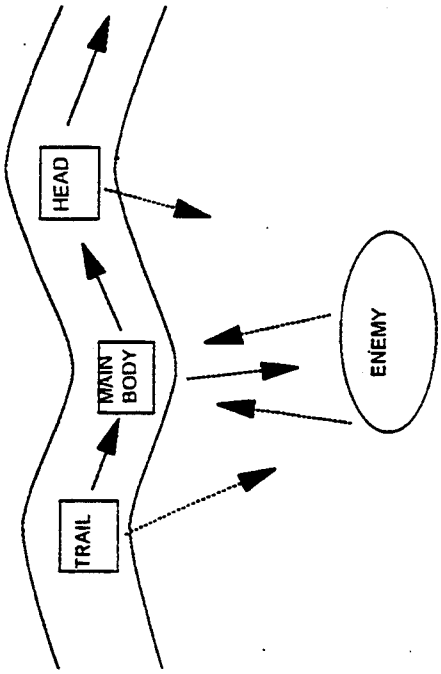
3. SECURITY ELEMENT DEPLOYS

4. BREACH TEAM DEPLOYS ONCE SECURITY IS ESTABLISHED

5. BREACH TEAM CLEARS BREACH

6. MARINES MOUNT, CONVOY CONTINUES

UNBLOCKED AMBUSH



1. CONVOY ELEMENT RECEIVES FIRE.

2. ALL ELEMENTS RETURN FIRE AT THE RAPID RATE.

3. ENGAGED ELEMENTS ACCELERATE TO MOVE OUT OF THE KILL ZONE.

4. LEAST/NON ENGAGED UNITS CONTINUE TO RETURN FIRE UNTIL ENGAGED UNIT HAS EXITED THE KILL ZONE.

4. IF POSSIBLE, TRAIL ELEMENTS BYPASS THE KILL ZONE TO REJOIN CONVOY.

APPENDIX R

VEHICLE MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES.

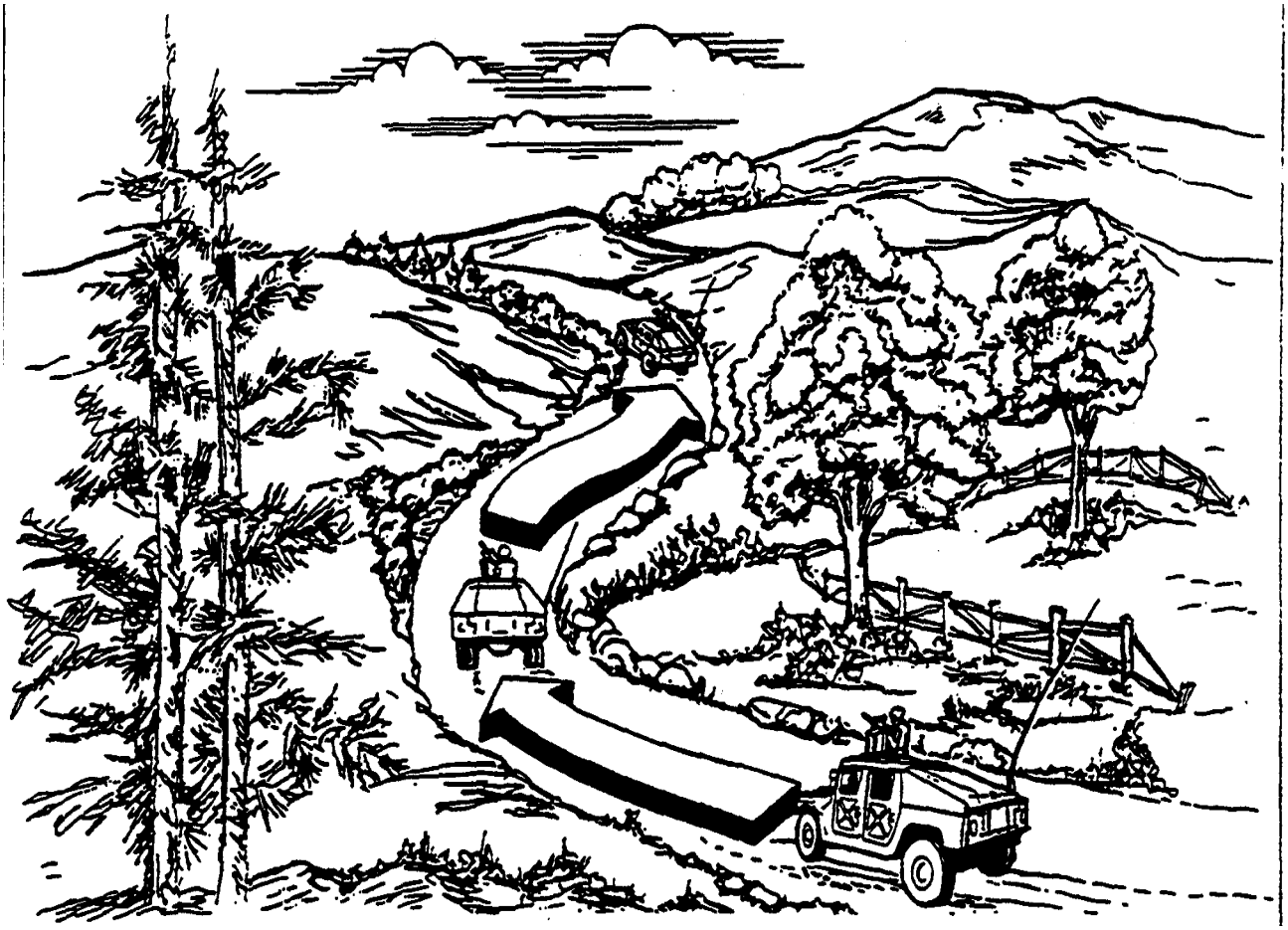
LIKELIHOOD OF CONTACT	MOVEMENT TECHNIQUE
• Not Likely	• Traveling
• Possible	• Traveling Overwatch
• Expected	• Bounding Overwatch

Movement techniques and likelihood of contact.

Lead and Trail elements move together -Movement is fast but not secure

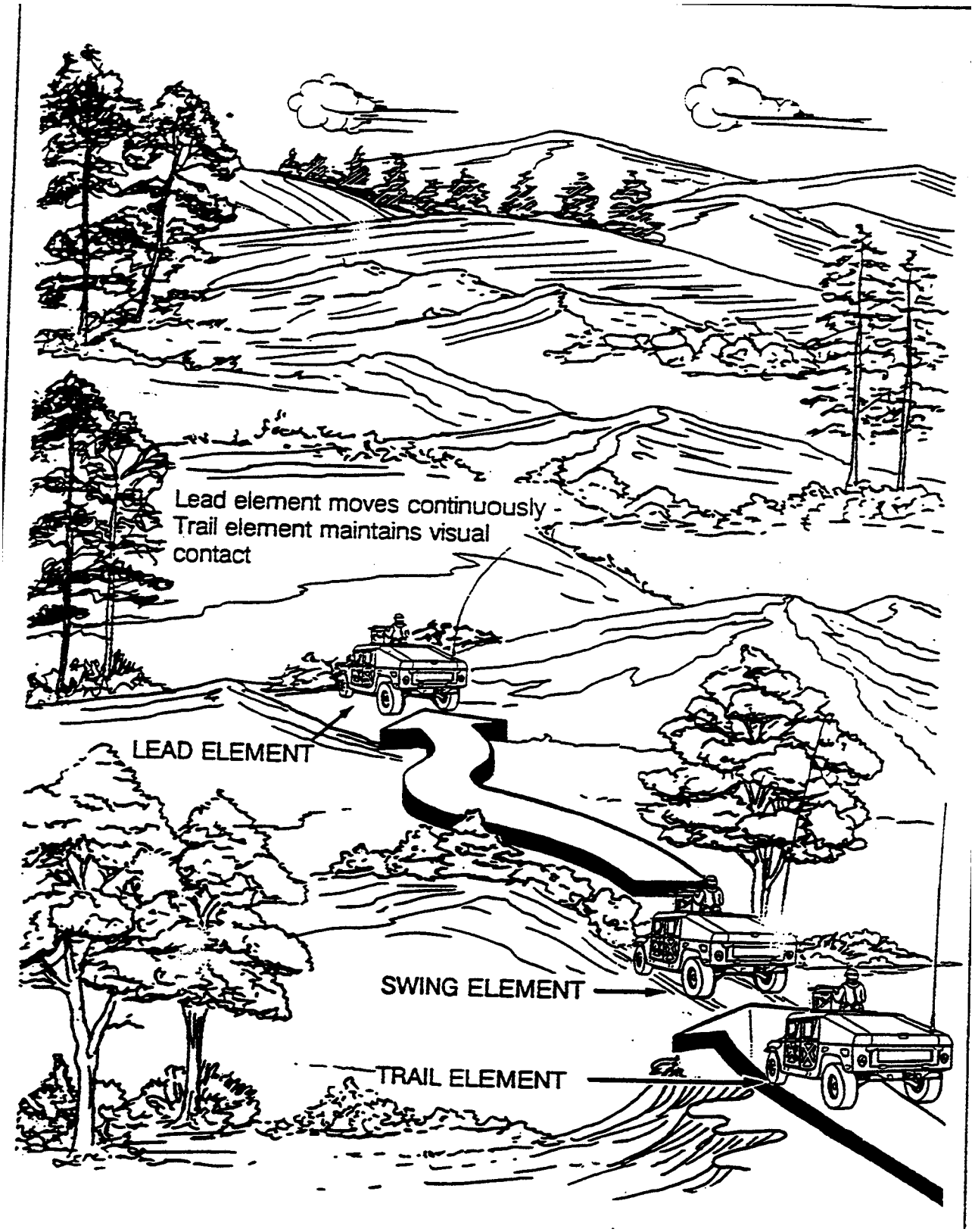
Speed is important - Vehicles maintain a distance of about 50 meters

Traveling technique.



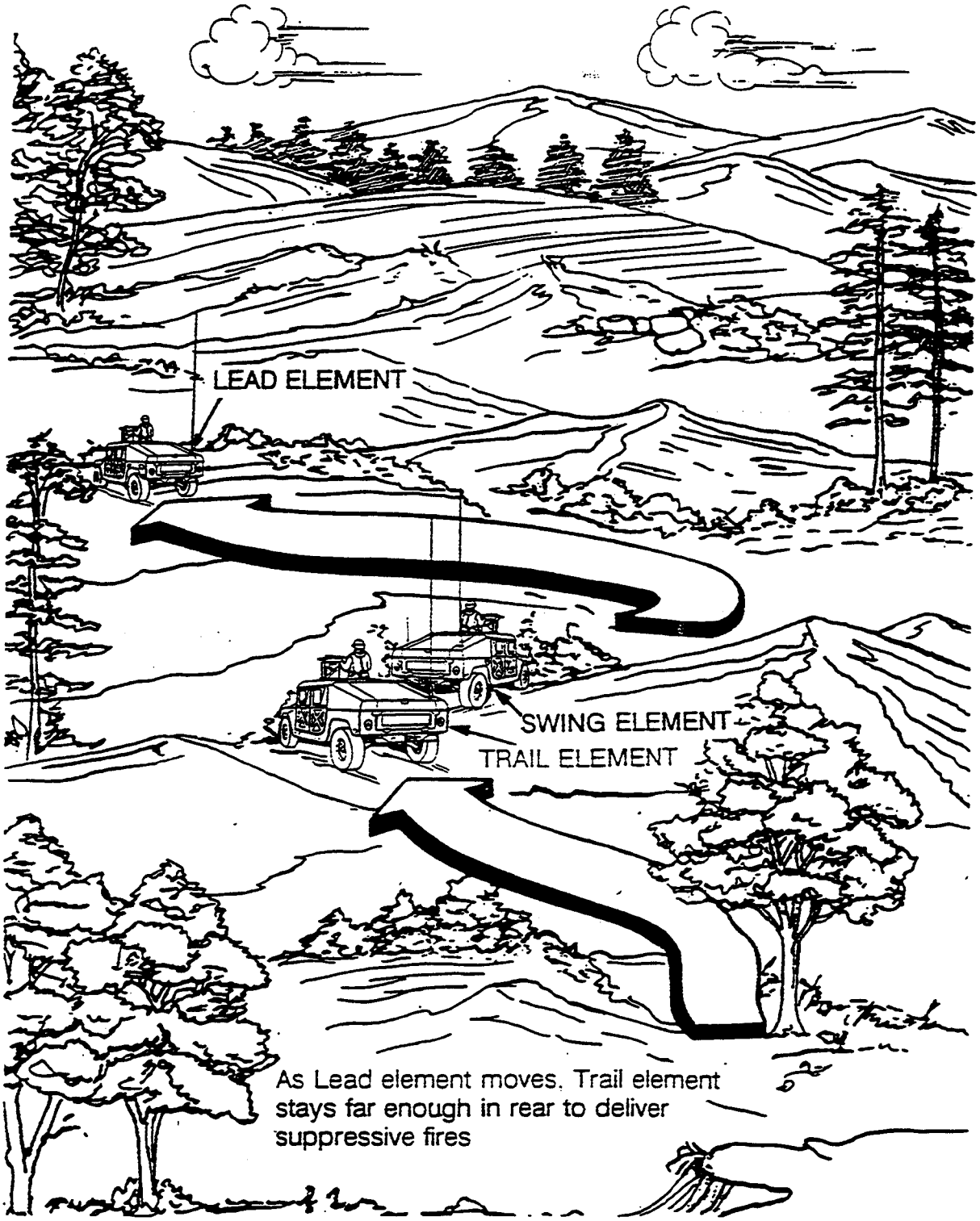
APPENDIX R

Three-team traveling overwatch technique (step 1).



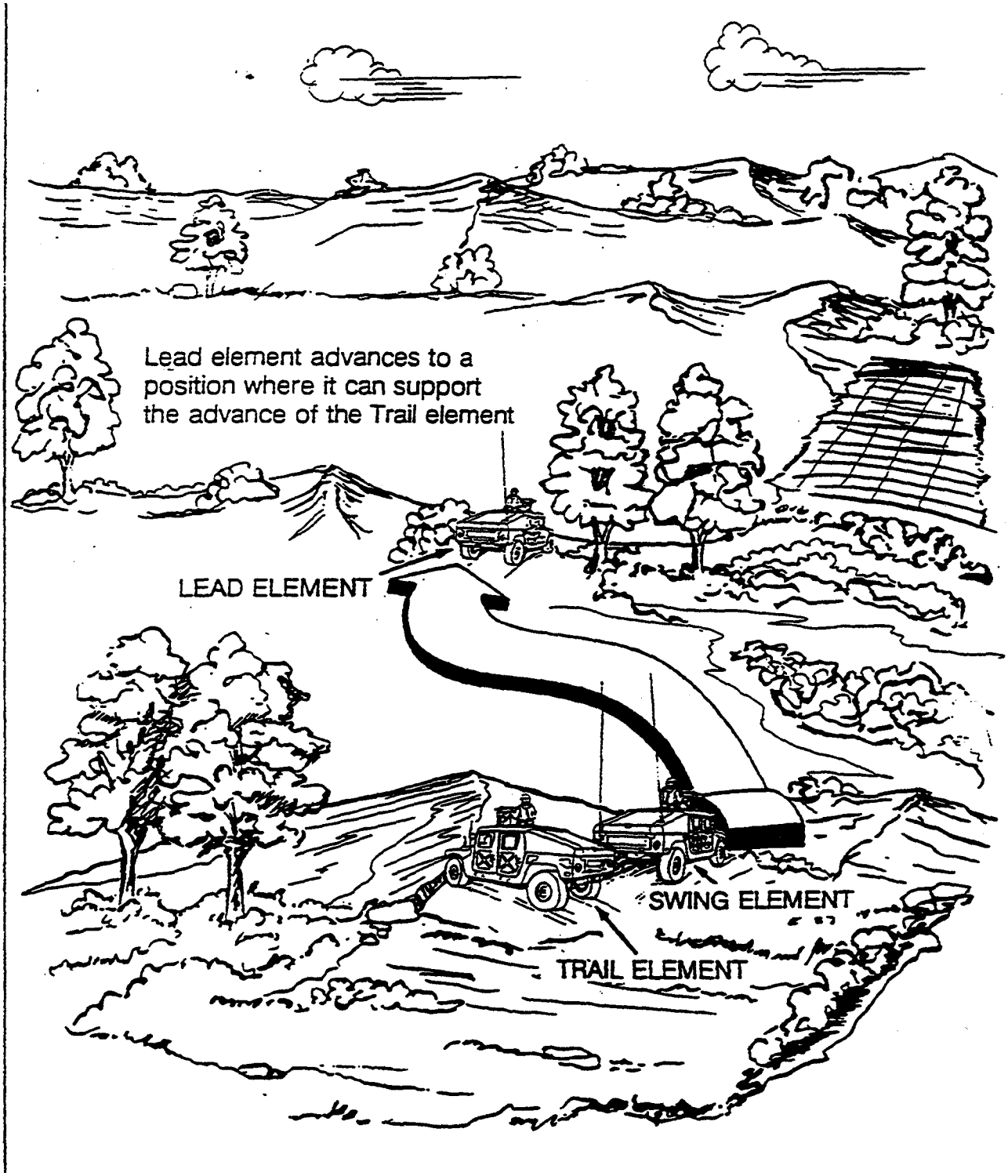
APPENDIX R

Three-team traveling overwatch technique (step 2).



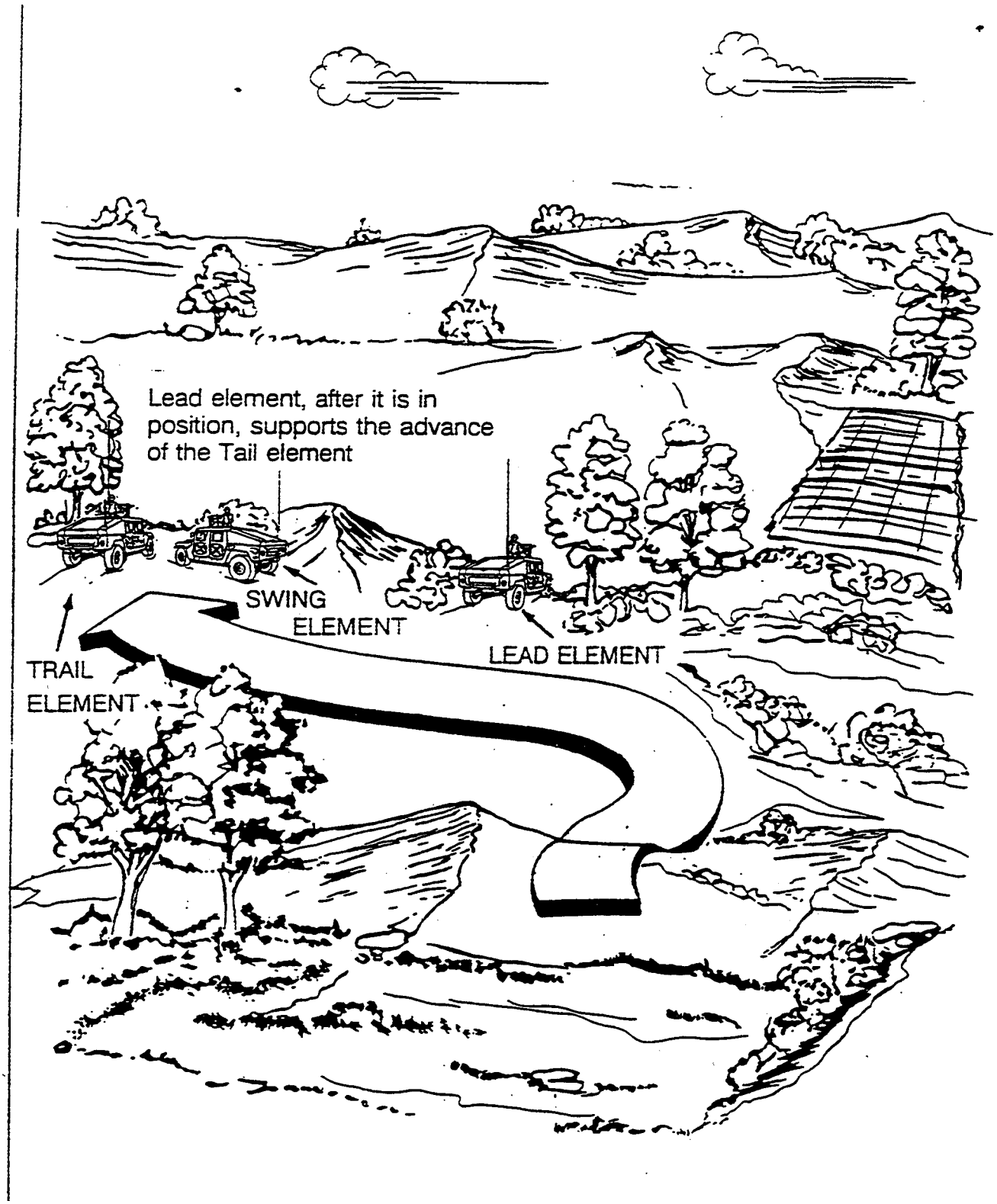
APPENDIX R

Three-team bounding overwatch technique (step 1).



APPENDIX R

Three-team bounding overwatch technique (step 2).



APPENDIX R

Three-team bounding overwatch technique (step 3).

APPENDIX S

CASE CONTROL NUMBERS.

7H ACCIDENTAL DEATH
11X ACCIDENTAL SHOOTING
8X ADULTERY
11A AFFRAY
7G AGGRAVATED ASSAULT
12B AIRCRAFT ACCIDENTS
10X ALARM ACTIVATION
4K ALTERATION OF CERTIFICATES OF TRAINING COURSE COMPLETION
4K ALTERATION OF OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS (US GOVERNMENT)
4K ALTERATION OF PERSONNEL PERFORMANCE REPORTS (US GOVERNMENT)
13B ANIMAL BITES
13X ANIMAL NEGLECT
6A ARSON
7G ASSAULT
7G ASSAULT WITH THE INTENT TO COMMIT MURDER
8F ASSAULT WITH THE INTENT TO COMMIT RAPE
8G ASSAULT WITH THE INTENT TO COMMIT SODOMY
8B ASSAULT WITH THE INTENT TO COMMIT SODOMY WITH A CHILD
8B ATTEMPTED CARNAL KNOWLEDGE WITH A CHILD
7G ATTEMPTED MURDER
8B ATTEMPTED RAPE OF A CHILD
7X ATTEMPTED SUICIDE
6V AUTO THEFT NON GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
6S AUTO THEFT GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
10B BEING IN AN UNAUTHORIZED RESTRICTED AREA
6C BLACK-MARKET
7B BOMB THREAT
4H BRIBERY
4E BRIBERY (PAY AND ALLOWANCE)
6N BURGLARY
8B CARNAL KNOWLEDGE WITH A CHILD
7L CHILD ABUSE
7L CHILD NEGLECT
7L CHILD MALTREATMENT
8B CHILD PORNOGRAPHY
8B CHILD SEX ABUSE
9X COMMAND AUTHORIZED SEARCH
8B COMMUNICATING OF OBSCENITIES TOWARD A CHILD
11G COMMUNICATING A THREAT
11E CONCEALED WEAPON
7H CONSPIRACY TO COMMIT MURDER
11X CONTEMPT ORDER

APPENDIX S

6G COUNTERFEITING
4B CREDIT CARD CRIME
12A CRIME PREVENTION SURVEY
6M CUSTOMS
6L DAMAGE OF MAIL FACILITIES
6U DAMAGE TO GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6U DAMAGE TO PERSONAL PROPERTY
6U DAMAGE TO PRIVATE PROPERTY
7H DEATH
11B DESERTER
11A DOMESTIC DISTURBANCE
11A DOMESTIC VIOLENCE
11A DISORDERLY CONDUCT
11A DRUNK AND DISORDERLY
11X DRIVING ON BASE REVOCATION
11X DRIVING ON STATE REVOCATION
11X DRIVING ON BASE SUSPENSION
11X DRIVING ON STATE SUSPENSION
11D DRIVING UNDER THE INFLUENCE
11D DRIVING WHILE INTOXICATED
7H EXCUSABLE HOMICIDE
7E EXTORTION
13X ENDANGER SPECIES
11X FAILURE TO COMPLY
11A FAILURE TO DISBURSE
4X FAILURE TO PAY JUST DEBT
4B FALSE CLAIMS (PAY AND ALLOWANCE)
7P FALSE OFFICIAL STATEMENT
4B FALSE REIMBURSEMENT VOUCHER (PAY AND ALLOWANCE)
4E FALSE STATEMENT (PAY AND ALLOWANCE)
7P FALSE SWEARING
4F FALSIFICATION OF PERSONNEL RECORDS
7T FATAL TRAFFIC ACCIDENT
10A FIRES
7T FLEEING THE SCENE OF A TRAFFIC ACCIDENT
6X FOUND ORDNANCE
9G FORENSIC EXAMINATION
4K FORGERY OF CHECKS (US GOVERNMENT) AND PERSONAL
4K FORGERY OF CREDIT CARD (PERSONAL)
4K FORGERY OF LETTERS (US GOVERNMENT)
4K FORGERY OF MONEY ORDERS (US GOVERNMENT)
4K FORGERY OF ORDERS FOR DELIVERY OF MONEY OR GOODS (US GOVERNMENT)
4K FORGERY OF PROPERTY RECORDS (US GOVERNMENT)
4K FORGERY OF RECEIPTS (US GOVERNMENT)
8X FRATERNIZATION
4X FRAUD USE ATM CARD

APPENDIX S

4T FRAUD USE OF CHAMPUS (US GOVERNMENT)
4T FRAUD USE OF COMMERCIAL TELEPHONE SERVICE (US GOVERNMENT)
4X FRAUD USE OF CREDIT CARD
4T FRAUD USE OF GASOLINE CREDIT CARD (US GOVERNMENT)
4T FRAUD USE OF SERVMART CHARGES (US GOVERNMENT)
4K FRAUD USE TELEPHONE CALLING CARD
4G FRAUD ADMIN OF US PROPERTY
4F FRAUDULENT ADVANCEMENT
4F FRAUDULENT APPOINTMENT
4F FRAUDULENT DISCHARGE
4G FRAUD DISPOSAL OF US PROPERTY
4F FRAUDULENT ENLISTMENT
4F FRAUDULENT EXAMINATION
4X FRAUDULENT INSURANCE
4G FRAUD PROCUR OF US PROPERTY
4F FRAUDULENT SEPARATION
4X FRAUD USE OF BASE REGISTRATION (VISITOR PASS)
4X FRAUDULENT USE OF BASE REGISTRATION (DODDECAL)
4X FRAUDULENT USE OF DRIVERS LICENSE
4X FRAUDULENT USE OF STATE REGISTRATION
11G HARASSING PHONE CALLS
7T HIT AND RUN TRAFFIC ACCIDENT
7H HOMICIDE
8G HOMOSEXUAL ACTS
6N HOUSEBREAKING
10A HOUSE FIRE
6S ILLEGAL POSSESSION OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6S ILLEGAL SALE OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
11C IMPERSONATIONS
4E IMPROPER DISBURSEMENT OF GOVERNMENT FUNDS (PAY AND ALLOWANCE)
8B INCEST WITH A CHILD
8B INDECENT ACTS WITH A CHILD
8D INDECENT ASSAULT
8B INDECENT ASSAULT WITH A CHILD
8X INDECENT EXPOSURE
8B INDECENT EXPOSURE WITH A CHILD
12B INDUSTRIAL ACCIDENTS
12A INDUSTRIAL SECURITY SURVEYS
6U INJURY REAL/PERSONAL PROPER
7N INTRODUCTION OF HABIT FORMING DRUGS
7N INTRODUCTION OF MARIJUANA
7N INTRODUCTION OF NARCOTICS
7N INTRODUCTION OF RESTRICTED DRUGS
7H INVOLUNTARY MANSLAUGHTER
7K KIDNAPPING

APPENDIX S

6R LARCENY OF AMMUNITION (US GOVERNMENT)
6R LARCENY OF EXPLOSIVES AND OTHER DESTRUCTIVE DEVICES (US GOVERNMENT)
6R LARCENY OF FIREARMS (US GOVERNMENT)
6S LARCENY OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6T LARCENY OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
6V LARCENY OF NON-GOVERNMENT VEHICLE
6S LARCENY OF DECAL
8D LASCIVIOUS LIBERTIES WITH AN ADULT
8D LEWD ASSAULT
13A LICENSING VIOLATION (WILDLIFE CONSERVATION)
6U LOSS OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6U LOSS OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
6L LOSS OF POSTAL
13C LOST ANIMALS
11F LOST PERSON
7C MAGISTRATES ORDER
6X MALICIOUS MISCHIEF (GOVERNMENT)
6X MALICIOUS MISCHIEF (PERSONAL)
11H MALINGERING (NOT AMOUNTING TO ATTEMPTED SUICIDE)
12B MEDICAL EMERGENCY
13C MISSING ANIMALS
11F MISSING PERSON
7H MURDER
7N NARCOTICS
7H NATURAL DEATH
12B NATURAL DISASTERS
7H NEGLIGENT HOMICIDE
11A NEIGHBOR DISPUTE
11X NO INSURANCE
11X NO OPERATORS LICENSE
11G OBSCENE PHONE CALLS
8B OBSCENE PHONE CALL WITH A CHILD
11X OBSTRUCTING A POLICE OFFICER
10X OFF LIMITS ESTABLISHMENTS
7C ORDER FOR ARREST
8X PANDERING
7P PERJURY
12A PHYSICAL SECURITY INSPECTIONS & SURVEYS
11X PERSONAL NON GRATA
13A POACHING
9B POLYGRAPH
7N POSSESSION OF HABIT FORMING DRUGS
7N POSSESSION OF MARIJUANA
7N POSSESSION OF NARCOTICS
7N POSSESSION OF RESTRICTED DRUGS
6L POSTAL

APPENDIX S

8X PROSTITUTION
9A PROTECTIVE SERVICES
11G PROVOKING SPEECHES AND GESTURES
11X PROWLER
12A PHYSICAL SECURITY SURVEYS
8F RAPE
8B RAPE OF A CHILD
6U RECKLESS DESTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6U RECKLESS DESTRUCTION OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
11X RECKLESS DRIVING
11X RESISTING A POLICE OFFICER
11B RETURNED TO MILITARY CONTROL
6L RIFLING OF POSTAL
7R ROBBERY
11F RUN AWAY OR MISSING ADULT/CHILD
8D SEXUAL ASSAULT/ABUSE/ADULT
8B SEXUAL ASSAULT/ABUSE/CHILD
6S SHOPLIFTING OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6T SHOPLIFTING OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
7G SIMPLE ASSAULT
8G SODOMY
8B SODOMY WITH A CHILD
11X SOLICITATION
7H SOLICITATION TO COMMIT MURDER
8B SOLICITATION TO ENGAGE IN A SEX ACT WITH A CHILD
9X SPECIAL INQUIRY
11X SPEEDING
7P SUBORNATION OF PERJURY
7H SUICIDE/NOT ATTEMPTED
7X SUICIDE GESTURES
6S THEFT OF GOVERNMENT FROM NON-APPROPRIATED FUND ACTIVITIES
6V THEFT OF MOTOR VEHICLE (PERSONAL)
6T THEFT OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
6L THEFT OF POSTAL
14A TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - COLLISION WITH PEDESTRIAN
14B TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - COLLISION WITH PEDACYCLIST
7T TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - HIT AND RUN
14C TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - SINGLE MOTOR VEHICLE COLLISION WITH A FIXED OBJECT
7T TRAFFIC ACCIDENT INVOLVING DEATH (WHEN NEGLIGENCE IS NOT ATTRIBUTED TO ANY LIVING PERSON)
7H DEATH - USED FOR INVESTIGATIONS INVOLVING HOMICIDE, TO INCLUDE VOLUNTARY MANSLAUGHTER & INVOLUNTARY MANSLAUGHTER
14D TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - MULTIPLE MOTOR VEHICLE COLLISION

APPENDIX S

14E TRAFFIC ACCIDENT – SINGLE MOTORCYCLE COLLISION
14F TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - MULTIPLE MOTORCYCLE COLLISION
14G TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - NON-COLLISION
14C TRAFFIC ACCIDENT - SINGLE WITH ANIMAL
7X TRAINING ACCIDENTS
7N TRANSFER OF HABIT FORMING DRUGS
7N TRANSFER OF MARIJUANA
7N TRANSFER OF NARCOTICS
7N TRANSFER OF RESTRICTED DRUGS
13X TREES (CUTTING DOWN)
10B TRESPASSING
7L UNATTENDED CHILD
7H UNATTENDED DEATH
11B UNAUTHORIZED ABSENCE
7N UNAUTHORIZED PURCHASE OF HABIT FORMING DRUGS
7N UNAUTHORIZED PURCHASE OF MARIJUANA
7N UNAUTHORIZED PURCHASE OF NARCOTICS
7N UNAUTHORIZED PURCHASE OF RESTRICTED DRUGS
7N UNAUTHORIZED USE OF CREDIT CARD (PERSONAL)
4T UNAUTHORIZED USE OF A CREDIT CARD (GOVERNMENT)
4X UNAUTHORIZED USE OF A CREDIT CARD (PERSONAL)
11X UNDERAGE ALCOHOL CONSUMPTION
6N UNLAWFUL ENTRY WITH A DWELLING
10B UNLAWFUL ENTRY WITH A NON-DWELLING
11E UNLAWFUL POSSESSION OF WEAPON
10B UNSECURE PROPERTY (TRESPASSING)
7N USE OF HABIT FORMING DRUGS
7N USE OF MARIJUANA
7N USE OF NARCOTICS
7N USE OF RESTRICTED DRUGS
7H VOLUNTARY MANSLAUGHTER
8B VOYEURISM WITH A CHILD
7C WARRANT FOR ARREST/FAILURE TO APPEAR/MAGISTRATES ORDER
11E WEAPONS
6U WILLFUL DESTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6U WILLFUL DESTRUCTION OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
4X WORTHLESS CHECK
6L WRONGFUL DELAY OF POSTAL
6L WRONGFUL DELIVERY OF POSTAL
6U WRONGFUL DESTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY
6U WRONGFUL DESTRUCTION OF PERSONAL PROPERTY
6U WRONGFUL DESTRUCTION (VENDING (MACHINES)
10B WRONGFUL ENTRY INTO AN AREA
11E WRONGFUL POSSESSION OF PYROTECHNICS AND EXPLOSIVE DEVICES
6L WRONGFUL USE OF POSTAL

APPENDIX S

MILITARY POLICE FORMS.

Incident Complaint Form (OPNAV 5527/1) – Document incidents and complaints.

Traffic Accident Report (OPNAV 5527/1A) - Supplemental report to an ICR for traffic accidents.

Voluntary Statement Form (OPNAV 5527/2) - Statement of witness.

Military Suspect's Acknowledgment and Waiver of Rights (OPNAV 5527/3) - Documents advisement of military suspects rights.

Civilian Suspect's Acknowledgment and Waiver of Rights Form (OPNAV 5527/4) - Documents advisement of civilian suspects rights.

Telephonic Threat Complaint (OPNAV 5527/8) – Document telephonic threats i.e., bomb threats, nuisance calls.

Desk Journal (OPNAV 5527/19) - Chronological listing of MP activities.

Field Interview Card (5527/21) - Documents MP contact with suspicious person(s).

Evidence Custody Document (OPNAV 5527/22) - Records acquisition, chain of custody, and disposition of items seized by MPs.

DD Form 629 Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person - Documents the release of a detained person or prisoner.

DD Form 1920 Alcohol Influence Report - Documents the information on a person under the influence of alcohol.

Statement of Force/Use of Detention Space - Documents the use of force, medical treatment, as a result of force and/or prior/during detention, a record of detention, and inspection record.

Criminal Investigation Division Forms

Command Authorization for Search and Seizure (OPNAV 5527/9) - CO signs form granting permission to search.

Affidavit for Search Authorization (OPNAV 5527/10) – Sworn statement of facts for search authorization.

APPENDIX S

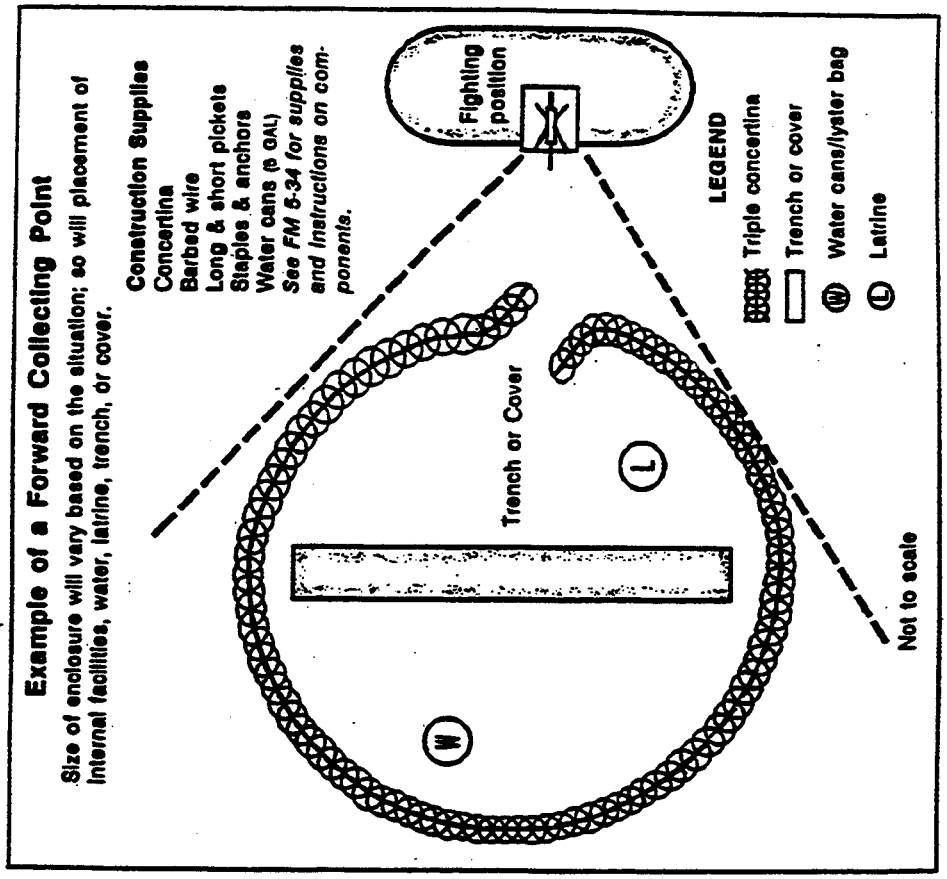
Permissive Authorization for Search and Seizure (OPNAV 5527/16)- Documents a person(s) voluntary consent to search.

Authority to Release Medical Information and Record (OPNAV 5527/14) - Documents permission to obtain said information.

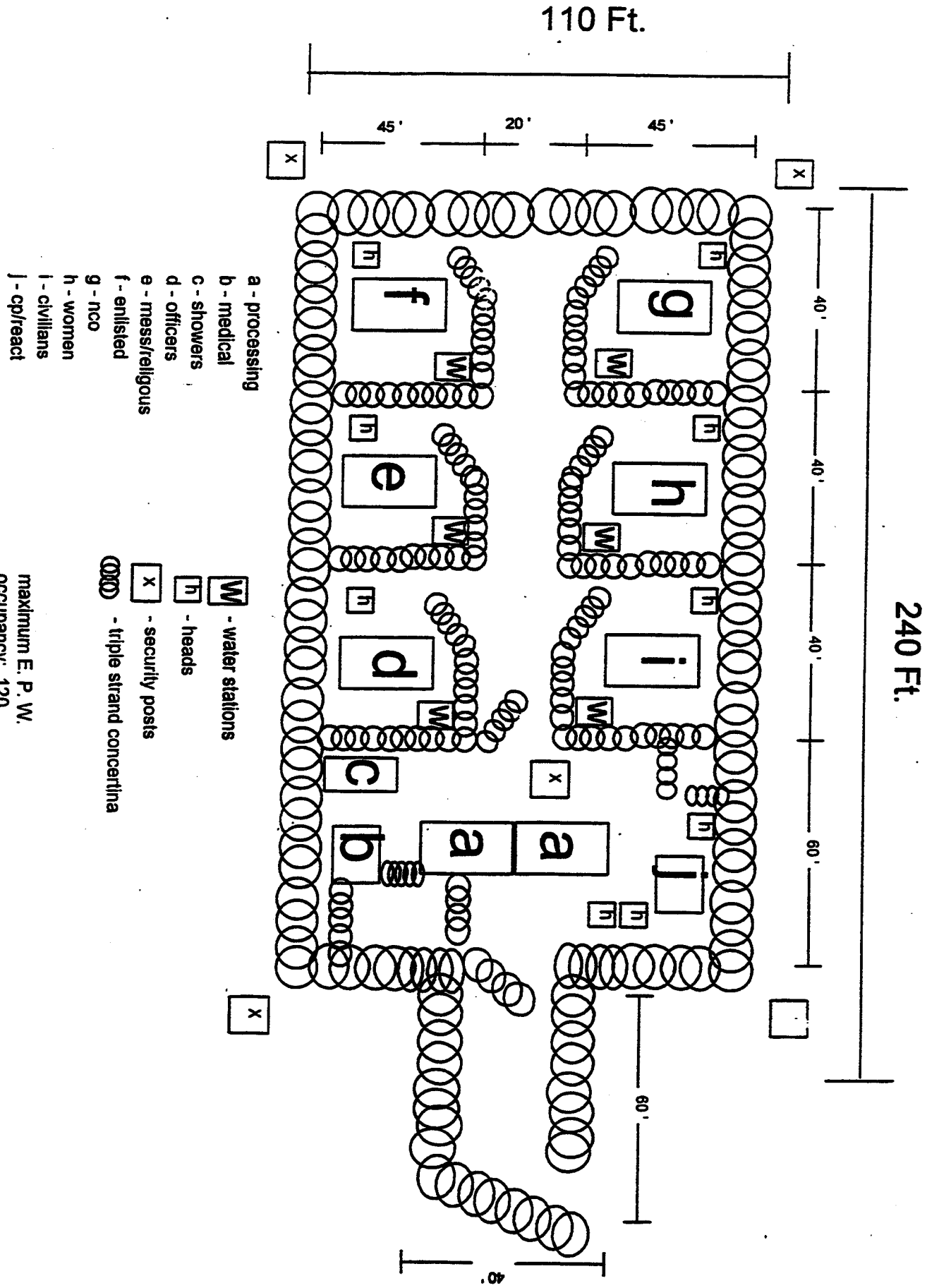
Consumer Consent and Authorization for Access to Financial Information (OPNAV5527/13) - Used to obtain access to financial information.

APPENDIX T

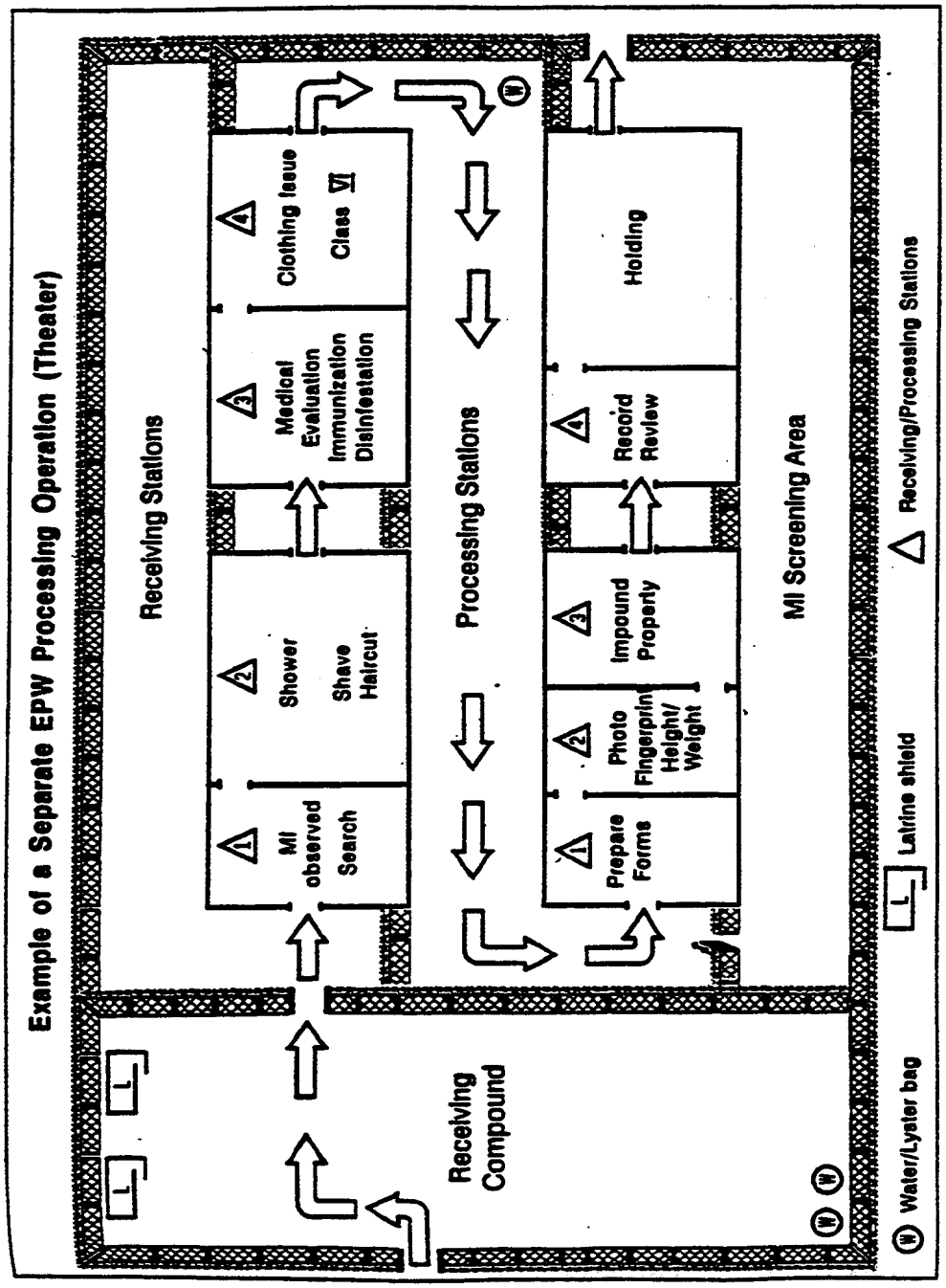
EXAMPLE OF COLLECTION POINTS AND HOLDING FACILITIES.



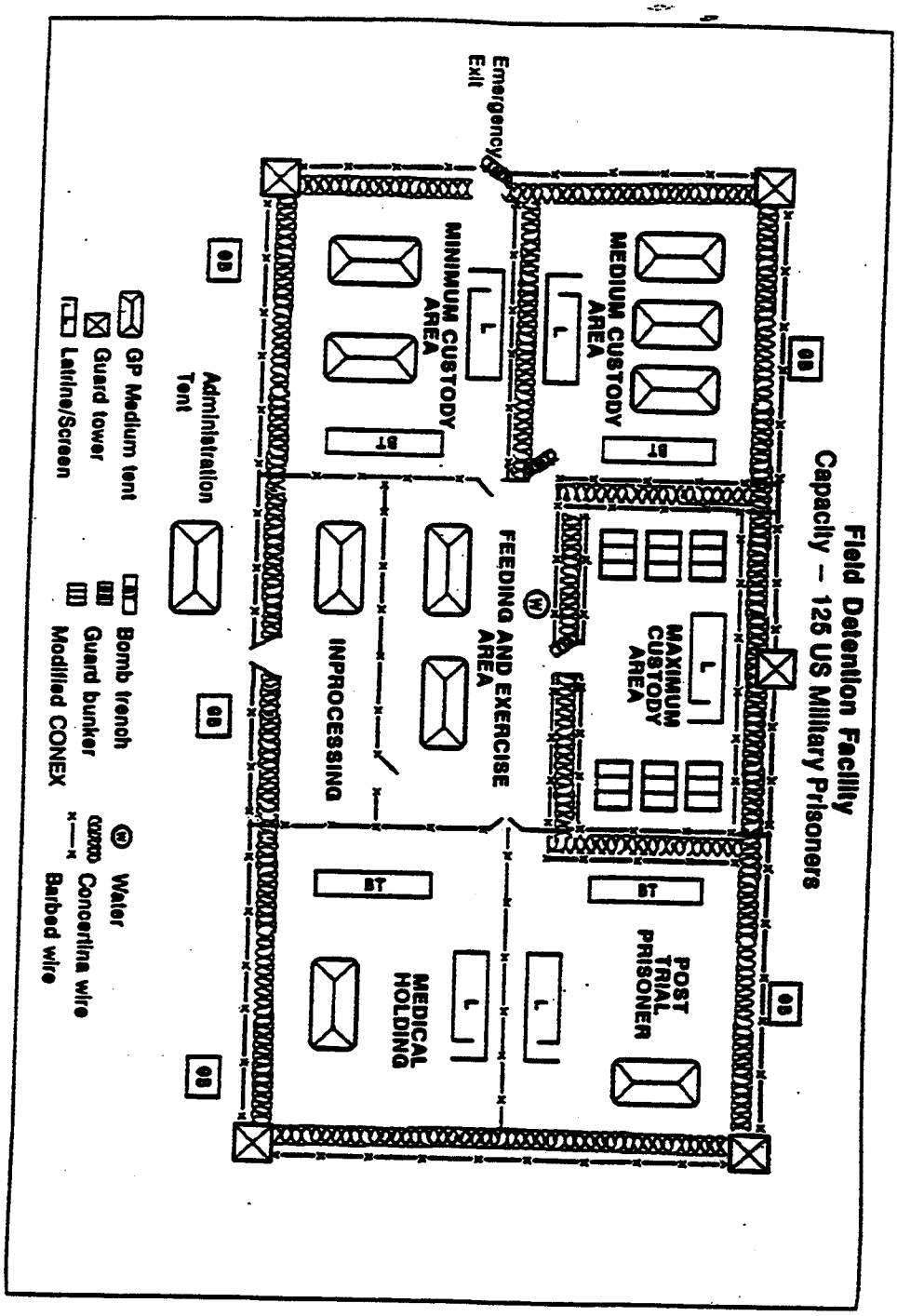
APPENDIX T


110 Ft.
45'
20'
45'
240 Ft.
40'
40'
40'
60'
60'
40'
a - processing
b - medical
c - showers
d - officers
e - mess/religous
f - enlisted
g - nco
h - women
i - civilians
j - cp/react
W - water stations
h - heads
x - security posts
- triple strand concertina
maximum E. P. W.
occupancy: 120

APPENDIX T


Example of a Separate EPW Processing Operation (Theater)
Receiving Stations
1
MI observed Search
2
Shower
Shave Haircut
3
Medical Evaluation Immunization Disinfestation
4
Clothing Issue
Class VI
Processing Stations
1
Prepare Forms
2
Photo Fingerprint Height/ Weight
3
Impound Property
4
Record Review
Holding
MI Screening Area
Receiving Compound
L
L
W
W
W
W
Water/Lyster bag
L
Latrine shield
Receiving/Processing Stations

APPENDIX T


Field Detention Facility
Capacity – 125 US Military Prisoners
MEDIUM CUSTODY AREA
MAXIMUM CUSTODY AREA
POST TRIAL PRISONER
MEDICAL HOLDING
FEEDING AND EXERCISE AREA
INPROCESSING
MINIMUM CUSTODY AREA
Administration Tent
Emergency Exit
GP Medium tent
Guard tower
Latrine/Screen
Bomb trench
Guard bunker
Modified CONEX
Water
Concertina wire
Barbed wire

APPENDIX T

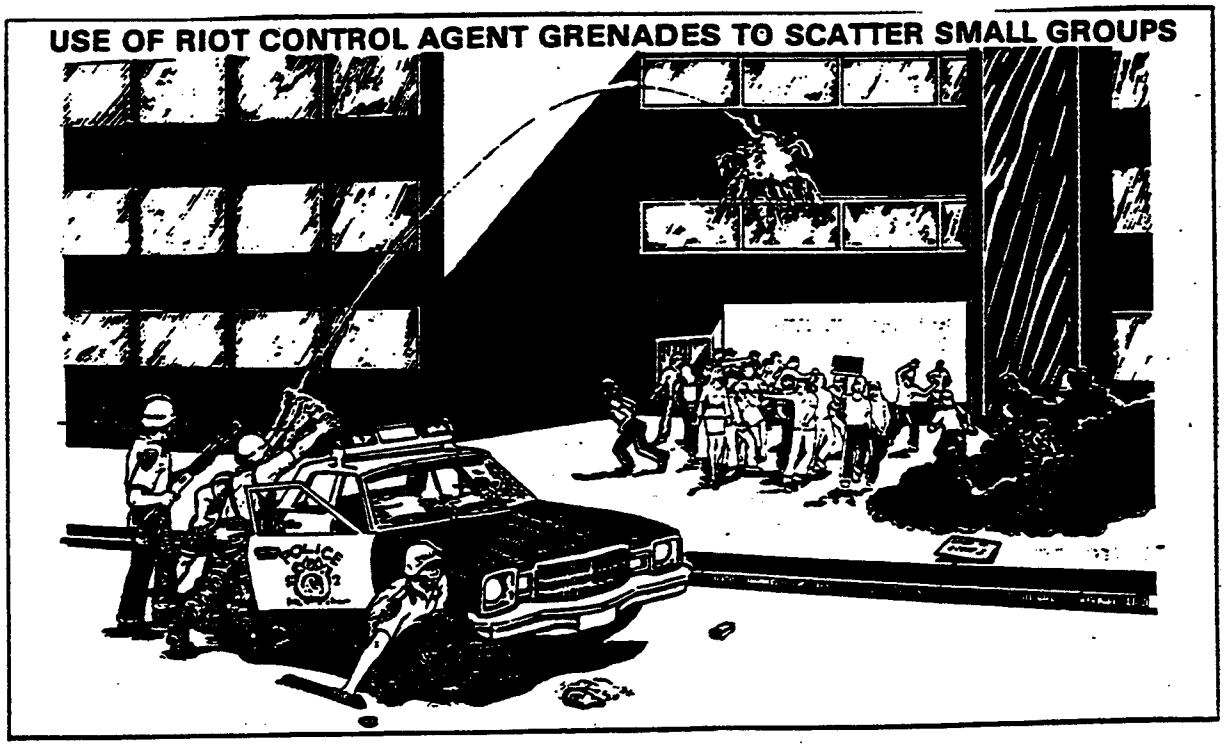
BILL OF MATERIALS FOR EPW COMPOUND

1. The below list is a minimum bill pf materials for an EPW Compound that can house no more than 120 EPWs:

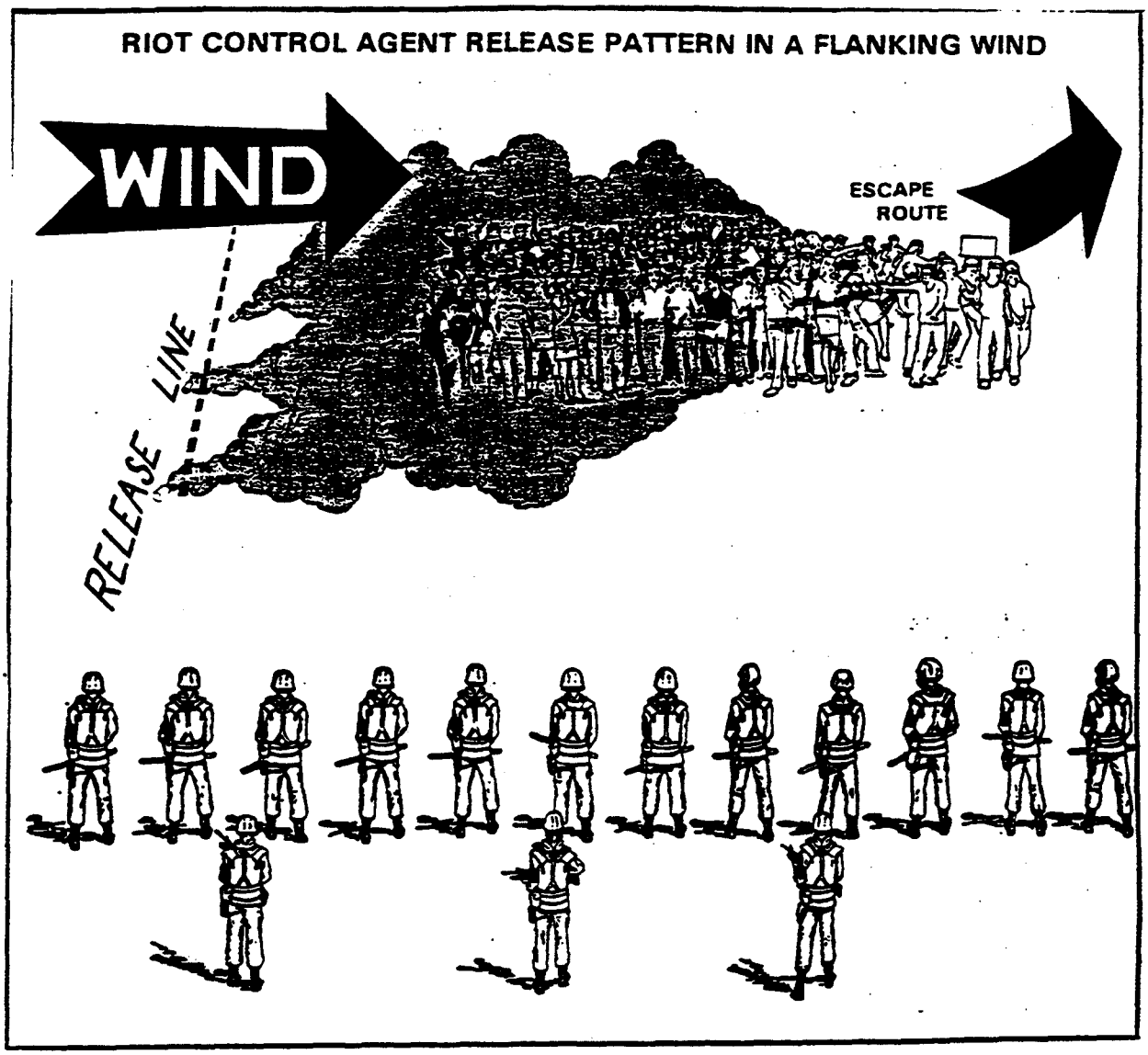
a. GP Tents	08
b. CP Tents	03
c. Portable Heads	09
d. Water Bulls	07
e. Engineer Stakes	110
f. Concertina	145 Rolls
g. 4"x4"x16' Lumber	30
h. 2"x4"x12' Lumber	50
i. 16 Penny Nails	25 1bs
j. LAP Top Computer	01
k. Printer	01
l. Field Desk SL-3 Complete	08
m. Baber Kit	01
n. Wash basin (for mesh facilities)	01
o. Steel Post Driver	02
p. Sledge Hammer lOlbs	02
q. Engineer Tape	03 Rolls

APPENDIX U

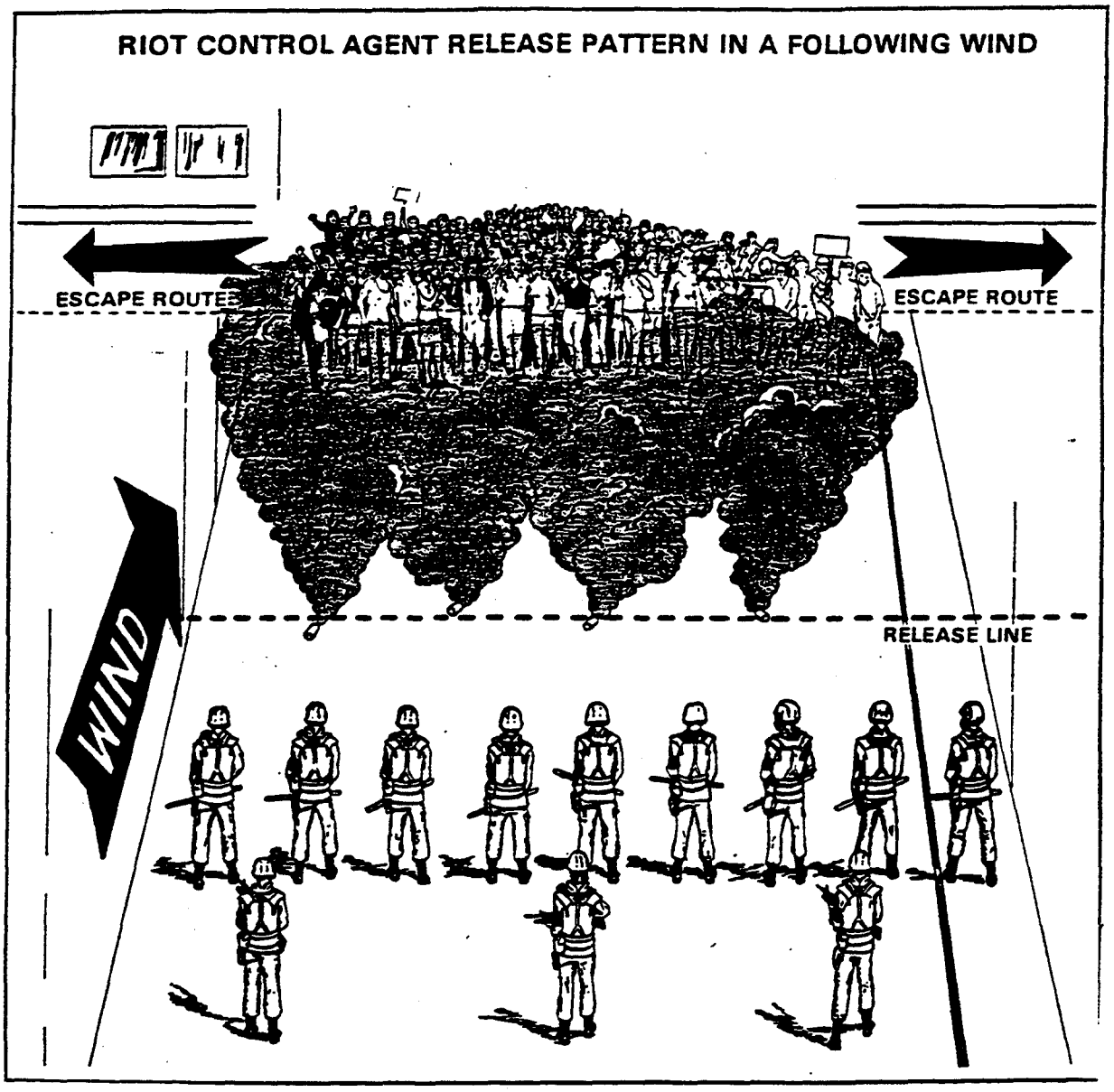
RIOT CONTROL CHEMICAL AGENTS:



APPENDIX U


RIOT CONTROL AGENT RELEASE PATTERN IN A FLANKING WIND
WIND
ESCAPE ROUTE
RELEASE LINE

APPENDIX U


RIOT CONTROL AGENT RELEASE PATTERN IN A FOLLOWING WIND
ESCAPE ROUTE
ESCAPE ROUTE
WIND
RELEASE LINE

APPENDIX U

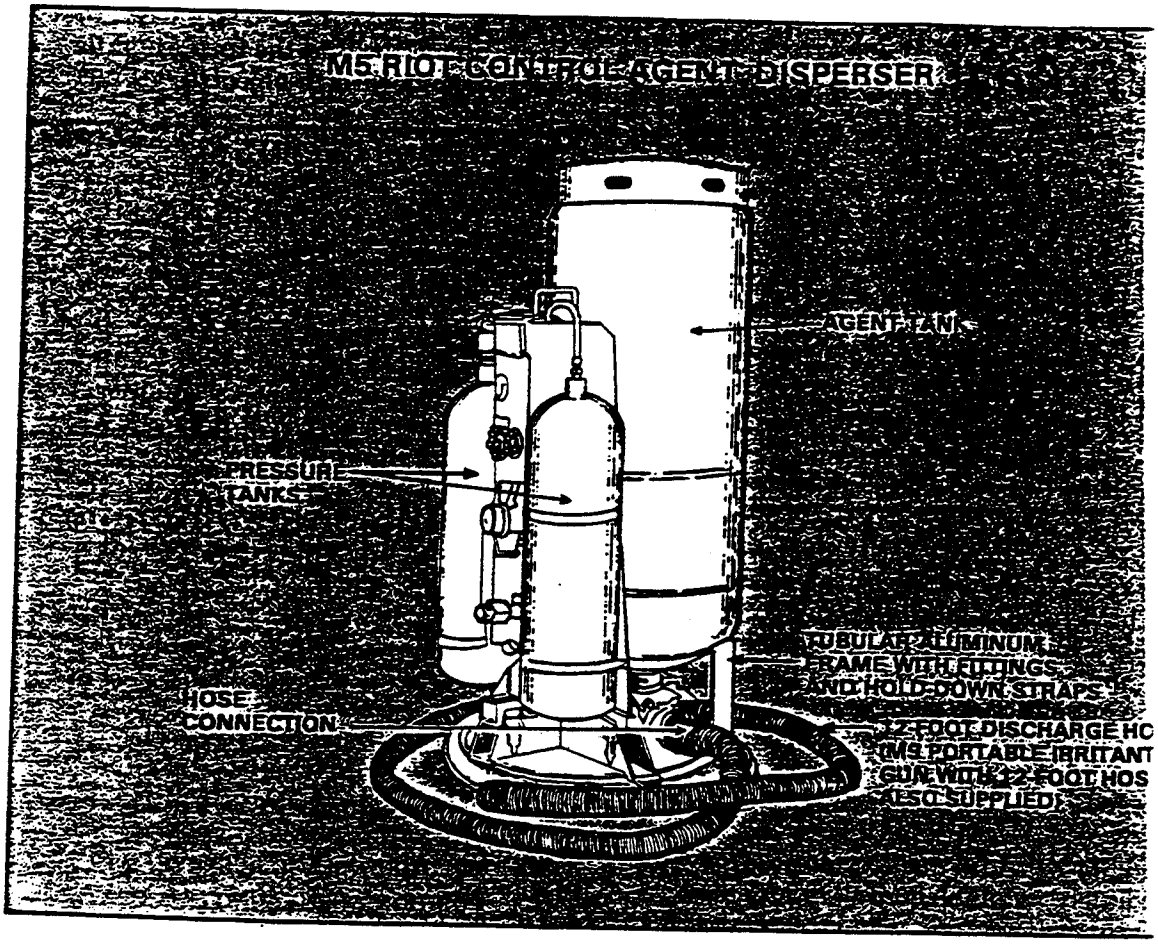
RIOT CONTROL CHEMICAL AGENTS CHARACTERISTICS AND TREATMENT

	CS	CR
DELIVERY MEANS	Delivered by hand grenades, rifle grenades, ring airfoil, soft projectiles, or dry spray M33a1 or M5.	Delivered as a wet spray or stream by Mi3a1, or M36 dispenser.
EMPLOYMENT CONDITIONS	Has greatest effect when there is little or no wind. Rain diminishes effect	Is effective under all conditions except high winds, only slightly diminished by rain.
PERSISTENCY	Varies according to wind conditions powder form persists longer in still air and in wooded terrain. Is not to be used in buildings, near hospitals, or in areas where contamination could cause problems.	Lingers in air. Long lasting; wind blown. Extremely persistent on surfaces. Is not to be used in buildings, near hospitals, or in areas where lingering contamination could cause problems.
TIME TO MAXIMUM EFFECT	Requires 20 to 60 seconds.	Acts immediately on exposed areas.
DURATION OF EFFECTS	Lasts 5 to 10 minutes.	Lasts a few minutes when victim is moved to an uncontaminated site.
EFFECTS	Causes extreme burning sensation in the eyes, abundant flow of tears, coughing, breathing ***difficulty***, ***tightness*** in chest, involuntary closing of eyes, sinus and nasal drip, and nausea and vomiting on exposure to high concentrations/ingested.	Cause irritation of nose and throat; stinging sensation of skin and and irritation of respiratory system, including coughing, chest pains, and feelings of suffocation
MINIMUM PROTECTION	Requires protective mask and field clothing.	Requires protective mask, Hood, and rubber gloves.
FIRST AID	Move victim to uncontaminated area, face victor into wind, caution victim not to rub eyes, keep affected people well	Move victim to uncontaminated area, flush eyes with water, check eyes for abrasions,

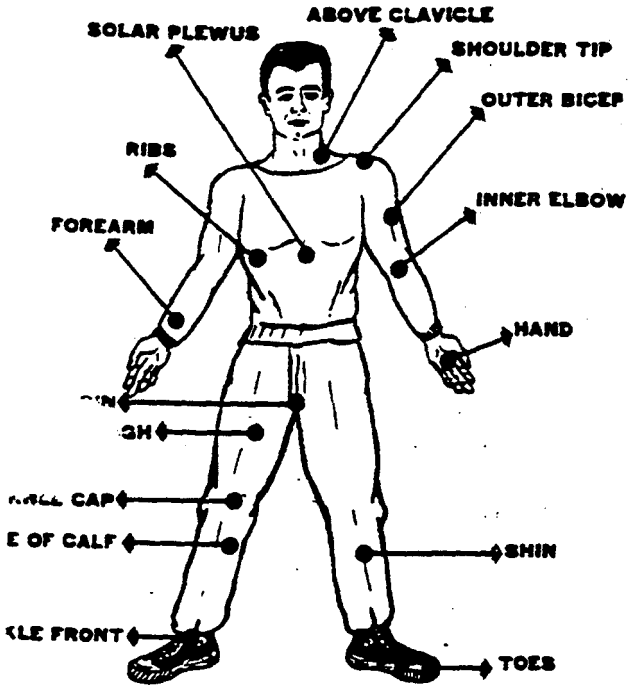
apart, have victim shower first with cool water for 3 - 5 minutes, then proceed with normal showering. For gross contamination, flush body with large amounts of cool water, then wash with a 5% sodim bisulfate solution (except in and around eyes) and flush again with water (a 1 solution of sodium carbonate or of sodium bicarbonate may be substituted for the sodium bisulfate solution.	shower well or wash and scrub exposed areas with soap and water, get victim to doctor if reaction persists.

WARNING: Household bleach (sodium hypochiorite solution) is NOT to be used in wash or rinse water to decontaminate clothing, equipment or people. CR and household bleach react to produce a harmful vapor.

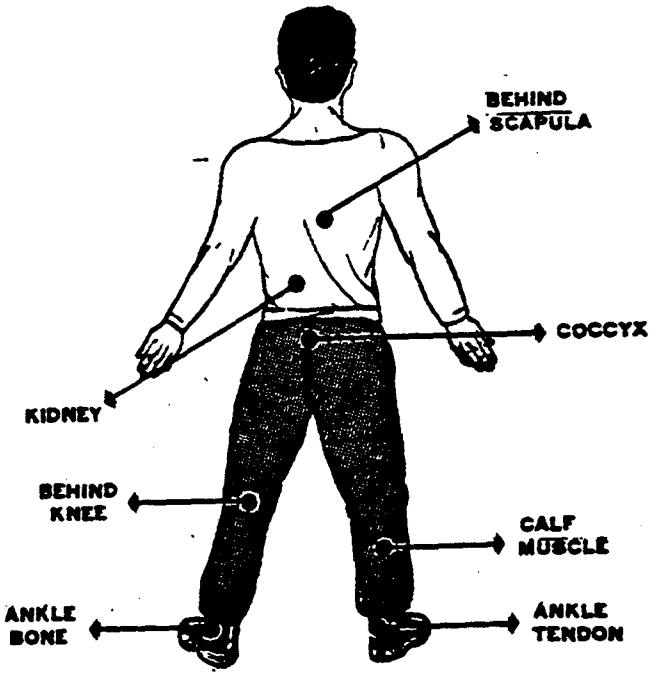
APPENDIX U


M5 RIOT CONTROL AGENT DISPERSER
AGENT TAN
PRESSURE TANKS
TUBULAR ALUMINUM FRAME WITH FITTINGS AND HOLD-DOWN STRAPS
HOSE CONNECTION
12-FOOT DISCHARGE HO
(M5 PORTABLE IRRITANT
GUN WITH 12-FOOT HOS
ALSO SUPPLIED)

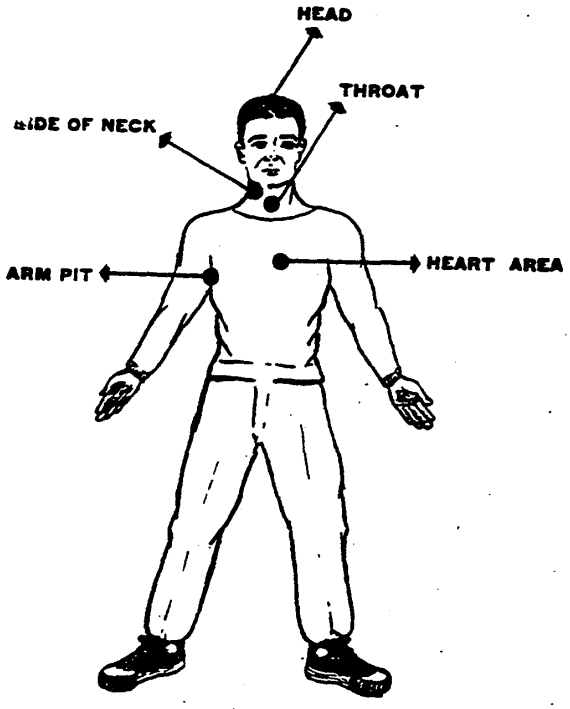
APPENDIX U



Body vulnerable points (front).



APPENDIX U



. Possible fatal points of impact.

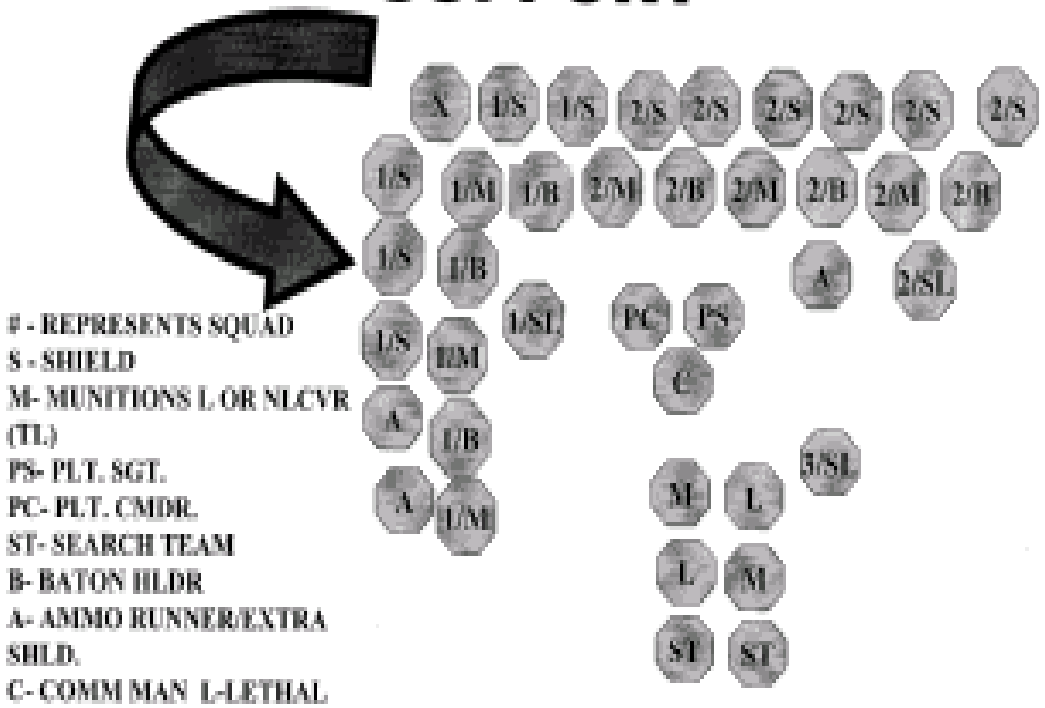
1. **Formation Supports**.

   a. Lateral.

   b. General.

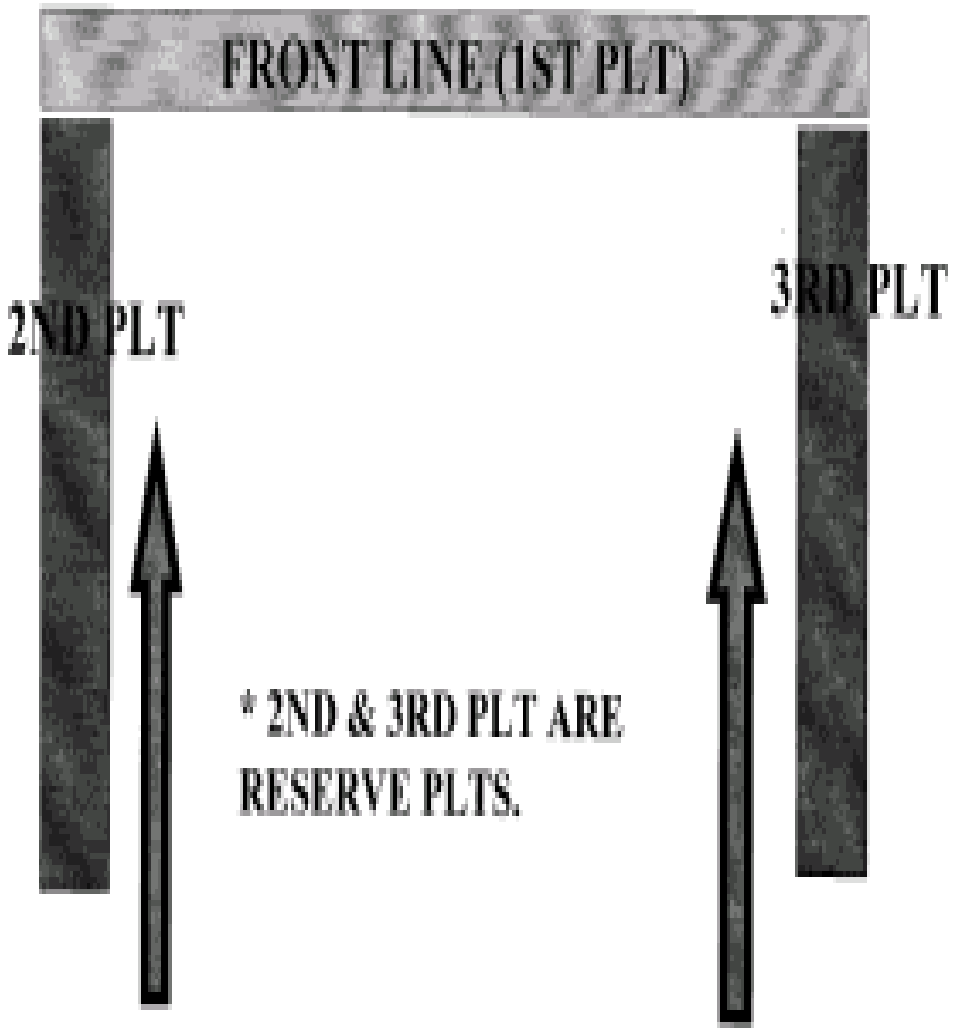
   c. Close.

PLATOON LATERAL SUPPORT

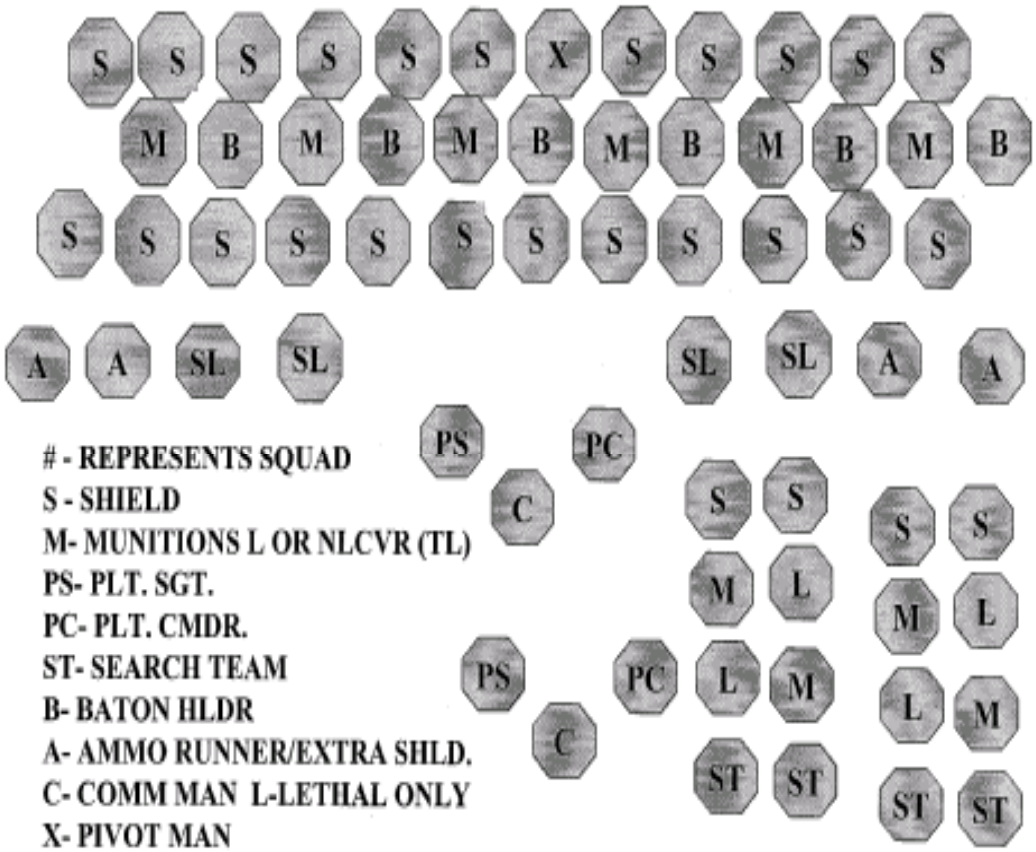


- REPRESENTS SQUAD
S - SHIELD
M- MUNITIONS L OR NLCVR (TL)
PS- PLT. SGT.
PC- PLT. CMDR.
ST- SEARCH TEAM
B- BATON HLDR
A- AMMO RUNNER/EXTRA SHLD.
C- COMM MAN L-LETHAL ONLY
X- PIVOT MAN

PLATOON GENERAL SUPPORT



PLATOON CLOSE SUPPORT



APPENDIX U

1. **Members of the Recovery Team**. The recovery team will consist of two fire teams. Each fire team will have:

a. One shield holder.

b. One non-lethal munitions gunner.(shotgun)

c. One lethal gunner. (M16 or 9mm)

d. One search team member.

APPENDIX U

2. **Responsibilities of the Recovery Team**.

   a. Extract vehicles or personnel from the crowd.

   b. Detain and escort downed rioters.

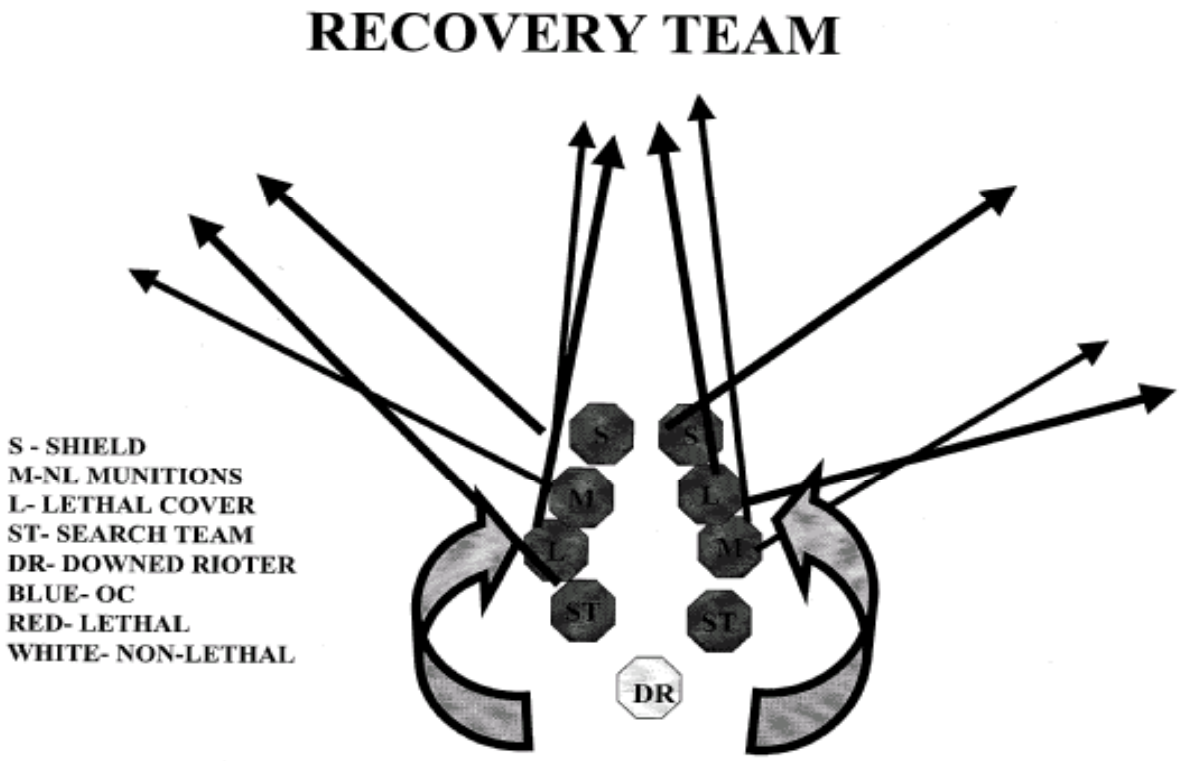
   c. Restrain and search downed rioters.

   d. Communicate with base element for support.

   e. Employ RCA's as needed.

   f. Fill in gaps from frontal line.

   g. Be inserted into a confined or congested area that the formation cannot fit it.



Appendix V
Glossary

CHAPTER 1

Armed personnel. Law enforcement and security personnel in possession of a weapon, prescribed for assigned duties, performing law enforcement or security duties.

Deadly Force. That force which a person uses with the purpose of causing death or serious bodily harm or which a reasonable and prudent person would consider likely to create a substantial risk of causing death or serious bodily harm.

Competent Authority. Superiors in the chain of command and those who are specifically designated in writing to issue orders to law enforcement and security personnel.

Lawful Order. An order received from competent authority, which a person of ordinary sense and understanding would know, is not contrary to the law.

Rules of Engagement. Are directives issued by competent military authority, which delineate the circumstances, and limitations under which United States forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered

Noncombatant Evacuation Operation (NEO). A military evacuation of U.S., foreign national or indigenous personnel, endangered by hostile military or political factions, within a foreign (host) country. NEO's are conducted under the following environmental conditions:

Permissive Environment. An evacuation operation conducted after appropriate diplomatic clearance has been obtained from the host country. Hostile action against landing forces or evacuees is not anticipated. Only the minimum essential personnel required to conduct the evacuation will be deployed ashore. Commanders will be prepared to conduct operations in a hostile environment should conditions change.

Non-Permissive Environment. An evacuation operation conducted in a potentially hostile environment. The host government cannot guarantee the safety of the evacuees or the evacuation force. This is a combat operation with primary emphasis on the protection of the noncombatant

evacuees. The principle of minimum force to accomplish the mission applies.

Evacuation Control Center(ECC). Responsible for the administrative processing and logistical support of evacuees.

Forward Command Element. The Forward Command Element (FCE) is comprised of the MEU executive officer and any additional personnel required to liaison within the host nation.

Chief of Mission. The principal officer in charge of a diplomatic mission of the United States.

Deputy Chief of Mission (DCM). The DCM is the deputy to the Chief of Mission and second in command.

Regional Security Officer (RSO). A professionally trained security officer responsible for the security program for a specific area or post.

Hazard. A condition with the potential to cause personal injury or death, property damage or mission degradation.

Risk. An expression of possible loss in terms of severity and probability.

Risk Assessment. The process of identifying, assessing, and controlling risks arising from operational factors and making decisions that balance risk costs with mission benefits.

Operational Risk Management (ORM). The process of dealing with risk associated within military operations, which includes risk assessment, risk decision-making and implementation of effective risk controls.

Tactical Risk. Risk concerned with hazards that exist because of the presence of either the enemy or an adversary.

Accident Risk. Includes all operational risk considerations other than tactical risks. It includes risk to friendly forces.

Appendix V
Glossary

Radio Net. A radio net is two or more stations operating on the same frequency for the specific purpose of exchanging information.

Command and control net. These nets are established to provide the commander with the means of commanding and controlling his subordinate maneuver elements.

Fire support nets. All fire support nets (air, naval gunfire, artillery, and mortars) will be monitored in the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC), which is part of the Combat Operations Center (COC).

Station. A designated military unit on a specific frequency on the radio.

Net Call Sign. The net call sign is a letter-numeral-letter designation (i.e. A6B), which will change every 24 hours.

Net Control. The senior controlling station on a radio net. Permission must be granted from net control before trying to contact another station on that net (i.e. Range Control).

Frequency. There are three basic types of radios that are utilized in the Marine Corps: HF, UHF, and VHF.

High Frequency (HF). Low frequency range used for long-range communications. HF radios use "sky wave", bouncing their signal off the upper atmosphere. Communications must be conducted slowly and clearly due to interference and long transmission time.

Very High Frequency (VHF). Mid-frequency range, the most commonly utilized by the Marine Corps. Useful for line-of-sight communications with the ability to transmit over slightly rough terrain. Large terrain features or heavy vegetation will block transmissions.

Ultra High Frequency (UHF). High frequency range, used almost solely for ground-to-air and air-to-air communications. MPs will use this range solely for calling Close Air Support.

Appendix V
Glossary

Super High Frequency (SHF). Not used by MPs.

3.0 Mhz >>>> 30 Mhz >>>> 300 Mhz >>>> 3000 Mhz >>>> 30000 Mhz
HF VHF UHF SHF

Radio Check. A radio check is used to test the radio's signal strength and readability of a distant station.

The following are the authorized transmission for a radio check:

"CALLSIGN ", this is "CALLSIGN", radio check, over.

"CALLSIGN", this is "CALLSIGN", roger, over

"CALLSIGN", this is "CALLSIGN", roger, out

Radio Check Response. The above illustration is used if the signal strength and readability of the transmission is of good quality. Other responses include:

WEAK BUT READABLE. Weak signal, but I can understand

WEAK AND GARBLED. Weak signal and unreadable

STRONG BUT GARBLED. Strong signal, but I can't understand

COMSEC. Procedure designed to protect systems by denying enemy interception, intrusion, imitative communication deception, or extraction of essential elements of friendly information.

Crypto Security. The proper use and control of approved crypto systems enabling a secure net to send message traffic.

Transmission Security (TRANSEC). All measures taken to deny unauthorized persons information derived from interception and analysis of equipment emanations.

Emission Security. Similar to transmission security. All measures taken to deny unauthorized persons information, which might be derived from interception and analysis of equipment emanations.

Appendix V
Glossary

Physical Security. The measures taken to secure classified material, equipment, or areas. This includes measures taken to protect from damage.

Jamming. An attempt to damage a unit's combat capability by blocking specific channels or frequencies of communication. Jamming will frequently sound like white noise, sea gulls, or bells.

Preventive Maintenance (PM). The care and serving performed by the operator for the purpose of maintaining equipment in a satisfactory operating condition. This is achieved by accomplishing a systematic inspection, detection, and correction of failures either prior to their occurrence or before a problem develops into major defects. In short, 1st echelon maintenance should be conducted.

AKAC-874. A classified document (book) enabling the radio operator to perform challenge and reply, authentication, encryption, and decryption. Each book is good for 31 days, and subdivided into four six-hour time periods.

Fire Direction Center (FDC). The "brains" of the mortar/artillery-firing unit. Receives requests and adjustments from the FO and translates them into firing data for the gun line.

Forward Observer (FO). The Marine with eyes on the target and communicating with the FDC. Always use FO for "observer". "Observer" is an Army term; therefore Marines use the term FO.

Forward Air Controller (FAC). The Marine aviator with eyes on the target in contact with the aircraft and in control of the "mark". While a FAC is normally a certified Marine Aviator, located on the ground, during combat any trained Marine may request Close Air Support.

Fire support coordinating and limiting measures. Designated portions of the battlefield where commanders may or may not engage targets or maneuver subordinate units. Used by the Fire Support Coordinator to help coordinate all fire support occurring in his unit's TAOR. (See APPENDIX J)

Limiting Measure (Boundary). Units enjoy freedom of fire within their boundaries, but must coordinate fires across boundaries.

Appendix V
Glossary

Permissive Measures. Facilitates the timely attack of targets by reducing coordination requirements with higher or adjacent commands. Drawn in BLACK on maps and overlays.

Coordinated Fire Line (CFL). Line beyond which conventional surface delivered fire support may engage targets at any time within the zone of the establishing headquarters, without additional coordination.

Fire Support Coordination Line (FSCL). Line beyond which all-conventional fire support (including air) may engage targets at any time within the zone of the establishing headquarters, without coordination.

Free Fire Area (FFA). Specific area into which any weapon system may fire without additional coordination of the establishing agency.

Restrictive Measures. Imposes requirements for coordination or restriction on the engagement of targets affected by the measure. Used as a safeguard for friendly forces. Drawn in BLACK on maps and overlays.

Restrictive Fire Line (RFL). Line established between converging friendly forces that prohibits fires or effects from fires across the line without coordination with the affected force.

Airspace Coordination Area (ACA). Formal or informal restricting block of airspace in which friendly aircraft are reasonably safe from the effects of friendly surface delivered fires.

Restrictive Fire Area (RFA). Area into which specific firing restrictions are imposed and into which fires exceeding those restrictions will not be delivered without coordination (may request to fire into) with the establishing agency.

No Fire Area (NFA). Area into which neither fires nor their effects are allowed unless case by case approval is given by the establishing agency, or enemy forces within the NFA are engaging friendly forces. If this is the case, friendly forcers may only respond in kind until authorization to escalate is granted by the establishing agency (i.e. church, school, hospital).

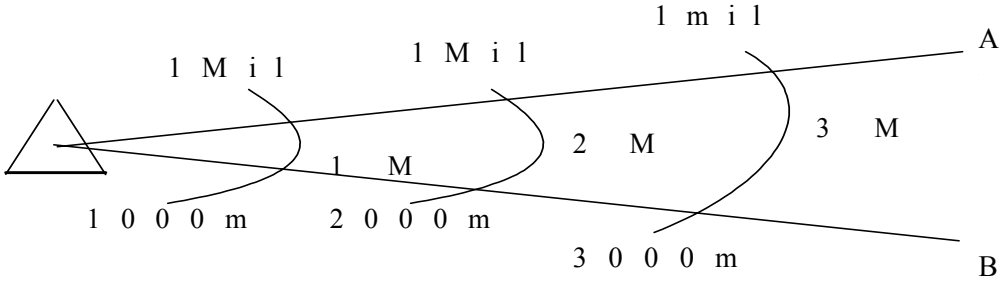
Appendix V
Glossary

Conduct of Fire (COF) Net. Radio net (i.e. COF1, COF2 COF3...) used exclusively for fire missions, and may be designated mortar COF or Arty COF.

Observer-Target Factor (OT Factor). Calculation derived from the range to the target that effects the adjustment calculations for the FDC. (See APPENDIX J)

Mil. Unit of horizontal angular measurement equal to 1/6400th of a circle or 17.8 mils equals 1 degree. All directions in call for fire use the mil. Artillery and mortar FDC expect mils in the CFF.

Mil Relation. An angle of one mil subtends an arc of one meter for every 1000 meters of distance. Used to determine accurate lateral distance between objects. See example below.



Message to Observer. Message from the FDC to the FO notifying the FO of the firing unit, ammunition type, and time of flight. (See APPENDIX J)

Adjust Fire. When the observer is not confident that a target location is accurate enough to achieve effect on target.

Fire for Effect. When observer is confident that his target location is accurate enough for him to achieve effect on the target, all rounds for effect are fired.

Suppression. Used when the observer wants to bring rapid fires on a planned target not currently engaging his unit. Rounds do not have to hit enemy to suppress, just trying to keep heads down.

Appendix V
Glossary

Immediate Suppression. This is a shorter Call For Fire and demands a higher priority from FDC than other CFF. Is used when the observer wants to engage a planned target or target of opportunity that is taking his unit under fire.

Danger Close. Predicted impact of rounds will be within 400 meters of friendly troops for mortars, 600 meters of friendly troops for artillery, 750 meters of friendly troops for naval gunfire and 1000 meters of friend lies for CAS.

"Shot" and "Splash". As soon as the round is fired, the FDC announces, "SHOT, OVER" to the observer. Due to the long time of flight with mortars, the mortar FDC will next announce, "SPLASH, OVER". If the observer is adjusting artillery he may request a splash if he is having difficulty observing his rounds. The FDC announces "SPLASH, OVER" five seconds prior to the round impacting.

End of Mission Statement. Message from FO to FDC ending the mission and supplying necessary end of mission data.

Planned Targets. Prearranged targets against which fires (surface or air delivery) can be delivered quickly.

Scheduled Targets. Targets on which certain supporting arms will deliver a predetermined type and amount of munitions at a specific time.

On-call Targets. Targets on which certain supporting arms will deliver a predetermined type and amount of munitions when requested

List of Targets. A request from the operational unit for indirect fire targets in their area of operations.

Target List. List of approved targets from the FSCC that can be used by the operational unit.

Target Marking. Such marking allows incoming aircraft to locate designated target area. The most common MP method for marking targets during Close Air Support missions is with smoke, white phosphorous, or ground burst illumination. Marking rounds should impact no later than 20 seconds before the aircraft reaches the target. If smoke is used to mark a target, ensure that the smoke is

beyond or downwind of the target. This will keep the smoke from obscuring the target from the pilot's view.

Mortar Line. The actual mortar tubes in firing position, receiving commands from the FDC.

CHAPTER 3

Traffic Circulation Plan: A visual representation describing the road network and how it will be used. This plan is usually expressed in the form of an operational overlay and will include: Highway regulation information, Route designations, Restrictive route features (bridges, tunnels, defiles) and their traffic capability, Major geographical features, Locations of Boundaries, units, TCP's, principal supply points, and blackout areas, Direction of traffic movement, Route and Road classification.

Traffic Control Plan: This plan, usually expressed as a map overlay, implements the traffic circulation plan. This plan results from the route reconnaissance and includes: Placement of control measures, Location of traffic control points, Location of temporary signs, Location of other MP control functions, Alternate routes and control points, should the main supply routes (MSR's) become untenable.

MP Team: A four-man fire team is the building block for tactical employment. Three MP fire teams and a squad leader make up a squad. Three squads, a Platoon Commander and Platoon Sergeant make up a platoon.

Estimate of Supportability: A written proposal based on stated and implied missions, outlining MP capabilities and limitations. Included in the estimate are specific courses of actions based on personnel strength and available equipment/logistical support.

Traffic Control Point: A position established at a critical point along the MSR to control vehicle and foot traffic. Usually performed by an MP Team; however, mission requirements and relative security in the area of operation may permit a reduction in the number.

Checkpoint: Position established by MP to control movement and to prevent actions, which aid the enemy. Also used to

inspect cargo, enforce rules and regulations and provide information.

Roadblock: An MP Team position established to stop, slow, or limit movement of vehicles along a MSR. Roadblocks are manned or unmanned and can also be used to channel traffic into a checkpoint.

Straggler/refugee control point: MP position established to check/control straggler and refugee traffic. This position may also function as a TCP or checkpoint.

Defile: A narrow passage, natural or manmade, that funnels the movement of troops and vehicles into one-way traffic. Defiles are identified during reconnaissance and traffic control is provided.

Holding Area: A temporary location identified to stage vehicles or personnel until movement can continue or be redirected.

Axial MSR: Runs to and from the Forward Edge of the Battle Area (FEBA). Axial MSR's are identified by an odd number or expressed "pictorially".

Lateral MSR: Runs parallel to the FEBA. An even number or a three-letter name identifies lateral MSR's.

Chapter 4

Rear Area Security Coordinator (RASC). The person responsible for the coordinating elements in the RAS effort. This person is usually the CSSE commander.

Rear Area Security Officer (RASO). The officer in charge of supervising security for the rear area.

Combat Service Support Operations Center (CSSOC). The agency that controls the day-to-day CSS operations for the Marine air ground task force (MAGTF).

Rear Area Operations Center (RAOC). The agency that controls the RAS effort for the MAGTF.

Base Defense Operations Center (BDOC). The agency that control the ABGD effort for the ACE.

Appendix V
Glossary

Threat Levels. Level I=Those threats which can be defeated by local defenses. Level II = Those threats that are beyond the capabilities of local security, but can be defeated by response forces. Local security should be able to contain Level II threat until the arrival of response forces. Level III = Those threats that require the MAGTF commander to employ ground combat units to defeat them.

Linear Defense. A defensive position oriented towards its front with squad abreast.

Perimeter Defense. A defensive position oriented in a circular manner (360 degree security), so as to meet attacks from all directions.

Defile. Protection from hostile observation and fire provided by an obstacle such as a hill, ridge, or bank. To shield from enemy fire or observation y using natural or artificial obstacles.

Reverse Slope. A position on the ground not exposed to direct fire or observation. It may be a slope that descends away from the enemy.

Topographical Crest. Highest point of a hill, ridge, or mountain.

Military Crest. An area on the forward slope of a hill or ridge from which maximum observation covering the slope down to the base of the hill or ridge can be obtained. Different from the topographical crest, in that it is not necessarily the highest point.

Sector of Fire. An area to be covered by fire by an individual, fire unit, or crew-served weapon. It is a pie shaped area enclosed by two lateral limits and a forward limit.

Lateral Limits. Readily identifiable terrain features selected to indicate the line of sight along each side of a sector. The terrain features should be near the forward limit of the sector so that all the members of the fire unit can use them. Two stakes are used to indicate the lateral limits during reduced visibility.

Forward Limit. Established at a range which the weapons will open fire. For rifles and automatic weapons, this may

be the maximum effective range of the weapon. When possible select a terrain feature to identify the forward limit. As attackers pass this limit, he is brought under fire.

Field of Fire. The area that a weapon or group of weapons may effectively cover with fire from a given position.

Massed Fire. Fire from a number of weapons directed a small, single point.

Grazing Fire. Fire parallel to the ground where the center of the cone of fire does not rise above 1 meter from the ground. Approximately the height of a standing man.

Dead Space. An area within the maximum effective range of a weapon, surveillance device, or observer that cannot be covered by fire and observation from a given position because of intervening obstacles, the nature of the ground, the characteristics of the trajectory, to the limitations of the pointing capabilities of the weapon system.

Fighting position. A location on the ground from which fire is delivered by an individual, fire unit, or crew-served weapon. Fighting positions are selected for their good fields or fire, maximum use of cover and concealment, ability for the unit leader to control fires.

Primary Fighting Position. The best position from which the assigned sector of fire can be covered.

Alternate Fighting Position. Alternate positions are not normally assigned to individual or units within the platoon. They are principally for crew-served weapons. An alternate position allows a crew-served weapon to continue its original mission when the primary becomes untenable or unsuited for carrying out that mission. An alternate fighting position covers the same sector of fire as your primary fighting position.

Supplementary Position. Assigned a different mission covering another sector of fire, usually the flanks.

Sentinel Post (SP)/Listening Post (LP). A two-man post 100-300 meters from the FLOT manned both during the day and night.

Appendix V
Glossary

Battle Position (BP). A position on which the main effort of defense is concentrated. Platoons, companies, and battalions are assigned battle positions. A BP is made up of a series of sectors of fire. The BP has left and right lateral limits. An elliptical shaped circle will be drawn to indicate a BP. The symbol indicating size of the unit and unit designation numbers will be placed in the break to the rear.

Counterattack. In a sustained defensive position, the enemy attacks in an effort to restore the battle position taken from them.

Principal Direction of Fire (PDF). A specific direction of fire, within a sector of fire, given to a direct fire weapon and is designated as its primary fire mission. A PDF is assigned to automatic weapons not fire units and usually not to riflemen. A PDF may be assigned to riflemen during periods of reduced visibility. Automatic weapons are not assigned more than one PDF. A PDF is assigned using a readily identifiable terrain feature. An aiming stake near the fighting position is used to indicate the PDF during reduced visibility. The PDF is employed to: cover a gap in the final protective line of a machine gun, cover a specific terrain feature endangering the unit BP such as a draw or hilltop. The terrain feature is not necessarily a point on which fixed fire is placed; however, it is intended that coverage of the feature should require little distribution of fire, protect a crew-served weapon by firing across its front, augment the band of flanking fire placed immediately in front of a BP.

Final Protective Fire (FPF). Fire delivered when the enemy's attack has not been broken up, and the assault has begun. The FPF is the final attempt to stop the enemy attack before he reaches the BP. Automatic riflemen increase their rate of fire to the rapid rate. Normally, the largest concentration of fire is along PDFs.

Final Protective Line. A FPL is utilized with the M240G machine gun. It is a predetermined line along which grazing fire is placed to stop an enemy assault. Once in position, one Marine will walk the FPL to identify both dead space and grazing fire along its length. Machine guns are always assigned an FPL or PDF, but never both.

Appendix V
Glossary

Fire Team Fire Plan. The fire team leader formulates the team's fire plan to cover the entire sector assigned by the squad leader with heaviest possible volume of fire. The fire plan includes assignment of individual sectors of fire by the squad leader, and the position of the fire team leader.

Fire Plan Sketch. A graphic representation of the fire unit's fire plan. The fire plan sketch will include: See APPENDIX M. Individual sectors of fire and platoon/squad BP, primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions, PDF and FPF for all automatic/crew-served weapons. The symbol identifying the type/size of the weapon system will be depicted, magnetic North, location of SPs/LPs, Mines and Obstacles, Date-time group, azimuth and distance to prominent terrain features, location of dead space (those areas that cannot be engaged by direct fire weapons).

Patrol. A detachment of Marines sent out for the purposes of gathering information, carrying out a destructive combat mission or a security mission.

Patrol Leader (PL). The senior member of the patrol tasked with organizing and leading the patrol.

Assistant Patrol Leader (APL). Second in command to the PL. Assists the PL in organizing the patrol and assumes command in the PLs absence.

Navigator. Plans the route in accordance with the mission and the PL's guidance. Navigates during movement of the patrol and maintains constant awareness of the patrol's position.

Pace Counter. Determines route lengths and translates them into steps using personal pace count. Keeps track of distances for PL (two per patrol).

Reconnaissance Patrol. Used for gathering information about the enemy, terrain or resources. Rely on stealth, not designed to engage the enemy.

Area Reconnaissance Patrol. A security patrol designed to protect a designated area. Missions can include location of enemy forces, presence, and general security.

Appendix V
Glossary

Zone Reconnaissance Patrol. A designated area must be thoroughly reconnoitered. The PL is given a specific zone to patrol by methodically moving through the entire area.

Point Reconnaissance Patrol. A specific poi must be reconnoitered in order to gather information. An objective is spelled out in the mission statement, and the patrol conducts a reconnaissance of the objective.

Combat Patrol. Heavily armed fighting patrol designed to engage the enemy.

Ambush Patrol. Designed to engage the enemy by surprise and cause casualties.

Raid Patrol. Designed to engage heavier enemy forces and quickly withdraw before becoming decisively engaged.

Economy of Force Patrol. Allows the commander to utilize mass elsewhere while the patrol secures a specified area.

Security Unit. Task organized section of the patrol with the mission of providing forward security at all times.

Headquarters Unit. The "brains" of the patrol. Includes the PL, APL, Radio Telephone Operator (RTO) and flank security.

Assault Unit. The "muscle" of the patrol. Used as the maneuver element in case of contact. Maintains rear security at all times.

Supporting Unit. Attached assets such as machinegun or engineer teams. Tucked in between the Headquarters and Assault Units during movement.

Initial Rally Point (IRP). Covered and concealed location just outside of friendly lines where the patrol can stop to reorganize and conduct a listening halt.

Final Preparation Point (FPP). On an ambush or point reconnaissance patrol; the final covered and concealed location for reorganization and listening prior to the objective.

Objective Rally Point (ORP). Covered and concealed location where the patrol can halt and distribute physical

EEIs after the execution of an ambush or point reconnaissance.

Listening Halt. A halt where the patrol freezes, listening for signs of movement.

Short Halt. A brief halt where the patrol takes a knee, and face outboard.

Long Halt. An extended halt where the patrol moves into a prone 360.

Checkpoint. Pre-selected points on the patrol overlay used for navigation, control and reporting.

Search and EPW Team. Task organized team assigned with search, EPW collection and handling.

Aid and Litter Team. Task organized team assigned with treating and transporting wounded.

Rally Point. Easily recognizable terrain feature designated by the PL where the patrol can gather if separation occurs. Designated at no more than 200-meter intervals.

Cross-compartment Danger Areas. Area where the patrol would have to cross open ground exposed to flanking and frontal fire or observation (e.g. large clearing).

Linear Danger Areas. Area where the patrol would have to cross open ground exposed to flanking fire or observation (e.g. road).

(Vehicle) HMMWVs. The MP M-1043 or M-1044 High Mobility Multi-Purpose Wheeled Vehicle, mounted with either an M-2 .50 Cal., Mk-19 40 mm, or an M-240G 7.62 mm machinegun.

Assault and Security Unit. Mounted patrols combine the duties of the Assault and Security Units (Section II, paragraph 2.) into one vehicle team for task organization purposes.

Security Patrol. Patrol covering large portions of the rear area, usually behind the FLOT in the CSSA. Can be an excellent "presence" patrol for urban areas.

Appendix V
Glossary

Area Reconnaissance Patrol. A patrol seeking information about a certain place and the immediate area surrounding it.

Zone Reconnaissance Patrol. A detailed, thorough, and time-consuming recon of all dominant terrain within specified boundaries.

Deliberate Route Reconnaissance Patrol. Conducted when there is enough time and qualified personnel. Provides the necessary data for a thorough analysis and classification of a significant terrain features and man-made structures along a route.

Hasty Route Reconnaissance Patrol. A patrol conducted to determine the immediate trafficability of a specified route, limited to critical terrain data deemed necessary for mission accomplishment. (The most commonly used by MP.)

Route. A road or roads, including tracks and bridges, used to move from one place to another. It includes those roads, bridges, tunnels, fords, and other terrain features that affect traffic flow and military movement.

Military Road Maneuver Network. The road system needed by a commander to conduct a specific military operation including logistic support.

Axial Route. Part of a military road maneuver network that leads to and runs generally perpendicular to the Forward Line of Troops (FLOT). For purposes of this SOP, Axial routes will be named after trees (i.e. OAK, ELM, FIR, ASH) and will be depicted on an overlay as a solid line.

Lateral Route. Part of a military road maneuver network that parallels the FLOT. For purposes of this SOP, Lateral routes will be named after animals (i.e. BAT, CAT, DOG, PIG, RAT) and will be depicted on an overlay as a dashed line.

Blocked Route. A route that has become temporarily impassable because of a natural or man-made material obstruction.

Appendix V
Glossary

Essential Element of Information (EEI). Intelligence requested by higher headquarters to improve knowledge of the battlefield or directly affect follow-on missions.

Route Classification Formula. A formula made up of a series of numbers and letters that express, in a standard sequence, the route width, route type, lowest military load classification, overhead clearance, obstructions to traffic, special conditions on given routes, and length of route. Information for the formula is obtained from the Route Recon Reports. When time has priority or unless otherwise directed, the Route Classification Formula will be the standard format used.

Road Classification Formula. A standardized series of numbers and symbols that express a roads characteristics. In sequence, the formula is limiting characteristics, width, road surface material, length, and obstruction(s). This is a more detailed report than a route classification formula, and takes more time. The Road Classification Formula will be used when time permits and a detailed road analysis is required.

Route Width. The narrowest width of the traveled way expressed in meters or feet. See Figure 14-1. The route width will determine what type of vehicles can use the route and the traffic flow possibilities for that route. See Figure 14-2.

Single Flow. Allows vehicle traffic in one direction only. Allows no overtaking in the same direction or passing in the on-coming direction. Vehicles are allowed to pass at pre-designated points.

Double Flow. Allows vehicle to travel abreast whether they are traveling in the same direction or not.

Natural Obstacles. Mountains, forests, rivers, lakes, cliffs, and swamps are natural obstacles. Efforts should be made to improve natural obstacles reducing the amount of man-made material and time. Flooding can make an existing obstacle more difficult or impossible to bypass. Felled trees can make forests and roads difficult to get through.

Artificial Obstacles. Any manmade object constructed to hinder movement.

Appendix V
Glossary

Minefields. The MAGTF Commander will publish specific guidance concerning the employment of mines.

Caltrops. (Anti-personnel & vehicle). A device with four sharpened prongs oriented so one prong is always vertical regardless of how it lays. Causes injury to personnel and can disable vehicles and aircraft. Used in conjunction with other obstacles or by themselves. Employ along enemy avenues of approach, roadways and airfields. Employed in a density of 30-40 per meter, equals triple strand concertina wire.

Anti-Vehicular Obstacles. Used to obstruct gaps in natural obstacles or placed in a long continuous line in open terrain. Gaps should be left to channel movement into an area covered by automatic weapons or heavier weapons. Position these obstacles in areas to gain surprise.

Ditches. Can be dug in a triangular, side hill-cut or trapezoidal.

Craters. Used for blocking roads, trails, and defiles. Located in an area where bypass is difficult, minded or covered by fire.

Hurtles. Used to compliment the effectiveness of the other obstacles. The hurtle forces a vehicle to slow down or go around them. Making them an easier target to hit.

Log Cribs. An effective roadblock where standing timber is available, and where such obstacles cannot be easily bypassed. By filling them with dirt log cribs can be strengthened.

Steel Posts. Railroad ties heavy pipes or structural member.

Log Posts. Should be of hardwood of a minimum diameter of 15.8”.

Abates. Consists of felled trees so that their tops interlock and preferably their trunks remain attached to the stumps. Tress can felled by explosives or hand tools.

Steel Obstacles. Hedgehog, Tetrahedron, Fill 55-gallon drums with concrete, stones or dirt.

Appendix V
Glossary

Concrete Obstacles. Cubes, Cylinders, Tetrahedrons, Concrete parking curbs. Used in a similar method to a log hurdle, Concrete "Jersey Barriers" lane dividers.

Expedient Obstacles. Load: abandoned vehicles, trucks, and carts with rocks, concrete, etc., and anchor them in place, Board or plywood panel with spikes. This obstacle can be employed quickly across a roadway to disable a vehicle or aircraft.

Barbered wire entanglements. Primarily designed to impede the movement of foot troops and, in some cases, tracked and wheeled vehicles: Classification by Use. Tactical. Position parallel to and along the friendly side of the machine-gun final protective line. Used to break up enemy attack formations and to hold the enemy in an area covered by the most intense fire; Protective. Locate to prevent surprise assaults from points close to the defensive position. Further, the obstacle is close enough to the defensive position for day and night observation, and far enough away to prevent the enemy from effectively using hand grenades (40-100 meters); Supplementary. To the front of the defensive position, used to conceal the exact line of the tactical wire. To the rear, used to enclose the entire defensive position.

Stationary Obstacles. Four-strand cattle fence; Double-apron fence; Standard concertina fence; Triple standard concertina fence; Low-wire entanglement; High-wire entanglement.

Portable Obstacles. Ideal for operation with TCPs and/or Roadblock. Spirals of loose wire; Knife Rest; Trip-wires; Tangle foot.

Barbed Wire Materials. Standard Barbed Wire. 2 Strands, 12-gauge steel wire, 4-point barb every 4". Standard reel, 400m, 91 lbs. Tactical reel; 110m, 35 lbs.

Concertina Wire. 36" Diameter, opens to 50', 31 lbs.

Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP). MOPP levels are related to the threat NBC capabilities. There are five levels of MOPP. See APPENDIX P.

Nuclear. Air Burst. Initial radiation, blast, and heat radiation is extensive; however, the residual radiation

(fallout) is reduced; Surface Burst. Initial radiation, blast, and heat radiation is reduced or concentrated in a smaller area; however, the residual radiation is generally extensive and spread over a larger fallout area; Sub-surface Burst. Initial radiation and heat radiation is negligible; blast is concentrated in a smaller area; the residual radiation is generally extensive as in a surface burst.

Biological Agents. Living or non-living micro-organisms designed to cause death or serious illness in man, animals, or plants. Four forms are bacteria, fungus, virus, and rickettsia. See APPENDIX P.

Chemical Agents. Are classified as nerve, blister, blood, and choking. The effects produced are dependent on the dosage ranging from non-lethal to lethal. See APPENDIX P. Lethal. (Gas). A fast acting, non-persistent nerve agent that is inhaled through the lungs.VX (Liquid Droplets). A slow acting, persistent nerve agent that is absorbed through the skin. Gas mask offers no protection. Non-Lethal. HD (Mustard Gas). A persistent blister agent that causes eye irritation and incapacitating skin burns. Although employed as a liquid, evaporating HD causes large amounts of irritating vapor in the target area. BZ. An incapacitating, non-persistent. agent, employed as a solid aerosol, which affects the body in a manner similar to LSD. CS and CN. A non-persistent irritant causing inflammation to the eyes, nose, and throat. Employed as a solid aerosol, its effects are felt instantaneously.

Persistency. There are two types of persistency; non persistent (gaseous) which leaves the area quickly depending on wind, temperature, and humidity; persistent (normally a liquid or solid) which remains for hours to weeks.

M256 Detection Kit. Indicates the presence of toxic agents by color changes occurring in liquid reagents. The purpose of the kit is to detect and classify chemical agents present in the air and in liquid form. The kit is capable of detection within 15 minutes, and detects mustard, phosgene oxide, nerve agents, cyanogen chloride, distilled mustard, hydrogen cyanide and lewisite. The principal uses are: Area reconnaissance after a chemical attack; Unit monitoring when an NBC 3 report is received; Determining when to remove masks after exposure to chemical attack;

Appendix V
Glossary

Checking for the presence of chemical ages before and after decontamination; Checking for chemical contamination well forward of the unit's position.

M8 Paper. Used to test suspected surface contamination in the form of liquid (puddles, drops or droplets). Test results are determined by matching color changes on the paper with the chart on the inside front cover of the paper book.

ABC-Ml l Decontamination Apparatus. A fire extinguisher type unit containing 1 1/2 quarts of DS2 used to decontaminate vehicles and/or crew-served weapons sufficiently to continue their operation. Not for use on personnel.

IM 143 Pocket RAD Meter. A pen size reading instrument that detects and records the total dosage of up to 600 RADs.

IM-174/PD radiacmeter. A handheld device capable of detecting the arrival of fallout, the presence of contamination, and monitoring change dosage rates in a range of 1 to 500 RADs per hour.

AN PDR-27 Radiact. Used in the same manner as the IM-174/PD. The AN PDR-27 is more sensitive and provides more accurate recordings.

M13 Individual Decontamination and Re-impregnation Kit. Used for the decontamination of skin and personal equipment, and in an emergency the re-impregnation of the protective liner outfit.

M258 Skin Decontamination 10. Used to decontaminate the skin once exposed to a toxic substance.

Bio Sampling Kit.

M9 Tape Chemical Detection.

NATO Marking Kit.

Maritime Prepositioning Force. A task organization of units under the commander, maritime pre-positioning force formed for the purpose of introducing a MAGTF and its associated MPE/S into a secure area.

Appendix V
Glossary

MPF Operation. A rapid deployment and assembly of a MAGTF into a secure area using a combination of strategic airlift and forward deployed maritime prepositioning shipping.

MPS Squadron Element (MPSRON). One or more MPS ships from any one, or combination of MPS squadrons. There are a total of 13 ships divided into three MPS squadrons (MPSRONs).

Naval Support Element (NSE). A task-organized force of naval support personnel and equipment responsible for off-load of the ships.

Survey, Liaison, Reconnaissance Party (SLRP). A task organization from the MAGTF and the NSE, which is introduced into the Arrival and Assembly Area prior to the arrival of the main body to conduct initial reconnaissance, establish liaison with in-theater authorities, and initiate preparations for the arrival of the main body. Deploys 5-7 days prior to off-load.

Arrival and Assembly Operations Group (AAOG). A staff agency of the MAGTF responsible for the overall conduct of the arrival and assembly operations.

Movement Control Center (MCC). The agency within the CSSE that receives all MPE/S from the POG and/or BOG throughout the arrival and assembly, and account for and distributes it to the appropriate AAOE.

Arrival and Assembly Operations Element (AAOE). An agency in each MAGTF element that is responsible for the coordination of the logistical functions of the MPE/S and the arrival and assembly of forces for its respective component.

GCE: Ground Combat Element

ACE: Air Combat Element

CSSE: Combat Service Support Element

CE: Command Element

NSE: Naval Support Element

LFSP: Landing Force Support Party

Appendix V
Glossary

Convoy. Task organized unit amassed to move Marines and equipment from point to point in a safe and timely manner under the control of a convoy commander.

Convoy Commander. Leader of the convoy responsible for planning and tactical control.

Assistant Convoy Commander. Second-in-command of the convoy. Assists the convoy commander with all tasks and assumes command in his absence.

Security Element. Element of Marines designated solely for convoy security/internal react purposes.

Security Element Leader. Leader of the security team. Subordinate to the convoy commander, responsible for securing the convoy and assuming control during enemy action.

Breach Team. Responsible for breaching all road obstructions. Preferably consists of supporting engineers with explosives and obstacle clearing devices i.e. grappling hooks.

Tactical Movement. Used for the timely delivery of units and material when enemy contact is possible or likely.

Administrative Movement. Used for timely delivery of units and supplies when enemy contact is unlikely.

March Column. All elements of the convoy use the same route for a single movement under the centralized control of a single commander.

Closed Column. Tactical formation that is generally used at night using blackout driving conditions. May also be used in movements through congested areas. Vehicle distance is reduced due to visibility and lack of control.

Open Column. Tactical movement used during daylight. Distance between vehicles is increased for greater degree of protection and also greater speed.

Infiltration. Tactical movement used when maximum deception and dispersion is required. Vehicles move alone and at staggered times along identical or different routes to the same objective.

Appendix V
Glossary

Choke points. Any areas where visibility and room for travel are reduced and a decrease in speed is required i.e. sharp curves in road, obstacles.

Halt. Anytime the convoy stops; usually at pre-designated areas figured into the convoy commander's plan.

Unscheduled Halt. Anytime the convoy must make an unplanned stop. Can affect the convoy commander's timeline.

Disabled Vehicle Halts. Halt called for when a vehicle suffers mechanical failure.

Road Movement Table. A movement table is an efficient means to transmit subordinate time schedules and other essential details of the motor march.

Critical Points. The convoy commander identifies critical points along the route. Critical points can be road junctions, steep grades or bridges that interfere with or restrict movement.

Start Point. Easily recognizable point on the ground where the road march begins.

End Point. Easily recognizable point on the road where the march ends.

Traveling. Lead and trail elements move together. Movement is fast but less secure.

Traveling over watch. Lead vehicles move at constant speed. Trail vehicles alternately speed up and stop to observe lead vehicles and cover them by fire at danger area. Movement is steady and generally secure.

Bounding over watch. Lead and trail vehicles move in alternate bounds, covering the other’s movement by fire and observation. Movement is slow but secure.

Blackout Driving. Driving at night or under low light conditions while attempting to avoid enemy observation through light discipline.

Defile. A narrow natural or man made passage that

constricts the movement of troops and vehicles. Military police use to slow or restrict movements along the MSRs

Hull-Down. Vehicle position where only the portion of the vehicle necessary to accomplish the mission (e.g. machine-gun) is visible to the enemy.

Full. The vehicle is fully masked from the enemy by terrain.

Herringbone. Vehicles in column turn outbound at An angle, alternating left to right, to break up the column and facilitate immediate action response.

Likelihood of Enemy Contact	Movement Technique
Not Likely	Traveling
Possible	Traveling Over watch
Expected	Bounding Over watch

(See APPENDIX R)

Vehicle Holding Areas. Vehicle holding areas are locations where and troops using MSRs are staged temporarily. Military police often use vehicle-holding areas with defiles, checkpoints, and roadblocks to temporarily control or suspend traffic movement.

Roadblocks. Roadblocks are manned control sites that limits the movement of vehicles or close access to certain areas. Military police set up roadblocks to stop, slow or restrict movement of vehicles along a route. A roadblock can help channel vehicles and personnel to checkpoints, holding areas, or defiles.

Checkpoints. Checkpoints are manned or unmanned control sites that limit the movement and to prevent illegal actions or actions that aid the enemy. At checkpoints, military police inspect cargo, enforce rules and regulations, and collect and provide information.

Traffic Control Points. The main purpose of a TCP is to ensure smooth and efficient use of roadways in accordance with the traffic circulation plan. Military police set up TCPs at critical sites along MSRs to control the movement of vehicles and personnel. Usually, TCP locations are identified during the transportation planning process.

Appendix V
Glossary

Route Signs. A signed military police route system, like the signed U.S. highway system, enables road users to reach their destinations by following signs and road markings displayed along the roadside. Route signs provide MSR users with location of detours, key units, and facilities. In addition, signs provide directions and distances, identify route or hazards, and provide general information to assist movement. Signs also reduce manpower requirement by eliminating the need to post a military policeman along a route. Military police routinely monitor signs before critical moves to ensure the signs are not damaged, destroyed, or moved by weather, saboteurs, or battle.

Chapter 5

Major Criminal Offense (Felony). For the purpose of this order, any offense punishable under the Uniform Code of Military Justice by confinement for a term of more than one year, or similarly framed federal statute, state, local or foreign law.

Minor Criminal Offense (Misdemeanor). For the purpose of this order, any offense punishable under the Uniform Code of Military Justice by confinement for a term up to one year, or similarly framed federal statute, state, local, or foreign law.

Apprehension Authority. Article 7b of the UCMJ and Rule 302 Manual for Courts-Martial give MP the authority to apprehend personnel subject to the UCMJ.

Detention of Civilians. MP have no authority to apprehend civilians. However, civilians may be detained until they can be turned over to civilian authorities.

Conspiracy. Article 81 of the UCMJ. When the accused enters into an agreement with one or more persons to commit an offense under the code. While the agreement continued to exist, and while the accused or at least one of the co-conspirators performed an overt act for the purpose of bringing about the object of the conspiracy.

Incident Complaint Report (ICR) OPNAV5527/1. Form used by MP to document criminal activity (excluding CID cases).

Jurisdiction. There may be as many as three types of

jurisdiction boundaries aboard any given military installation. Exclusive federal jurisdiction is when the Federal Government has sole jurisdiction and the state has no prosecutorial merit. Proprietary jurisdiction is when the jurisdiction belongs solely to the state. Concurrent jurisdiction is when both the State and Federal Government have jurisdiction, and either may assume investigative control.

Military Police Desk Sergeant Journal OPNAV 5527/19. A chronological listing of MP activities/involvement for a 24-hour period.

Military Police Investigations. The title MPI has replaced the former Criminal Investigation Division (CID), although the threshold over jurisdiction has virtually remained the same. In certain categories of crimes, the MPI jurisdiction has expanded, due to the integration of the Criminal Investigator, MOS 5821, with NCIS.

Memorandum of Understanding. A formal agreement between the United States Marine Corps and the Naval Criminal Investigative Service. The agreement dictates the jurisdiction authority over various categories of crimes. This agreement may vary slightly from installations, due to operational commitments.

Posse Comitatus. The power or authority of the county. This federal statute and DOD policy prohibits the use of military personnel to enforce civilian laws. This rule does not prohibit the use of military equipment and the personnel to operate such equipment, to assist civilian law enforcement officials.

Punitive Articles. Articles 77 through 134 described in Part IV, within the United States Manual for Courts-Martial.

Search. A quest for incriminating evidence; an examination of a person or an area with the purpose to discover contraband or other evidence to be used in a criminal prosecution. Three factors must be present before the law of search and seizure will apply. Does the command activity constitute the following: A QUEST for evidence; Conducted by a GOVERNMENT AGENT; and In an area where a REASONABLE EXPECTATION of privacy exists.

Appendix V
Glossary

Seizure. The taking of possession of some item of evidence in conjunction with the investigation of criminal activity. The act of seizure is a separate and distinct act from search. On some occasions, the search is lawful and the seizure is not. Further, certain person(s) must accomplish seizure.

Inspection. An examination, conducted as an incident of command, for the purpose to determine and to ensure the security, military fitness, or good order and discipline of the unit, organization, installation, vessel, or vehicle. Thus an inspection is conducted to ensure mission readiness, and is an inherent responsibility of commanders. An inspection cannot be used as a subterfuge for a quest for evidence.

Inventory. An administrative procedure conducted to ensure the accountability of property taken into the control of a government agent. Inventories are not prosecutorial in nature and are considered a reasonable intrusion of privacy, thus evidence found is admissible.

Chapter 6

Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW). A person belonging to one of the categories listed below: Members of the armed service (soldiers wearing a uniform); Civilians who are authorized to accompany the armed forces in the field and may move straight to an Army facility; War correspondents; Red Cross or USO-type personnel; Civilian members of military aircraft, supply contractors, and labor units; Merchant Marine crews and crews of civilian ships and aircraft; Members of a military organization that does not require its members to wear a uniform (militia, volunteer corps, or organized resistance movements) provided they qualify.

Civilian Internee (CI). A person interned during an armed conflict or occupation due to: Operational security considerations of the armed force that took the civilian into custody; A need to protect the civilian; Alleged unauthorized participation in hostile acts such as sabotage or attacking US. forces.

Retained Personnel. Captured enemy medical and administrative personnel engaged exclusively in the care of and administration of medical units and chaplains attached to the armed forces.

Appendix V
Glossary

Collection Point. An area where EPWs are temporarily held awaiting further transportation to the holding facility in the MAGTF rear. The GCE and Military Police operate collection points.

Holding Facility. A temporary, though more permanent, holding facility operated by Military Police. EPWs are temporarily held here until transferred to U.S. Army custody or the host nation for permanent internment.

Chapter 7

Civil Disturbances. A group of acts of violence and disorders prejudicial to public law and order.

Crowd. A large number of persons temporarily congregated vulnerable to manipulation of collective behavior and coercion to collective violence. Crowds lend individuals anonymity that makes them vulnerable to be emotional contagion, willing to commit acts they would not normally commit.

Mob. A crowd that has become a "large, disorderly crowd or throng". Emotionally driven to commit violent and disruptive acts against property and personnel; may be dispersed over a wide area (see dispersed riots).

Emotional Contagion. When excitement generated by events or leaders/dominant crowd members rapidly passes from person to person creating a rapidly escalating mood that may lead to violence.

Control Force. Unit assigned the mission of controlling a crowd and crowd behavior. Can be a combination of joint and combined military units and civilian law enforcement personnel.

Mass Demonstrations. Involving hundreds or thousands of people, many of whom may be nonviolent and within their rights to protest but because of the number can overwhelm the capabilities of law enforcement agencies.

Civil Disobedience. Often involving elderly women, young females and mothers with small children as well as men whose nonviolent posture places the control forces in an awkward position.

Appendix V
Glossary

Idealistic Protests. Involving fanatically dedicated young participants for whom normal deterrents such as the threat of arrest or use of force has limited or no effect.

Dispersed Riots. Involving many small groups of dissidents, many of who are acting irrationally out of sheer frustration and bitterness. These groups may operate independently, or in concert over a wide urban area, dispersing when threatened by control force operations, later reassembling elsewhere.

Terrorism. Involving extremely violent, often nihilistic or even anarchistic tactics, such as sniping and bombing attacks, which make conventional police operations extremely hazardous, and probably ineffective.

Posse Comitatus Act. Federal act allowing for law enforcement personnel to "deputize" citizens to assist in law enforcement operations. As applied to military operations, the Act provides that whoever, except in circumstances expressly authorized by the Constitution or Act of Congress, willfully uses any part of the Armed Forces as a posse comitatus, is in violation of federal law. Under 10 U.S.C. 331-333, the President may authorize military units to act to preserve order or prevent/disperse "...unlawful obstructions, combinations of assemblies, or rebellion against the authority of the United States...". The Posse Comitatus Act does not restrict military forces operating outside the boundaries of the United States. The Act applies to Hawaii and Alaska. Military personnel, their equipment and operation are not affected (e.g. a Military Working Dog team).

Emergency Operations Center (EOC). Command post established by local/civil authorities for the overall coordination and command of control forces and supporting agencies.

Appendix W
References and Related Publications

International Agreements

Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, 12 August 1949
Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War, 12 August 1949
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field, 12 August 1949
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Conditions of the Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea, 12 August 1949

United States Statutes

United States Code Title 18, Section 13, Federal Assimilated Crimes Act
United States Code Title 18, Section 1385, Use of Army and Air Force as Posse Comitatus
United States Code Title 19, Section 1202, Tariff Act of 1930
Uniform Code of Military Justice
Manual for Courts Martial

Department of Defense (DOD) Regulation

5030.49-R Customs Inspection

DOD Directive (DODD)

2310.1 DOD Program for Enemy Prisoners of War (EPOW) and Other Detainees
3025.13 Employment of DOD Resources and the Support of the United States Secret Service (USSS)
6015.5 Joint Use of Military Health and Medical Facilities and Services

DOD Instruction (DODI)

5030.34 Agreement Between the USSS and the DOD Concerning the Protection of the President and Other Officials
5525.10 Using Military Working Dog (MWD) Teams to Support Law Enforcement Agencies in Counter Drug Missions

Appendix W
References and Related Publications

Secretary of the Navy Instruction (SECNAVINST)

3020.4E Employment of DOD Resources and the Support of the USSS
5500.27B Agreement Between the USSS and the DOD Concerning the Protection of the President and Other Officials
6401.1A Veterinary Health Services

Operational Naval Instruction (OPNAVINST)

5585.2B MWD Manual

Joint Publication (JP)

1-02 DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms

Marine Corps Doctrinal Publication (MCDP)

1-2 Campaigning

Marine Corps Warfighting Publication (MCWP)

MCWP 3.34-1 Military Police in Support of the MAGTF

Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRP)

4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

Navy/Marine (NAVMC) Publication

2927 Antiterrorism/Force Protection Campaign Plan

Marine Corps Order (MCO)

P5580.2A Marine Corps Law Enforcement Manual
8020.10 Ammunition and Explosive Safety Policies, Programs, Requirements, and Procedures for CLASS V Material
8023.3 Qualification and Certification Program for Classified Munitions and Explosive Devices
8025.1C CLASS V (W) Malfunction and Deficiency Reporting
10570.1A DOD MWD Program

Appendix W
References and Related Publications

U.S. Army Regulation (AR)

40-654 Veterinary Services Nutritional Standards for MWD
190-12 MWD

U.S. Army Field Manuals (FMs)

5-34 Engineer Field Data
19-1 Military Police Support for the Air Land Battle
19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation and Control, Area Security and Enemy Prisoners of War Operations
19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons
90-40 NLW Multiservice Procedure for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons

U.S. Air Force Instruction

31-202 MWD Program